

COVENANTS
PART II
NEW (TESTAMENT) COVENANT

By

Richard W. Linthicum

RichardLayman@verizon.net

www.MessiahBible.net

This document was prepared by and is the intellectual property of Richard W. Linthicum (“Author”), who offers it without charge to recipients. Author permits recipients to use, copy and/or disseminate this document, or portions thereof, provided that no fees are charged for those materials.

COVENANTSPART II - NEW (TESTAMENT) COVENANT

<u>Contents</u>	<u>Pages</u>
Prelude – God’s Eternal Covenant	4
<u>First Book of Covenants</u>	8
<i>Messiah’s Fulfillment of Old Testament Covenants</i>	
Introductory Review	8
A. The Edenic Covenant	8
B. The Adamic Covenant	11
C. The Noahic Covenant	18
D. The Abrahamic Covenant	23
E. The Mosaic Covenant	44
F. The Promise Land Covenant	83
G. The Davidic Covenant	95
<u>Second Covenant Book</u>	112
<i>Messiah’s New Covenant</i>	
A. Introduction of New Covenant	112
B. God the Son’s Revelation of His New Covenant	120
C. Christ’s New Covenant Church	161
<u>Third & Future Covenant Book</u>	193
<i>Messiah’s Kingdom Covenant</i>	
Introduction to Messiah’s Kingdom Covenant	193
A. Messiah Jesus’ Second Coming	194
B. Messiah Jesus Judges the Nations of Earth	195
C. Messiah Jesus Establishes & Rules His Kingdom on Earth	197
Postscript	207

All Scriptural Quotations are taken from the New American Bible (1970 Version), with Revised Translations of New Testament (1986) and Psalms (1991).

- **Jesus’ Words are Shown in Red.**
- *(Parenthetic Italics) Imbedded within Bible Quotes are Author’s Comments.*
- **Bold** and Underlined Text are Author’s Emphasis.

Blue Highlights Jesus Christ’s Fulfillment of the Old Testament Covenants.

Small Italics are Author’s Footnotes

Preface.

This is a study of Messiah Jesus' fulfillment of the Covenants (Binding Contracts) that the Sovereign Lord God made with Mankind from Creation unto Eternity. This is an overview of Messiah Jesus' fulfillment of those Covenants as revealed in Scriptures, using summaries, examples and selected Bible texts. Many Biblical quotations are used repeatedly throughout this study, since they reveal different perspectives, and/or confirm, complement or expand His fulfillment of each subject matter as it is presented within this study.

In addition to direct correlations between the Covenants the Lord God made with Man throughout the ages and Messiah's fulfillment thereof, this study also looks at some of the imagery, types and shadows (imperfect representations) inherent in those Covenants that point to the Lord's Holy Anointed One (Messiah Jesus) and His fulfillment of them. The revelation of spiritual types and foreshadows are often cyclical in Scriptures, unfolding God's plans by repeating previous revelations while expanding upon them. Sometimes they are multi-dimensional revealing multiple facets of God's plan simultaneously or interwoven within the text

The term "Church" or "New Covenant People", used throughout this study, does not refer to any denomination, religious order or sect; but to those individual people throughout the age, who:

- 1) Recognize themselves as sinners in need of forgiveness (Rom. 3:23),
- 2) Recognize Jesus Christ as God's only begotten Son (John 3:16-18),
- 3) Believe that Jesus Christ gave His life to save sinners (Rom. 10:9-10; 1 Pet. 2:21-24),
- 4) Repent and ask the Lord to forgive their sins (1 John 1:8-9),
- 5) Personally accept Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior inviting Him into their lives (Acts 16:30-31),
- 6) Receive the Holy Spirit (Rom. 8:1-2; 1 Cor. 3:16), and
- 7) Confess Jesus Christ as Lord and Savior (Matt. 10:32).

COVENANTS

PART II – NEW (TESTAMENT) COVENANT

Prelude – God’s Eternal Covenant

(A Spiritual Glimpse into Eternity Past Alluded to in the New Testament.)

In the Eternal past, God desired to live with a family (Mankind) created in His own likeness with the capability to know Him personally, commune with Him and enjoy Him forever.

God, in His Omniscience, foreknew that Man would disobey Him, fall into sin, separating himself from a Holy God. In His infinite love, God (Father, Son & Holy Spirit) made an Eternal Covenant with Himself before He created the Earth, for the redemption of Mankind. Within this Covenant, God the Son volunteered to come to Earth as a Man to offer Himself as a Holy and Perfect Sacrifice for the atonement of sins, reconciling Man back to God. Through this Covenant, God would demonstrate both His Justice and Love to all Creation.

This is a study of the unfolding of God’s Eternal Covenant throughout the Ages and its fulfillment by God the Son.

1. Essence of God’s Eternal Covenant

- a. *Covenant Promise. “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son (Jesus – Son of God), so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him (His Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection).*
- b. *Covenant Terms. “Whoever believes in him will not be condemned (i.e. Forgiven of their Sins), but whoever does not believe has already been condemned (i.e. Remaining in their Sins), because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.”*
John 3:16-18

2. Eternal Sealing of God’s Covenant

- a. *“Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us in Christ with every spiritual blessing in the heavens, as he chose us in him, before the foundation of the world, to be holy and without blemish before him. In love he destined us for adoption to himself through Jesus Christ, in accord with the favor of his will, for the praise of the glory of his grace that he granted us in the beloved.”*
Eph. 1:3-6
- b. *“We know that all things work for good for those who love God, who are called according to his purpose. For those he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, so that he might be the firstborn among many brothers. And those he predestined he also called; and those he called he also justified; and those he justified he also glorified.”*
Rom. 8:28-30
- c. *“He saved us and called us to a holy life, not according to our works but according to his own design and the grace bestowed on us in Christ Jesus before time began, but now made manifest through the appearance of our savior Christ Jesus, who destroyed death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel”*
2 Tim. 1:9-10

I believe that God (Father, Son & Holy Spirit) then created Earth in a manner that sequentially points to the Covenants (Binding Contracts) He will make with Mankind for their redemption. (Violet Highlights the Lord’s Covenants Foreshadowed in Creation.)

1. Trinity in Creation

- a. *God the Father Conceived / Thought / Imagined the Object(s) to be Created.*
 - 1) “When I was being made in secret, fashioned as in the depths of the earth. Your eyes foresaw my actions; in your book all are written down; my days were shaped, before one came to be.” Psa. 139:15b-16
- b. *God the Son (“Word of God”) Spoke those Object(s) into Existence.*
(*God the Son in Creation. Prov. 8:22-36; John 1:1-14; Col. 1:15-20; Heb. 1:1-4*)
 - 1) “In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. He was in the beginning with God. All things came to be through him, and without him nothing came to be.....” (John 1:1-3a)
- c. *God the Holy Spirit Activated / Energized the Spoken Word.*
 - 1) “By faith we understand that the universe was ordered by the word of God, so that what is visible came into being through the invisible.” Heb. 11:3

Comment. It is not the intent nor scope of this study to expound on any theory of creation. Suffice it to say that the times recorded in Genesis 1 & 2 are from God’s perspective; Man’s perspective of time begins in Genesis 3 when he becomes mortal.

2. Spiritual Perspective of the Creation of Earth.

“In the beginning, when God created the heavens and the earth, the earth was a formless wasteland, and darkness covered the abyss (*God Foresaw the Disobedience & Sinful Nature of Man*), while a mighty wind (*Spirit of God*) swept (*Brooded*) over the waters.” Gen. 1:1-2

a. Day 1. Illumination of Light on Earth.

- 1) “Then God said, ‘Let there be light,’ and there was light. God saw how good the light was (*Represents the Edenic Covenant*).
- 2) God then separated the light from the darkness (*Adam Sinned Falling into Spiritual Darkness*). God called the light ‘day,’ and the darkness he called ‘night’ (*Prefigures Adamic Covenant with the Promise of a Redeemer - Pointing to Jesus the Light of the World*). Thus evening came, and morning followed—the first day” Gen. 1:3-5

b. Day 2. Creation of the Atmosphere – Separating the Waters (Sky from Sea) (Prefigures the Flood [Separating the Righteous from the Wicked by Waters] and the Noahic Covenant)

- 1) “Then God said, ‘Let there be a dome in the middle of the waters, to separate one body of water from the other.’ And so it happened: God made the dome, and it separated the water above the dome from the water below it. God called the dome ‘the sky’. Evening came, and morning followed—the second day.” Gen. 1:6-8

c. Day 3. Separation of Dry Land (Earth) from Water (Sea) & Creation of Vegetation (Prefigures the Abrahamic Covenant: Israel [Represented by Land/Vines] Chosen & Separated by God from the Gentiles [Represented by Sea].)

- 1) “Then God said, ‘Let the water under the sky be gathered into a single basin, so that the dry land may appear.’ And so it happened: the water under the sky was gathered into its basin, and the dry land appeared. God called the dry land ‘the earth,’ and the basin of the water he called ‘the sea.’ God saw how good it was.”
- 2) “Then God said, ‘Let the earth bring forth vegetation: every kind of plant that bears seed and every kind of fruit tree on earth that bears fruit with its seed in

it.’ And so it happened: the earth brought forth every kind of plant that bears seed and every kind of fruit tree on earth that bears fruit with its seed in it. God saw how good it was. Evening came, and morning followed—the third day.” Gen. 1:9-13

d. Day 4. Creation of Times & Seasons: Sun, Moon & Stars

(Prefigures the Confirmation of Abrahamic Covenant with Isaac, Jacob & 12 Tribes of Israel. God’s Chosen People/Nation Enlightened by the Word of God [Govern the “Day”] & Separated from Pagan Nations [Govern the “Night”].)

1) “Then God said: ‘Let there be lights in the dome of the sky, to separate day from night. Let them mark the fixed times, the days and the years, and serve as luminaries in the dome of the sky, to shed light upon the earth.’ And so it happened: God made the two great lights, the greater one (Sun) to govern the day, and the lesser one (Moon) to govern the night; and he made the stars *(Spiritual Descendants of Abraham – the Church)*. God set them in the dome of the sky, to shed light upon the earth, to govern the day and the night, and to separate the light from the darkness. God saw how good it was. Evening came, and morning followed—the fourth day.” Gen. 1:14-19

e. Day 5. Creation of Sea Life & Winged (Sky) Life

(Prefigures Israel’s Migration [Flight] into Egypt; their Proliferation & Bondage in Egypt [i.e. Surrounded by “Sea” of Gentiles].)

1) “Then God said, ‘Let the water teem with an abundance of living creatures, and on the earth let birds fly beneath the dome of the sky.’ And so it happened: God created the great sea monsters and all kinds of swimming creatures with which the water teems, and all kinds of winged birds. God saw how good it was, and God blessed them, saying, ‘Be fertile, multiply, and fill the water of the seas; and let the birds multiply on the earth.’ Evening came, and morning followed—the fifth day.” Gen. 1:20-23

f. Day 6.

1) Creation of Land Life – Animals

(Prefigures Mosaic Covenant with its Prescribed Animal Sacrifice Rituals)

a) “Then God said, ‘Let the earth bring forth all kinds of living creatures: cattle, creeping things, and wild animals of all kinds.’ And so it happened: God made all kinds of wild animals, all kinds of cattle, and all kinds of creeping things of the earth. God saw how good it was.” Gen. 1:24-25

2) Creation of Man

(Prefigures Davidic Covenant, where Man is Given Dominion to Rule Creator God’s Earth [Kingdom of Israel].)

a) “Then God said: ‘Let us (Triune God) make man in our image, after our likeness. Let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air, and the cattle, and over all the wild animals and all the creatures that crawl on the ground.’ God created man in his (God is One) image; in the divine image he created him; male and female he created them. God blessed them, saying: ‘Be fertile and multiply; fill the earth and subdue it *(Commissioned to Procreate God’s Family)*. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air, and all the living things that move on the earth. *(Rule Under God’s Authority)*’ And so it happened. God looked at everything he had made, and he found it very good. Evening came, and morning followed—the sixth day” Gen. 1:26-31

g. Day 7. Sabbath Rest

(Prefigures Messiah's New Covenant)

- 1) *"Thus the heavens and the earth and all their array were completed. Since on the seventh day God was finished with the work he had been doing, he rested on the seventh day from all the work he had undertaken. So God blessed the seventh day and made it holy, because on it he rested from all the work he had done in creation."* Gen. 2:1-3
 - a) *God Rested on the 7th Day After He Created Earth, since: "God looked at everything he had made, and he found it very good." (Gen. 2:31a)*
 - b) *God Blessed & Ordained the Seventh Day as Holy*
- 2) *After Man Sinned & Rebelled Against God, God Restarted Creation (i.e. His Salvific Work) Announcing and Activating His Covenants with Mankind, in the Manner, Times and Seasons He Predetermined in His Eternal Covenant.)*

FIRST BOOK OF COVENANTS

Messiah's Fulfillment of Old Testament Covenants

“Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill.”
Matt. 5:17

“You search the scriptures, because you think you have eternal life through them; even they testify on my behalf.”
John 5:39

“Then beginning with Moses and all the prophets, he (*Messiah Jesus*) interpreted to them what referred to him in all the scriptures.”
Luke 24:27

Introductory Review

Covenants are Contracts that the Lord God Almighty Made with Mankind in which He Promises Special Favors/Graces to Man for the Purpose of Restoring Sinful Man to Himself. All of these Covenants are Fulfilled by, in and through Messiah Jesus – Son of God & Son of Man (Matt. 5:17). The Lord God (Not Man) Initiates His Covenants. The Sovereign God Sent His Only Son (Messiah Jesus) into the World in His Own Time and on His Own Agenda to Fulfill the Covenants He had Made with Man and to Establish a New Covenant (John 3:16, Gal. 4:4-5, Heb. 8). The Lord's Covenants Remain in Effect Forever. Messiah Jesus Inaugurates a New Eternal Covenant with Mankind (Matt. 26:26-30, Heb.9:11 – 10:18).

There are Typically 4 Basic Provisions / Elements of the Lord's Covenants:

- 1) *The Lord's Promise to the People being Addressed*
- 2) *The Terms and Conditions of the Covenant*
- 3) *The Lord's Covenants are Executed & Put into Effect by Blood Sacrifice*
 - *Blood is the Essence of Life*
- 4) *The Lord Seals His Covenants*

Just as there were 4 Elements in the Lord's Old Testament Covenants; So, these Same Elements are Evident in Jesus Christ's Fulfillment of those Covenants, as well as in His New Covenant.

A. The Edenic Covenant

Gen. 1:26-30; Gen. 2:5-25

This Covenant Reveals the Lord God's Original Intention for All Mankind, and was Given to Adam Before He Disobeyed God. God the Son (Messiah Jesus) Restores Mankind Back to Father God, having Redeemed and Cleansed Them by His Holy Sacrifice, Sanctified and Sustained Them by God the Holy Spirit.

Knowing Man would Sin & Separate Himself from a Holy God, God Created Them in a Manner that Foreshadows His Preordained Messiah Who Reconciles and Restores Mankind Back to God.

1. God Created Adam & Eve (Collectively Referred to as “Man”)
 - a. Man Created in God's Image
 - 1) “Then God said: ‘Let us (*Triune God*) make man in our image, after our likeness....’ God created man in his image; in the divine image he (*God is One*) created him; male and female he created them.” (*Gen. 1:26-27*)
 - a) *Fulfilled by Jesus (Son of Man) the Visible Image of the Invisible God*
 - (1) “...Whoever has seen me has seen the Father...” *John 14:9*
 - (2) “He (*Jesus – Son of God*) is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation (i.e. Ordained as Messiah - Son of Man - Before Creation).” *Col. 1:15*

- 2) “the LORD God formed man (*Body*) out of the clay of the ground and blew into his nostrils the breath of life, and so man became a living being (*Soul & Spirit*).” (*Gen. 2:7*)
- a) *Word of God Came to Earth as Jesus – Son of Man. “And the Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father’s only Son, full of grace and truth.” John 1:14*
- b) *The Holy Spirit Anointed Jesus, and Christ (God’s Holy Anointed One) Became a Life Giving Savior*
- (1) *“... God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the holy Spirit and power. He went about doing good and healing all those oppressed by the devil, for God was with him.” Acts 10:38*
- (2) *“I came so that they might have life and have it more abundantly.” John 10:10b*
- (3) *“I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.” John 14:6*
- 3) *Man Made with Certain Godlike Attributes (“Image of God”)*
Christ Jesus Recreates Us to Conform to the Image that God Originally Intended for Man
- a) *Man Created as a Triune Being: Body, Soul/Mind & Spirit*
- (1) *“Indeed, the word of God is living and effective, sharper than any two-edged sword, penetrating even between soul (Soul/Mind) and spirit (Spirit), joints and marrow (Body), and able to discern reflections and thoughts of the heart.” Heb. 4:12*
- (2) *“...whoever is in Christ is a new creation: the old things have passed away; behold, new things have come. And all this is from God, who has reconciled us to himself through Christ....” 2 Cor. 5:17-18*
- b) *Man Created as an Eternal Being, Timeless & Ageless*
- (1) *Christ Restores Us to Eternal Life*
- *“Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes in the one who sent me has eternal life and will not come to condemnation, but has passed from death to life.” John 5:24*
 - *“For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him may have eternal life, and I shall raise him (on) the last day.” John 6:40*
- c) *Man Created to be United with Creator God*
- (1) *We are Adopted as Sons of God. “For those who are led by the Spirit of God are children of God. For you did not receive a spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you received a spirit of adoption, through which we cry, ‘Abba, Father!’ The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, then heirs, heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ, if only we suffer with him so that we may also be glorified with him.” Rom. 8:14-17*
- d) *Man Created to Personally Commune with God & Enjoy Him Forever*
- (1) *God’s Intended Relationship with Man is Fulfilled in Christ Jesus. “If you love me, you will keep my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth.... On that day you will realize that I am in my Father and you are in me and I in you.” John 14:15-20*

- b. Man Commissioned to Reproduce & Populate Earth
- 1) “God blessed them (*Adam & Eve*), saying: ‘Be fertile and multiply; fill the earth and subdue it. Have dominion over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air, and all the living things that move on the earth.’” (*Gen. 1:28*)
 - a) Procreate Offspring in the Image of God
 - 2) *Jesus Commissions His Church to Spread His Gospel of Salvation, Populating Earth with Children of God*
 - a) *“Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned.”* *Mark 16:15-16*
- c. Man Given Dominion Over Earth (His Realm)
- 1) “..... Let them (*Man – Male & Female*) have dominion over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air, and the cattle, and over all the wild animals and all the creatures that crawl on the ground.” (*Gen. 1:26*)
 - a) *Having Conquered All the Forces of Evil by His Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection, Jesus (Son of Man) Regains Dominion of Earth*
 - (1) *“All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.”* *Matt. 28:18-20*
 - 2) Creator God Gave Man Authority to Rule Over Earth as His Representative
 - a) *Jesus Delegates His Earthly Authority to His Church*
 - (1) *“Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes in me will do the works that I do, and will do greater ones than these, because I am going to the Father. And whatever you ask in my name, I will do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything of me in my name, I will do it”* *John 14:12-14*
2. Lord God’s Original Covenant with Man *Gen. 2:15:25*
- a. The Lord Placed Man in an Idyllic Garden
- 1) “The LORD God then took the man and settled him in the garden of Eden, to cultivate and care for it.” (*Gen. 2:15*)
 - 2) *God the Son (Jesus Christ) Came from Heaven to Earth (Location of Eden) to Redeem Mankind and Bring Them into a New Creation where They will Live with God Forever* *John 1:14; John 3:12-18; Rev. 21:1 – 22:5*
- b. God Warns Man to Remain Obedient to Him (His Creator)
- 1) “The LORD God gave man this order: ‘You are free to eat from any of the trees of the garden except the tree of knowledge of good and bad. From that tree you shall not eat; the moment you eat from it you are surely doomed to die.’” (*Gen. 2:16-17*)
 - 2) *Jesus, Representing Mankind as the “Son of Man”, Lived a Sinless Life in Total Obedience to Father God, Fulfilling God’s Requirement of Holiness.* *John 8:46; Phil. 2:5-8; Heb. 5:7-10; Heb. 7:26-28; 1 Pet. 2:22-24*
- c. Covenant Promise
Christ Jesus Fulfills the Lord God’s Promises of the Edenic Covenant
- 1) Abundant & Eternal Life
 - a) *Jesus Promises Abundant & Eternal Life to Those Who Enter into His Covenant* *Matt. 19:28-30; John 10:10b*

- 2) Dominion Over the Earth Under God's Authority
 - a) *Jesus Gains Dominion Over Earth, where His Covenant People will Reign with Him* Matt. 28:18-20; Rev. 19:11 – 20:10
- 3) Personal Communion with Creator God
 - a) *Jesus Provides the Way for His Covenant People to Commune with the Lord God* Matt. 26:26-30; John 14:6; 1 Tim. 2:5-6; Heb. 4:14-16
- d. Covenant Terms
 - 1) Remain Faithful & Obedient to God
 - a) *Jesus Fulfills the Terms of Edenic Covenant by Living a Sinless Life, Faithful & Obedient to Father God* John 8:46; Phil.2:5-8; 1 Pet. 2:22-24
- e. Covenant Sacrifice
 - 1) *This is a Bloodless Covenant Given to Adam Before the Lord Established the Requirement of Blood Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin*
 - 2) *Adam was Created in an Innocent State, Not Knowing Good or Evil*
 - 3) *Jesus Offered Himself as a Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice to Redeem His Covenant People, Presenting Them as Righteous Before a Holy God* Heb. 9:11 - 10:18; 1 John 1:6-10
 - a) *“..... We implore you on behalf of Christ, be reconciled to God. For our sake he made him to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.”* 2 Cor. 5:20-21
- f. Covenant Seal
 - 1) Man was Given Woman as a Help Mate & Partner in Procreation
 - 2) God Created Woman Out of Adam's Side, as an Equal Partner
 - 3) Adam Declares: “This one (Woman), is bone of my bones and flesh of my flesh;....” (Gen. 2:23)
 - 4) *Jesus Seals His Covenant by His Death; After Which His Side was Pierced with a Spear Ushering Forth His New Covenant Church* John 19:31-37
 - a) *Water & Blood Flowed from Jesus' Side, Representing New Covenant Sacraments of Baptism & Holy Communion* Matt. 26:26-29; Matt. 28:18-20
 - b) *Giving Life to His Bride – the Church* John 3:27-30; Luke 5:33-35; Rev. 19:5-10
 - c) *A People to be Formed into the Mystical Body of Christ* 1 Cor. 12:12-31; Eph. 4:1-16
 - 5) *Jesus Commissions His Church to Spread His Gospel of Salvation* Matt. 28:18-20; Mark 16:15-18; Acts 1:8
 - a) *Procreating People in the Image of Christ* John 3:3-8
 - (1) *“ For those he foreknew he also predestined to be conformed to the image of his Son, so that he might be the firstborn among many brothers.”* Rom. 8:29-30

B. The Adamic Covenant

Gen. 3

This is a Foundational Covenant Where the Lord God Pronounces Judgment of Sin & Prescribes His Sovereign Plan for the Redemption of Mankind (Descendants of Adam). Messiah Jesus Fulfills the Adamic Covenant by Taking God's Judgments of Sin Upon Himself, Paying its Price in Full, Reversing the Penalties, Effects & Curses of Sin; thereby, Redeeming and Reconciling Mankind Back to God.

1. Adam Sins & Breaks His Covenant with God Gen. 3:1-13
 - a. Serpent (Satan) Entices Eve to Eat Fruit from the Forbidden Tree
 - 1) Tree of “Good & Evil”
 - 2) Satan Tempts Jesus as He was Fasting in the Wilderness Preparing for His Public Ministry Matt. 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13
 - a) Satan Tempts Jesus: “If you are the Son of God, command that these stones become loaves of bread.”
 - b) Jesus Replies: “It is written: ‘One does not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes forth from the mouth of God.’” (Matt. 4:3-4)
 - c) Satan Unsuccessfully Continues His Temptations
 - d) Jesus Rebukes the Tempter: “Get away, Satan!” (Matt. 4:10b)
 - (1) Satan Departs & Angels Minister to Jesus (He Overcame Temptation & Begins His Public Ministry)
 - 3) Where Eve Yielded to Satan’s Temptation; Jesus Resisted Satan’s Temptations, Rebuking Him.
 - b. Eve Entices Adam to Share the Forbidden Fruit
 - 1) Adam Willfully Disobeys God
 - 2) Jesus Freely Submits to Father God’s Will Matt. 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:39-46
 - a) “My Father, if it is possible, let this cup (His Pending Suffering & Death) pass from me; yet, not as I will, but as you will.” (Matt. 26:39)
 - b) “My Father, if it is not possible that this cup pass without my drinking it, your will be done!” (Matt. 26:42)
 - c) “Who, though he (Son of God) was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God something to be grasped. Rather, he emptied himself, taking the form of a slave, coming in human likeness (Jesus – Son of Man); and found human in appearance, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, even death on a cross.” Phil. 2:6-8
 - 3) Where Adam Willfully Disobeyed God; Jesus Obediently Submitted to Father God, Choosing God’s Will Over Self, Over Temptations & Over Sin
 - c. Results of Adam & Eve’s Sin
 - 1) Loss of Innocence
 - a) Recognize Themselves as Naked (Perceiving Good & Evil)
 - b) Ashamed, Afraid & Hiding from God (Shame & Fear - Symptoms of Sin)
 - c) Jesus Overcame Mankind’s Shameful Condition of Sin
 - (1) Jesus, Without Sin, Hanged Naked on the Cross - Exposing Man’s Shame (Sin) Matt. 27:35-56; Mark 15:21-41; Luke 23:32-49; John 19:16-37
 - Jesus is Not Ashamed of Us. “He who consecrates (i.e. Jesus) and those who are being consecrated (Believing Christians) all have one origin. Therefore, he is not ashamed to call them ‘brothers’” Heb. 2:11
 - We are Not Ashamed of Our Lord & Savior Jesus. “For I am not ashamed of the gospel. It is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes.....” Rom. 1:16
 - 2) Adam Abdicates His God Given Dominion to Satan
 - a) Jesus (Son of Man) Regains Dominion Over Earth
 - (1) Seizing Adam’s Original Created Position of Authority

- (2) Given Full Authority in Heaven (*Son of God*) & Earth (*Son of Man*)
- “All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.”
Matt. 28:18-20
- (3) Jesus Delegates Authority to His Church
- “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes in me will do the works that I do, and will do greater ones than these, because I (*With Full Authority*) am going to the Father.” John 14:12
 - “But you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you (*Fulfilled 10 Days Later - Acts 2:1-4*), and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” Acts 1:8
- b) *As God Commanded Adam & Eve to Populate the Earth with Offspring Procreated in God’s Image; So, Jesus Commissions His Disciples to Spread His Gospel Populating the Earth with Children of God, Under His Authority.*

2. Lord God’s Judgment of Sin Gen. 3:14-20
(*Setting Forth the Promise & Terms of His Covenant*)
- a. God Curses Serpent for Allowing Satan to Use Him Gen. 3:14
1) *Prefigures Jesus’ Complete Victory Over All the Forces of Evil (Satan, His Domain, Minions & Alliances)*
- b. God Curses Satan – While Promising Redemption to Man (“Seed Promise”)
- 1) “I (*God*) will put enmity between you (*Satan*) and the woman (*Prefiguring Virgin Mary*), and between your offspring (*Followers of Satan / Sin*) and her's (*Jesus - Offspring/Seed of a Woman*); He (*Jesus Christ*) will strike your head (*Destroy Satan*), while you strike at his heel (*Satan Strikes Jesus’ Heel, Seemingly Halting His Walk [i.e. His Life & Ministry]*).” Gen. 3:15
- a) *Satan Enticed Woman to Sin; So, Woman’s (Virgin Mary’s) Offspring (i.e. Jesus Christ) Will Destroy Satan*
- (1) *Jesus Conceived Within & Born of a Virgin (A Woman’s Offspring)*
Matt. 1:18-25; Luke 1:26-38
- b) “He (*Christ*) will strike at your head, while you (*Satan*) strike at his heel.”
- (1) *Satan Will Entice Men to Crucify Jesus Christ. It is through Christ’s Suffering & Death that He Will Destroy Satan, Sin & Death.*
- “.....we speak God’s wisdom, mysterious, hidden, which God predetermined before the ages (*i.e. God’s Eternal Covenant*) for our glory, and which none of the rulers of this age knew; for if they had known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.”
1 Cor. 2:7-8

Note. Jesus was conceived in and born to a virgin, without the curse of original sin being transmitted to Him through the seed of His ancestor Adam. Like Adam, who was created innocent (not knowing good and evil), I believe that Jesus was born an innocent child having the capability to sin; but, unlike Adam, overcame temptations choosing not to sin throughout His entire life on Earth. Having conquered sin, Jesus became eternally righteous upon His death on the cross, evidenced by His resurrection from the dead.

- c. God Curses Eve (*Representing All Women*) Gen. 3:16
- 1) Intense Pain in Childbirth (*Fulfilling God's Command to Populate Earth*)
 - a) *Prefigures Persecution of Christ's Church (His Bride) in Fulfilling His Commission to Spread His Gospel to the World*
Acts 4:1-22; Acts 6:8 – 7:60; Acts 12; Etc.
 - 2) Submission to Her Husband
 - a) *Woman Enticed Man to Sin; So, Man is Made Spiritual Head of Family*
 - b) *Jesus Takes His Place as Head of Christian Families Eph. 5:22-32*
 - (1) *"Wives should be subordinate to their husbands as to the Lord. For the husband is head of his wife just as Christ is head of the church, he himself the savior of the body." (Eph. 5:22-23)*
 - (2) *"Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ loved the church and handed himself over for her" (Eph. 5:25)*
(As Christ Demonstrated His Love for the Church by Service & Sacrifice; So, Husbands Must Likewise Love their Wives. Examples: Luke 22:24-27 & John 15:13)
 - 3) *Equality in the Family of God Gal. 3:26-28*
 - a) *"For through faith you are all children of God in Christ Jesus. For all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free person, there is not male and female; for you are all one in Christ Jesus."*
- d. God Curses Adam (*Mankind*) & Earth that was Under His Authority Gen. 3:17-19
- 1) Cursing the Ground
 - a) *Requires Man's Lifelong Labor for Sustenance*
 - b) *Competing with Nature (Thorns, Insects, Germs, etc.) for Resources*
 - c) *Jesus Takes Authority Over Nature*
 - (1) *Example: "He (Jesus) woke up, rebuked the wind, and said to the sea, 'Quiet! Be still!' The wind ceased and there was great calm."
Mark 4:39*
 - d) *Jesus was Crowned with Thorns Taking Upon Himself the Land Curse, Fulfilling God's Sentence Matt. 27:27-30; Mark 15:16-19; John 19:1-3*
 - 2) Cursing Mankind with Death (*Physical & Spiritual*)
 - a) *"..... For you are dirt, and to dirt you shall return." (Gen. 3:19)*
 - (1) *Aging, Fatigue, Disease & Disabilities are Part of Mortal/Dying Condition*
 - (2) *Jesus Takes Authority Over Diseases, Disabilities & Death*
Examples:
 - *"He (Jesus) went around all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues, proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and curing every disease and illness among the people..... they brought to him all who were sick with various diseases and racked with pain, those who were possessed, lunatics, and paralytics, and he cured them." Matt. 4:23-24*
 - *"He (Jesus) stepped forward and touched the coffin; at this the bearers halted, and he said, 'Young man, I tell you, arise!' The dead man sat up and began to speak," Luke 7:14-15*
 - b) *Jesus Takes the Curse of Sin & Death Upon Himself, Fulfilling God's Sentence*

- (1) “Christ ransomed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written, ‘Cursed be everyone who hangs on a tree (i.e. Wooden Cross)’” Gal. 3:13
 - (2) “And even when you were dead (in) transgressions....., he (*Jesus Christ*) brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions; obliterating the bond (*Curse of Death*) against us,.... he also removed it from our midst, nailing it to the cross; despoiling the (*Evil*) principalities and the powers, he made a public spectacle of them, leading them away in triumph by it.” Col. 2:13-15
 - (3) Christ, Without Sin, Died in Our Place, Gaining Us Eternal Life
 - “For our sake he (*Father God*) made him (*Jesus Christ*) to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.” 2 Cor. 5:21
 - (4) Christ Came from Heaven. After Dying for Our Sin & Rising from the Dead (*Proving His Power Over Death*), He Returned to Heaven to Reign at the Right Hand of God Almighty Acts 1:6-9; Heb. 1:1-4
 - (5) Christ Will Universally Eliminate Death
 - “For he (*Jesus Christ*) must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death” 1 Cor. 15:25-26
- 3) Jesus Christ Reverses the Curse of Sin & Death - Restoring Man Back to God
- a) Jesus Became the Second Adam
(*Where Adam Sinned Bringing Death to All Mankind; Jesus, Without Sin, Died to Bring Life to All Who Accept Him & His Sacrifice.*)
 - (1) Adam’s Legacy. “Therefore, just as through one person (*Adam*) sin entered the world, and through sin, death, and thus death came to all, inasmuch as all sinned.....” Rom. 5:12-14
 - (2) Jesus Christ’s Legacy Rom. 5:15-19
 - “But the gift is not like the transgression. For if by that one person’s (*Adam*’s) transgression the many died, how much more did the grace of God and the gracious gift of the one person Jesus Christ overflow for the many. And the gift is not like the result of the one person’s sinning. For after one sin there was the judgment that brought condemnation; but the gift, after many transgressions, brought acquittal. For if, by the transgression of one person (*Adam*), death came to reign through that one, how much more will those who receive the abundance of grace and of the gift of justification come to reign in life through the one person Jesus Christ.”
 - “..... just as through one transgression condemnation came upon all, so through one righteous act acquittal and life came to all. For just as through the disobedience of one person (*Adam*) the many were made sinners, so through the obedience of one (*Jesus Christ*) the many will be made righteous.”
 - b) Jesus Christ Restores Us to Eternal Life 1 Cor. 15:20-23
 - (1) “But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. For since death came through a human being (*Adam*), the resurrection of the dead came also through a human being

(*Jesus – Son of Man*). For just as in Adam all die, so too in Christ shall all be brought to life, but each one in proper order: Christ the firstfruits; then, at his coming, those who belong to Christ”

- c) **Jesus Christ Transforms Us into Eternal Beings** 1 Cor. 15:44-49
 (1) “If there is a natural body, there is also a spiritual one. So, too, it is written, ‘The first man, Adam, became a living being,’ the last Adam (*Jesus Christ*) a life-giving spirit. But the spiritual was not first; rather the natural and then the spiritual. The first man (*Adam*) was from the earth, earthly; the second man (*Jesus Christ*), from heaven. As was the earthly one, so also are the earthly, and as is the heavenly one, so also are the heavenly. Just as we have borne the image of the earthly one, we shall also bear the image of the heavenly one.”

3. **Lord God Reveals His Covenant of Redemption** Gen. 3:21-24
- a. **God Made Leather Garments to Cover their Shame**
- 1) “For the man and his wife the LORD God made leather garments, with which he clothed them.” (*Gen. 3:21*)
- a) Establishing Blood Sacrifice of an Innocent for the Atonement of Sin
 (1) *Satisfying Death Penalty for Sin*
- b) Sacrifice Provided by the Hand of God
- c) Covenant Sealed by Lord Covering their Sin & Shame with Hides of Sacrificed Animals
- 2) **Jesus Christ Fulfills God’s Covenant with Adam by Becoming God’s Innocent Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin** (*i.e. Sacrifice Provided by Hand of God*)
- a) **Christ Jesus Came to Earth as God’s Holy & Perfect Sacrifice**
- (1) “..... when he (*Jesus Christ – Son of God*) came into the world, he said: ‘Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; holocausts and sin offerings you took no delight in. Then I said, ‘As is written of me in the scroll, Behold, I come to do your will, O God.’” Heb. 10:5-7
- b) **Jesus Lived a Sinless Life**
- (1) **Jesus Confronts Religious Authorities: “Can any of you charge me with sin?”** John 8:46
- c) **Jesus, Innocent of Sin, Became Our Sin on the Cross**
- (1) “For our sake he (*Father God*) made him (*Jesus Christ*) to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.” 2 Cor. 5:21
- (2) “He (*Jesus Christ*) committed no sin, and no deceit was found in his mouth. When he was insulted, he returned no insult; when he suffered, he did not threaten; instead, he handed himself over to the one (*Father God*) who judges justly. He himself bore our sins in his body upon the cross, so that, free from sin, we might live for righteousness. By his wounds you have been healed.” 1 Pet. 2:22-24
- (3) “But if we walk in the light as he is in the light, then we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of his Son Jesus cleanses us from all sin. If we say, ‘We are without sin,’ we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we acknowledge our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive our sins and cleanse us from every wrongdoing.” 1 John 1:7-9

- *Whereas, God Provided Hides of Sacrificed Animals to Cover Adam & Eve's Sin; Jesus' Blood Cleanses Us of Sin*

b. Adam & Eve Expelled from Garden

(A Holy & Perfect God Can Not Look Upon or Associate with Sin)

1) "The LORD God therefore banished him from the garden of Eden,"

(Gen 3:23)

a) Keeping Man from Partaking of the "Tree of Life" (*Eternal Life*) While in a Sinful Condition

2) Places an Impenetrable Barrier Keeping Man Outside the Garden

a) "When he (*God*) expelled the man,he stationed the cherubim and the fiery revolving sword, to guard the way to the tree of life." (*Gen. 3:24*)

3) *Jesus Brings Us into an Eternal Home* *Rev. 21 - 22*

a) As God Placed Adam & Eve in the Garden of Eden before their Fall; So, Jesus Places Us in a New Heaven & Earth in God's Presence

(1) "Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth. The former heaven and the former earth had passed away, and the sea was no more. I also saw the holy city, a new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband." (*Rev. 21:1-2*)

(2) "I heard a loud voice from the throne saying, 'Behold, God's dwelling is with the human race. He will dwell with them and they will be his people and God himself will always be with them (as their God). He will wipe every tear from their eyes, and there shall be no more death or mourning, wailing or pain, (for) the old order has passed away.'" (*Rev. 21:3-4*)

b) Adam & Eve were Evicted from the Garden, so they Could Not Eat of the "Tree of Life" in their Sinful Condition. Jesus, Having Redeemed Us from Curse of Sin & Death, Gives Us Free Access to the "Tree of Life".

(1) "Behold, I am coming soon (*Christ's Promise to Return to Earth*). I bring with me the recompense I will give to each according to his deeds (*Christ Our Judge*). I am the Alpha and the Omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end (*Christ is Divine*). Blessed are they who wash their robes (*Redeemed/Cleansed by Christ's Blood*) so as to have the right to the tree of life (*Eternal Life*) and enter the city (*God's Presence*) through its gates.'" (*Rev. 22:12-14*)

4. Adam & Eve's Offspring

Gen. 4:1-16

(One Son Understood the Essence of the Lord's Covenant & the Other Did Not)

(Two Types of People are Represented by Cain & Abel. Cain Represents Those Who Rely Solely on Legal Observance of the Law (Works), but Do Not Comprehend its Intent, Essence or Spirit [e.g. Matt. 23]. Abel Represents Those Who are Open to the Spirit of God [the Law Giver], Who Place their Faith in the Lord, Accepting His Revelations [Matt. 13:13-17].)

a. First Born Son – Cain a Tiller of Soil

b. Next Son – Abel a Keeper of Flocks

c. Cain & Abel's Offerings to the Lord God

1) Cain Offers Produce from His Crops (*Offering of Works*)

2) Abel Offers Best Firstlings of His Flock (*Blood Sacrifice*)

a) Abel Offered a Sacrifice in the Manner Prescribed by God; Foreshadowing Messiah Jesus, God's Holy & Perfect Sacrifice

- (1) Abel Sacrificed the Best Firstlings of His Flock
 - God Offers His Best Firstling – His Only Begotten Son. “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life”
John 3:16
 - (2) Abel’s Sacrifice was Offered in Faith. “By faith Abel offered to God a sacrifice greater than Cain’s. Through this he was attested to be righteous, God bearing witness to his gifts, and through this, though dead, he still speaks.” Heb. 11:4
 - (3) Abel Offered a Blood Sacrifice. “..... without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.” Heb. 9:22b
- 3) Lord Accepts Abel’s Offering, but Not Cain’s
- a) Father God Accepts Jesus’ Offering, Evidenced by Raising Him from the Dead . “..... Jesus the Nazorean was a man commended to you by God with mighty deeds, wonders, and signs, which God worked through him in your midst, as you yourselves know. This man, delivered up by the set plan and foreknowledge of God (*i.e. The Eternal Covenant*), you killed, using lawless men to crucify him. But God raised him up, releasing him from the throes of death, because (Having No Sin) it was impossible for him to be held by it.” Acts 2:22-24
- d. Cain Becomes Jealous & Murders Abel (*1st Human Death Recorded in Scriptures*)
Represents the Sanhedrin Who Unlawfully Condemned Jesus (Lord’s Holy Anointed One) to Death. John 11:45-54; Matt. 26:57-68; Mark 14:53-65; Luke 22:63-71
- 1) Lord Expels Cain from Adam’s Family
- e. Adam & Eve Give Birth to Another Son – Seth
Symbolizes the Resurrected Christ, Who, Like Seth, Gives Birth to God’s Covenant People Gen. 5; Luke 3:23-38; John 14:15-18; Acts 2:1-4
- f. Adam Dies After Living a Long Life Gen. 5:1-5
(“For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.” Rom. 6:23)

C. The Noachic Covenant

Gen. 6 - 9

In this Covenant the Lord God Cleanses the Earth of Corruption & Renews His Promise of Redemption with Noah (Father of the Nations). Jesus Fulfills the Noachic Covenant by Providing the Way of Salvation to All the Peoples/Nations of the World.

1. The Human Condition

Gen. 6:1-10

Reveals Mankind’s Sinful Condition.

- a. Satan Attempts to Pollute Human Race by Unnatural Breeding
(Symbolic of Inherited/Original Sin)
 - 1) “At that time the Nephilim appeared on earth..... after the sons of heaven had intercourse with the daughters of man, who bore them sons....” (*Gen. 6:4*)
 - a) *So No One Would be Able to Fulfill the Lord’s “Seed Promise” (Re: Gen 3:15)*
 - 2) The Entire Human Race is Polluted by a Sinful Nature Inherited from Adam
 - a) “Therefore, just as through one person (*Adam*) sin entered the world, and through sin, death, and thus death came to all, inasmuch as all sinned.....”
Rom. 5:12-14

(1) No Natural Descendant of Adam is Able to Provide Salvation to Man

- b. Mankind Living Evil Lives, Corrupted by Satan & Sin (*Personal Sin*)
- 1) “When the LORD saw how great was man’s wickedness on earth, and how no desire that his heart conceived was ever anything but evil, he regretted that he had made man on the earth, and his heart was grieved” (*Gen. 6:5-6*)
 - 2) Every Human Being is Guilty of Personal Sin
 - a) “For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God.” *Rom. 3:22b-23*
 - 3) Every Human Being Carries the Penalty of Sin – Death
 - a) “For the wages of sin is death,” *Rom. 6:23a*
- c. Only Noah Found Favor with Lord (*Purebred & Faithful*)
God Reveals that He Will Bestow His Favor on People Who Trust in Him.
- 1) “..... Noah, a good man and blameless in that age, for he walked with God,” (*Gen. 6:9-10*)
 - 2) God’s Favor Rests Upon His Holy Son – Jesus of Nazareth
 - a) “After all the people had been baptized and Jesus also had been baptized and was praying, heaven was opened and the holy Spirit descended upon him in bodily form like a dove. And a voice came from heaven, ‘You are my beloved Son; with you I am well pleased.’” *Luke 3:21-22*
 - 3) God’s Favor is Extended to Mankind through His Righteous Son Jesus
 - a) For Inherited Sin. “For after one sin there was the judgment that brought condemnation; but the gift, after many transgressions, brought acquittal. For if, by the transgression of one person (*Adam*), death came to reign through that one, how much more will those who receive the abundance of grace (*Unmerited Favor*) and of the gift of justification come to reign in life through the one person Jesus Christ.” *Rom. 5:16b-17*
 - b) For Personal Sin. “They are justified freely by his grace (*Unmerited Favor*) through the redemption in Christ Jesus, whom God set forth as an expiation (*Satisfying God’s Judgment of Sin by Paying its Penalty*), through faith, by his blood, to prove his righteousness because of the forgiveness of sins previously committed, through the forbearance of God—to prove his righteousness in the present time, that he might be righteous and justify the one who has faith in Jesus.” *Rom. 3:24-26*
 - c) Taking Away the Penalty of Sin. “For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.” *Rom. 6:23*

2. Lord Warns Noah that He will Destroy Life on Earth with a Flood

Reveals the Consequences of Sin; While Establishing the Way of Salvation: Repentance of Sin & Faith in a Divine Savior.

- a. Instructs Noah to Build an Ark *Gen. 6:11-22*
- 1) Promises to Establish a Covenant. “But with you (*Noah*) I will establish my covenant; you and your sons, your wife and your sons’ wives, shall go into the ark.” (*Gen. 6:18*)
 - 2) Prepare the Ark for Himself, His Household & Animals
 - 3) John’s Baptism of Repentance Paves the Way for the Lord’s New Covenant
Matt. 3:1-12; Mark 1:1-8; Luke 3:1-18
 - a) “Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand!” (*Matt. 3:2*)
 - b) “I (*John*) am baptizing you with water, for repentance, but the one (*Divine Savior*) who is coming after me is mightier than I. I am not worthy to

carry his sandals. He will baptize you with the holy Spirit and fire
(*Ushering in His New Covenant*). (Matt. 3:11)

- b. Instructs Noah to Enter Ark with His Household Gen. 7:1-5
 - 1) Take 7 Pairs of Clean Animals (*Fit for Sacrifice*)
 - 2) Take 1 Pair of Unclean Animals (*Unfit for Sacrifice*)
 - c. Faith in a Divine Savior
 - 1) “By faith Noah, warned about what was not yet seen (*i.e. The Flood*), with reverence built an ark for the salvation of his household (*Forefathers of the Nations*). Through this he condemned the world and inherited the righteousness that comes through faith.” Heb. 11:7
 - 2) “For by grace (Unmerited Favor) you have been saved through faith, and this is not from you; it is the gift of God; it is not from works, so no one may boast. For we are his handiwork, created in Christ Jesus for the good works that God has prepared in advance, that we should live in them.” Eph. 2:8-10
3. Lord Sends Great Flood Upon Earth Gen. 7:6 – 8:19
The Great Flood Prefigures Baptism of Repentance – Required to Enter Christ’s New Universal Covenant
- a. Population of Earth Perishes
 - 1) God’s Condemnation of Sinful, Unrepentant Man
 - a) “..... whoever does not believe has already been condemned, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.” John 3:18
 - b) “And this is the verdict, that the light came into the world, but people preferred darkness to light, because their works were evil.” John 3:19
 - b. Noah, His Household & Animals Survive in Ark
 - 1) Repentance & Regeneration Required to Perceive & Enter Christ’s Covenant
 - a) “Amen, amen, I say to you, no one can see the kingdom of God without being born from above.” John 3:3
 - b) “Amen, amen, I say to you, no one can enter the kingdom of God without being born of water and Spirit. What is born of flesh is flesh and what is born of spirit is spirit.” John 3:5-6
 - c. Flood Ends & They Disembark (*Symbolizes Our New Life in Christ*)
 - 1) Regenerated. “So whoever is in Christ is a new creation (*“Born from Above”*): the old things have passed away; behold, new things have come.” 2 Cor. 5:17
 - 2) Reenter World as His Covenant People. “So then you are no longer strangers and sojourners, but you are fellow citizens with the holy ones and members of the household of God, built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus himself as the capstone.” Eph. 2:19-20
 - d. The Flood Prefigures Baptism in Water
 - 1) “..... God patiently waited in the days of Noah during the building of the ark, in which a few persons, eight in all, were saved through water. This prefigured baptism, which saves you now. It is not a removal of dirt from the body but an appeal to God for a clear conscience, through the resurrection of Jesus Christ” 1 Pet. 3:20-21
 - e. Jesus Refers to His Sacrifice as a Baptism of Blood
 - 1) “I have come to set the earth on fire (*Purging the World of Sin*), and how I wish it were already blazing! There is a baptism with which I must be baptized (*His Suffering & Death*), and how great is my anguish until it is accomplished! Luke 12:49-50

4. Noah Offers Blood Sacrifices to Lord Gen. 8:20-22
Foreshadows Jesus Christ's Sacrifice for the Salvation of Sinful Man.
- a. Lord Accepts Noah's Sacrifices. "..... WHEN the LORD smelled the sweet odor, he said to himself: 'Never again will I doom the earth because of man, since the desires of man's heart are evil from the start; nor will I ever again strike down all living beings, as I have done. As long as the earth lasts, seedtime and harvest, cold and heat, Summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.'"
 - b. As Noah Entered into Covenant with Lord God through His Sacrifices;
 So, Jesus Enters His New Covenant through His Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection.
 - 1) The Lord Smelled Sweet Odor of Noah's Sacrifices – Accepting Them
 The Lord was Pleased & Accepted His Son's Holy Sacrifice for Sins of Man:
 - a) "But the LORD was pleased to crush him (*Messiah*) in infirmity. If he gives his life as an offering for sin, he shall see his descendants (*Peoples Who Accept Him as Savior*) in a long (*Eternal*) life, and the will of the LORD shall be accomplished through him." Isa. 53:10
 - b) "This man (*Jesus*), delivered up by the set plan and foreknowledge of God, you killed, using lawless men to crucify him. But God raised him up (*Accepting His Sacrifice*), releasing him from the throes of death, because it was impossible for him to be held by it." Acts 2:23-24
 - 2) The Lord Commits to Never Destroy All Earthly Beings.
 Fulfilled by Jesus Christ Providing the Way of Salvation & Eternal Life through His Suffering & Death:
 - a) "..... so must the Son of Man be lifted up (*on the Cross*), so that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life." John 3:14-15
 - b) "For this is the will of my Father (*Covenant Making God*), that everyone who sees the Son (*by Faith*) and believes in him may have eternal life, and I (*Jesus*) shall raise him (on) the last day." John 6:40
 - 3) The Lord Commits to Continuity of Earth's Seasonal Cycles
 Jesus Spiritually Fulfilled the Seasonal Provisions of Lord's Covenant through His Sacrificial Death & Resurrection:
 - a) "The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified (*His Approaching Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection*). Amen, amen, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat (*Body of Christ*) falls to the ground and dies, it remains just a grain of wheat; but if it dies, it produces much fruit (*Salvation of Multitudes*)." John 12:23-24
 - c. Universality of Jesus Christ's Offering
 - 1) "For Christ, while we were still helpless, yet died at the appointed time for the ungodly (*Sinful Man*).....God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us." Rom. 5:6-8
 - 2) "if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For one believes with the heart and so is justified, and one confesses with the mouth and so is saved..... For there is no distinction between Jew and Greek (*Gentile*); the same Lord is Lord of all, enriching all who call upon him. For everyone who calls on the name of the Lord will be saved." Rom. 10:9-13

5. Lord God Establishes His Covenant with Noah Gen. 9:1-17
Jesus Christ Fulfills the Noahic Covenant by Inaugurating a New & Universal

Covenant for All the Peoples/Nations of the World.

a. Covenant Terms (*Live by Faith & Obedience to the Lord God*)

Jesus Fulfills the Covenant Terms by Living a Life of Total Obedience to Father God, Becoming the Source of Our Faith. "...let us rid ourselves of every burden and sin that clings to us (Obedience) and persevere in running the race that lies before us while keeping our eyes fixed on Jesus, the leader and perfecter of faith. For the sake of the joy that lay before him he endured the cross, despising its shame, and has taken his seat at the right of the throne of God." Heb. 12:1-2

- 1) Repopulate Earth. "Be fertile and multiply and fill the earth." (*Gen. 9:1b*)
 - a) Jesus Commissions His Church to Multiply & Fill the Earth with New Covenant Peoples. "All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age." Matt. 28:18-20
- 2) Given Meat to Eat. "Every creature that is alive shall be yours to eat; I give them all to you as I did the green plants" (*Gen. 9:3*)
 - a) Eating Blood Forbidden (*Blood is the Essence of Life*). "Only flesh with its lifeblood still in it you shall not eat." (*Gen. 9:4*)
 - b) Jesus Offers His Body & Blood as Sacramental Meal of the New Covenant
 - (1) "..... Jesus took bread, said the blessing, broke it, and giving it to his disciples said, 'Take and eat; this is my body.' Then he took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, 'Drink from it, all of you, for this is my blood of the covenant, which will be shed on behalf of many for the forgiveness of sins.'" Matt. 26:26-28
 - c) The Lord Applies this Covenant Provision to Command Peter to Expand His Gospel of Salvation to Gentile Peoples/Nations Acts 10
- 3) Death Penalty for Killing Another Person. "If anyone sheds the blood of man, by man shall his blood be shed; For in the image of God has man been made." (*Gen. 9:6*)
 - a) Jesus Paid the Penalty of Sin by Dying in Our Place, Giving Us New Life
 - (1) ".....we who were baptized into Christ Jesus were baptized into his death? We were indeed buried with him through baptism into death, so that, just as Christ was raised from the dead by the glory of the Father, we too might live in newness of life." Rom. 6:3-4

b. Covenant Promises

- 1) Covenant Made with Noah & All Inhabitants of Earth
 - a) "See, I am now establishing my covenant with you and your descendants after you and with every living creature that was with you: all the birds, and the various tame and wild animals that were with you and came out of the ark." (*Gen. 9:9-10*)
 - b) Jesus Extends His New Covenant to All Peoples of Earth
 - (1) "Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned." Mark 16:15-16
 - c) Jesus Will Restore Animal Kingdom at His Second Coming Isa. 11:6-8
- 2) Lord Will Never Again Destroy Earth with a Flood
 - a) "I will establish my covenant with you, that never again shall all bodily creatures be destroyed by the waters of a flood; there shall not be another

- flood to devastate the earth.” (*Gen. 9:11*)
- b) Jesus Promises to Gather His Covenant People to Himself at His Second Coming (*Like Noah Gathered His Family into the Ark*) 1 Thess. 4:13-18
 - (1) “For as it was in the days of Noah, so it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. In (those) days before the flood, they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day that Noah entered the ark. They did not know until the flood came and carried them all away. So will it be (also) at the coming of the Son of Man. Two men will be out in the field; one will be taken, and one will be left. Two women will be grinding at the mill; one will be taken, and one will be left. Therefore, stay awake! For you do not know on which day your Lord will come.” *Matt. 24:37-42*
 - c) Jesus Promises to Return to Earth to Destroy All the Forces of Evil & Judge All the Nations *Matt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21*
 - d) Jesus Promises to Return to Earth to Rule the Nations as King of Kings *Psa. 2; Psa. 96; Zech. 14:6-11 & 16-21; Rev. 19:11 – 20:10*
 - c. Lord Seals His Covenant with a Sign – A Rainbow
 - 1) “This is the sign that I am giving for all ages to come, of the covenant between me and you and every living creature with you: I set my bow in the clouds to serve as a sign of the covenant between me and the earth.” (*Gen. 9:13*)
 - 2) *Rainbow Symbolizes Lord’s Promise of Redemption Offered to All Races / Nations (Descendants of Noah), Fulfilled through Jesus Christ Our Lord & Savior – the ‘Light of the World’ (John 3:19-21; John 8:12).*
 - 3) *Rainbow Symbolizes Messiah’s Kingdom Consisting of Peoples from All Eras, Diverse Races, Peoples, Cultures and Nations Under His Supreme Rule.*
 - a) “..... Christ Jesus, Who, though he was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God something to be grasped. Rather, he emptied himself, taking the form of a slave, coming in human likeness; and found human in appearance, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, even death on a cross. Because of this, God greatly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bend, of those in heaven and on earth and under the earth, and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father.” *Phil. 2:5-11*

D. The Abrahamic Covenant

In this Covenant the Lord God Selects a Particular People (Descendants of Abraham) as His Chosen People Who Will Bring the Lord’s Promise of Redemption to the World. Jesus Christ Fulfills the Abrahamic Covenant by Being the Chosen Descendant of Abraham through Whom Redemption is Provided to Mankind.

The Terms of this Covenant are Abraham’s Faith & Obedience to the Lord, Establishing the Premise of God’s Expectation of His Chosen People. Jesus Christ is the Only Truly Faithful & Obedient Descendant of Abraham, Fulfilling the Terms of Lord’s Covenant.

1. Descendants of Noah Formed Nations & Worshiped False Gods *Gen.10 & 11*
2. The Lord Announces His Covenant with Abram (Abraham)

(The Lord Reveals the Promises & Conditions of His Covenant with Abraham.)

 - a. Abram Lived in City of Ur of the Chaldeans (Southern Iraq)

(Citizens of Ur Worshiped a Moon God - Pagan Society in Need of Salvation)

- b. The Lord Calls Abram Gen. 12:1-3
- 1) The Lord Instructs Abram. “Go forth from the land of your kinsfolk and from your father’s house to a land that I will show you.”
(Lord Separates His Chosen, Abraham, from Pagan Society He Lived Among)
 - 2) The Lord Makes Covenant Promises to Abram
 - a) Father a Nation. “I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you; I will make your name great, so that you will be a blessing.
(Lord Chooses Abraham to Father His Covenant People/Nation)
 - b) God’s Favor on His Nation. “I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you; I will make your name great, so that you will be a blessing.
(The Lord Promises to Protect & Lavish Favor Upon His Covenant People/Nation. All Other Nations Will be Judged by How They Treat God’s People.)
 - c) Blessing to All Mankind. “All the communities of the earth shall find blessing in you.” *(Purpose of Lord’s Covenant is to Bring Salvation to the World through Abraham’s Lineage)*
 - 3) The Lord’s Covenant Promises are Personified by Jesus of Nazareth, Who Fulfills this Covenant by Providing the Way of Salvation to Mankind.
 - a) Jesus – Covenant Making Son of God – Produces a Family for Father God
Rom. 8:14-17; Gal. 4:1-7
 - (1) “I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you; I will make your name great, so that you will be a blessing.”
 - (2) “He (*Word of God*) was in the world (*as Jesus of Nazareth*), and the world came to be through him (*God the Son - Creator*), but the world did not know him. He came to what was his own (*God’s Covenant People*), but his own people did not accept him. But to those who did accept him he gave power to become children of God (*Jesus’ New Covenant Brethren*), to those who believe in his name, who were born not by natural generation nor by human choice nor by a man’s decision but of God.” John 1:10-13
 - (3) “But you (*Jesus’ New Covenant People*) are ‘a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people of his own, so that you may announce the praises’ of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. Once you were ‘no people’ (*Gentiles*) but now you are God’s people; you ‘had not received mercy’ but now you have received mercy.” 1 Pet. 2:9-10
 - b) God’s Eternal Blessing through His Son Jesus
 - (1) “I will make of you a great nation, and I will bless you; I will make your name great, so that you will be a blessing.”
 - (2) Jesus – God’s Eternal Blessing. “For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him. Whoever believes in him will not be condemned (*Forgiven of their Sins & Blessed*), but whoever does not believe has already been condemned (*Remaining Under the Curse of Sin*), because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.”
John 3:17-18
 - (3) Jesus Will Judge All the Nations John 5:19-30; Matt. 25:31-46

- “Then the king (*Messiah Jesus*) will say to those on his right, ‘Come, you who are blessed by my Father. Inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world..... whatever you did for one of these least brothers of mine, you did for me.’” (*Matt. 25:34-40*)
 - “Then he will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me, you accursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels.... what you did not do for one of these least ones, you did not do for me.’” (*Matt. 25:41-45*)
- c) Jesus is the Descendant of Abraham through Whom: “All the communities of the earth shall find blessing...”
- (1) Jesus’ Abrahamic Heritage
 - Earthly (*Adoptive*) Father Joseph Descended from Abraham (*Jesus Inherits Blessings of Abraham*) Matt. 1:1-17
 - Mother Mary Descended from Abraham Luke 3:23-34
 - (2) Jesus Conceived Within Virgin Mary by the Holy Spirit
Matt. 1:18-25; Luke 1:26-38
 - “And the angel said to her (*Virgin Mary*) in reply, ‘The holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. Therefore the child to be born will be called holy, the Son of God.’” (*Luke 1:35*)
 - (3) Jesus Christ Fulfills Lord’s Promise by Being the Descendant of Abraham through Whom the Whole World is Blessed
 - Mary’s Canticle While Carrying Jesus. “My soul proclaims the greatness of the Lord; my spirit rejoices in God my savior. For he has looked upon his handmaid’s lowliness; behold, from now on will all ages call me blessed. The Mighty One has done great things for me, and holy is his name. His mercy is from age to age to those who fear him He has helped Israel (*Abraham’s Natural Descendants*) his servant, remembering his mercy, according to his promise to our fathers, to Abraham and to his descendants forever.” Luke 1:46-55
 - God Fulfills His Promise to Abraham by Implanting His Son Jesus into Mary, a Descendant of Abraham
 - Mary is Blessed Because She was Chosen by God to Bring His Son into the World to Fulfill His Covenant
 - “All the Communities of the Earth” are Blessed Because Jesus Becomes the Savior Available to All Mankind
 - Priest’s Prophecy During Mary’s Pregnancy. “Then Zechariah his (*John the Baptist’s*) father, filled with the holy Spirit, prophesied, saying: ‘Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel, for he has visited (*God the Son Coming to Earth*) and brought redemption to his people. He has raised up a horn for our salvation within the house of David (*David a Descendant of Abraham; Jesus from Lineage of David*) his servant, even as he promised through the mouth of his holy prophets from of old: to show mercy to our fathers and to be mindful of his holy covenant and of the oath he swore to Abraham our father,” Luke 1:67-75

- (4) God Effects His Plan of Salvation through Jesus. “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son (*Jesus of Nazareth*), so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life.” John 3:16
- (5) Jesus Commissions His Disciples to Bless All Communities of the Earth. “Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel (*of Salvation*) to every creature (*All Peoples*). Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned.” Mark 16:15-16
- (6) Lord’s Promises to Abraham Received by Faith. “Scripture, which saw in advance that God would justify the Gentiles by faith (*In Jesus*), foretold the good news to Abraham, saying, ‘Through you shall all the nations be blessed.’ Consequently, those who have faith are blessed along with Abraham who had faith.” Gal. 3:8-9
- c. Abram Migrates to Canaan (Promised Land) Gen. 12:4-5
(Abraham Exhibits His Understanding of Covenant by Faithful Obedience to Lord) (Jesus Understands His Salvific Mission and Fulfills it by His Faithful Obedience to Father God. Luke 19:9-10; John 5:19-20; John 14:9-11; Phil.2:5-8)
- 1) Abram Accompanied by His Wife Sarai (Sarah) & Nephew Lot
 - 2) Abram Trusts in Lord, Following His Direction
 - a) “By faith Abraham obeyed when he was called to go out to a place that he was to receive as an inheritance; he went out, not knowing where he was to go. By faith he sojourned in the promised land as in a foreign country” Heb. 11:8-9a
 - 3) The Lord Directs Abram to the Promise Land
(A Land for His Chosen People/Nation)
 - a) *Jesus was Born in Promise Land (Approximately 2000 Years Later)*
 Luke 2:1-7
- d. Abram Claims the Land for Lord & His People Gen. 12:6-9
- 1) Lord Appears to Abram at Shechem
 - a) Lord Declares it to be the Promise Land: “To your descendants I will give this land.” (*Gen. 12:7b*)
 - b) Abram Builds an Altar to the Lord (*Place of Sacrifice*)
 - 2) Abram Travels in Promise Land
 - a) Builds an Altar, Between Bethel & Ai, Invoking Name of the Lord
- e. Abram Later Travels to Egypt to Survive Famine Gen. 12:10-20
Child Jesus Taken into Egypt to Survive a Threat on His Life Matt. 2:2:1-18 (Both Leaving the Promise Land)
- f. Abram Returns to Promise Land Gen. 13
Child Jesus Returns to Promise Land to Mature, Learn & Prepare for Ministry Matt. 2:19-23
- 1) Abram Goes to Site Where He Built an Altar & Invoked Name of the Lord
 - 2) Lord Reaffirms His Promises to Abram Gen. 13:14-18
 - a) Confirming the Promise Land. “Look about you, and from where you are, gaze to the north and south, east and west; all the land that you see I will give to you and your descendants forever.
 - b) A Great Nation. “I will make your descendants like the dust of the earth (*Natural/Earthly Descendants*); if anyone could count the dust of the earth, your descendants too might be counted.

- c) Discover the Promise Land. “Set forth and walk about in the land, through its length and breadth, for to you I will give it.”
 - 3) God Reaffirms His Promises to Jesus at Conclusion of His Public Ministry
John 12:23-28
 - a) Jesus Announces His Pending Sacrifice:
 - (1) “The hour has come for the Son of Man to be glorified. Amen, amen, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls to the ground and dies, it remains just a grain of wheat; but if it dies, it produces much fruit...”
 - (2) “Father, glorify your name.”
 - b) “Then a voice came from heaven, ‘I have glorified it (In Old Covenant) and will glorify it again (In Jesus’ New Covenant).’”
 - 4) Abram Settles in Hebron
 - a) Builds an Altar to the Lord
 - 5) Jesus Christ Fulfills the Lord’s Covenant Promises to Abraham by His Ministry, Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection in the Promise Land.
3. The Lord Seals His Covenant with Abram Gen. 15
(The Lord Seals His Covenant with Abraham by Blood Sacrifice; Foreshadowing the Sacrifice His Son Jesus Will Make for the Atonement of Sins, Sealing His New & Everlasting Covenant.)
- a. The Lord Addresses Abram in a Vision: “Fear not, Abram! I am your shield; I will make your reward very great.” (*Gen. 15:1b*)
 - 1) Abram Questions the Lord: “O Lord GOD, what good will your gifts be, if I keep on being childless and have as my heir the steward of my house, Eliezer? See, you have given me no offspring, and so one of my servants will be my heir.” (*Gen. 15:2-3*)
 - a) Abram Remains Childless After Many Years (*Awaiting Lord’s Promise*)
 - b) Abram & Sarai are Advanced in Years
 - c) *The Lord’s Covenant Promises Seemed Unfulfilled to Jews as they Wait for Centuries for the Promised Son (Messiah) to Bring Salvation.*
 - 2) Lord Reassures Abram of His Promise
 - a) “No, that one shall not be your heir; your own issue shall be your heir.
 - (1) Jesus Christ is God’s Promise Son. “But when the fullness of time had come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, to ransom those under the law, so that we might receive adoption.”
Gal. 4:4-5
 - b) “Look up at the sky and count the stars (*Spiritual Descendants*) if you can. Just so, shall your descendants be.” (*Gen. 15:4-5*)
 - (1) Promise Fulfilled by Multitudes of People Who Put their Faith in Jesus Christ, Becoming Abraham’s Spiritual Descendants
Rom. 4; Gal. 3
 - 3) “Abram put his faith in the LORD, who credited it to him as an act of righteousness.” (*Gen. 15:6*)
 - a) *Abraham was Justified by His Faith in the Lord*
 - (1) “Indeed, if Abraham was justified on the basis of his works, he has reason to boast; but this was not so in the sight of God. For what does the scripture say? ‘Abraham believed God, and it was credited to him as righteousness.’ A worker’s wage is credited not as a gift, but as something due. But when one does not work, yet believes in the one

who justifies the ungodly, his faith is credited as righteousness.”
Rom. 4:2-5

- b) Jesus Put His Faith in Father God, Releasing His Spirit in Death
 - (1) “Jesus cried out in a loud voice, ‘**Father, into your hands I commend my spirit**’; and when he had said this he breathed his last” Luke 23:46
- c) We are Justified by Faith in Our Lord Jesus Christ
 - (1) “For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this is not from you; it is the gift of God; it is not from works, so no one may boast. For we are his handiwork, created in Christ Jesus for the good works that God has prepared in advance, that we should live in them.” Eph. 2:8-10
- b. Lord Confirms His Promise: “I am the LORD who brought you from Ur of the Chaldeans to give you this land as a possession.” (*Gen. 15:7*)
 - 1) Abram Asks: “How am I to know that I shall possess it?” (*Gen. 15:8*)
 - 2) Lord Prescribes a Sacrifice (*Demonstrating His Requirement of Blood Sacrifice to Execute & Put into Effect a Covenant with Him.*)
 - a) “Bring me a three-year-old heifer, a three-year-old she-goat, a three-year-old ram, a turtle-dove, and a young pigeon.” (*Gen. 15:9*)
 - b) Lord’s Prescribed Sacrifice Represents the Reuniting of God (*Father, Son & Holy Spirit*) with Man (*Body, Soul/Mind & Spirit*) through Jesus Christ’s Crucifixion & Death; Fulfilling the Old Covenant & Establishing His New Covenant.
 - 3) Abram Obeys the Lord, Preparing the Prescribed Sacrifice
 - a) Brings the Required Animals
 - (1) *Jesus Christ Presents Himself as the Lord’s Holy & Perfect Sacrifice*
Heb. 10:5-7
 - b) Splits Heifer, She-Goat & Ram in Two; but Does Not Split the Birds
 - (1) *Jesus Spread Out in Crucifixion Between Old & New Covenants*
 - *The Spirit of Lord (Represented by Birds) Remains in Tact*
 - (2) *Christ’s Crucifixion Splits Humanity (Believers & Unbelievers)*
 - c) Places their Halves Opposite Each Other
 - (1) *Symbolizes Jesus Christ Crucified Between Two Criminals (Sinners) – One Repentant, the Other Unrepentant* *Luke 23:39-42*
 - d) Birds of Prey Swoop Down on Carcasses
 - (1) *Represents the Forces of Evil that Attack Jesus as He is Being Persecuted, Suffers & Hangs Dying on the Cross*
 - e) Abram Remains with His Sacrifice
 - (1) *Represents Jesus Remaining Steadfast on the Cross Until He Completely Conquers Sin & the Forces of Evil* *John 19:30*
 - 4) Abram Falls into Deep Trance When Sun is About to Set
 - a) *Jesus Dies on Cross Before Sun Set (End of Jewish Day)*
Mark 15:37 & 42-43
- c. Lord Seals His Covenant
 - 1) Lord Prophesies the Establishment of Abram’s Descendants into a Nation
 - a) “Know for certain that your descendants shall be aliens in a land not their own, where they shall be enslaved and oppressed for four hundred years. But I will bring judgment on the nation they must serve, and in the end they will depart with great wealth. You, however, shall join your

forefathers in peace; you shall be buried at a contented old age. In the fourth time-span the others shall come back here (*Promise Land*);

(*Gen. 15:13-16*)

b) *Promise Land Occupied by Pagan Peoples/Nation(s) When Both Abraham & Jesus Lived There.*

(1) *Jesus' Parallel Prophecies:*

- *Predicts Dispersion of Jewish People from Promise Land*
Matt. 23:34-39; Luke 19:41-44; Luke 21:20-24
- *Predicts the Return of Jewish Nation to Promise Land*
Matt. 24:29-36; Luke 21:25-28
- *Predicts His Judgment of the Nations* *Matt. 25:31-46*

(2) *Jesus Will Rescue, Establish & Rule His Earthly Kingdom, When His Kinsmen (Natural Descendants of Abraham) Recognize & Accept Him as their Messiah* *Zech. 12; Zech. 14; Matt. 23:39*

2) Sacrifice Consumed by Hand of the Lord (*Sealing His Covenant*). “When the sun had set and it was dark, there appeared a smoking brazier and a flaming torch, which passed between those pieces.” (*Gen. 15:17*)

a) Jesus, Son of God, Voluntarily Offers Himself as Lord's Holy Sacrifice (*Sacrifice Provided by Hand of God*) *Matt. 26:47-54; John 10:14-18; John 19:10-11; Heb. 10:5-7*

(1) Darkness Envelopes the Land as Jesus is Dying on the Cross
Luke 23:44-45

b) Jesus, Son of God, is Physically Consumed on Cross Securing & Sealing His New Covenant, Freeing Us from the Curse of Sin & Death

(1) “I gave my back to those who beat me (*Scourging*), my cheeks to those who plucked my beard; My face I did not shield from buffets and spitting.” *Isa. 50:6*

(2) “Even as many were amazed at him— so marred was his look beyond that of man, and his appearance beyond that of mortals” *Isa. 52:14*

(3) “Like water my life drains away (*Dehydrating on Cross*); all my bones grow soft (*Body Becoming Limp on Cross*). My heart has become like wax, it melts away within me (*Agony of Crucifixion / Suffocation*). As dry as a potsherd is my throat; my tongue sticks to my palate (*Jesus Thirsts*); you lay me in the dust of death (*Dies on Cross*). Many dogs (*Gentiles*) surround me; a pack of evildoers closes in on me. So wasted are my hands and feet (*Hands & Feet Nailed to Cross*) that I can count all my bones (*Hanging Exposed on Cross*).....”

Psa. 22:15-18

(4) “And even when you were dead (in) transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, he (*Jesus Christ*) brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions; obliterating the bond against us (*Curse of Sin & Death*), with its legal claims, which was opposed to us, he also removed it from our midst, nailing it to the cross; despoiling the principalities and the powers (*Sin, Satan & Forces of Evil*), he made a public spectacle of them, leading them away in triumph by it.” *Col. 2:13-15*

3) Lord Confirms His Covenant: “To your descendants I give this land, from the Wadi of Egypt to the Great River (the Euphrates),” (*Gen. 15:18-21*)

a) **Jesus Specifies & Confirms His New Covenant Providing a Heavenly & Eternal Home for Abraham's Spiritual Descendants**

4. Sign of the Lord's Covenant with Abraham

- a. Sign of Circumcision Gen. 17
- 1) Lord Appears to Abram Gen. 17:1-22
- a) Lord Confirms His Covenant with Abram Gen. 17:1-8
(Spiritually Foreshadows Jesus' New Covenant of Salvation)
- (1) Abram 99 Years Old *(Dead in the Flesh. Unable to Sire Children)*
(Man Spiritually Impotent & Dead in Sin. Rom. 3:23; Rom. 6:23)
- (2) Lord Says to Abram: "I am God the Almighty. Walk in my presence and be blameless *(Continue to Live by Faith & Obedience)*. Between you and me I will establish my covenant, and I will multiply you exceedingly." *(Gen. 17:1-2)*
(Jesus' New Covenant Promise of Salvation is Contingent Upon Our Faith in Him as Lord & Savior. John 3:16-18; John 5:24; John 14:6)
- (3) Lord Confirms His Promise: "My covenant with you is this: you are to become the father of a host of nations." *(Gen. 17:4)*
(Jesus' New Covenant is Available to All Peoples/Nations. Matt. 8:5-13; Mark 16:15-18; Acts 1:8; Acts 10)
- (4) Lord Changes Abram's Name to "Abraham" ("Father is Exalted")
(New Life that's Dependant upon the Lord.)
(Man Must be 'Born Again' into the Family of God & Live Dependant Upon Lord Jesus. John 3:3 & 5-8; Rom. 8:14-17; Rom. 1:16-17)
- "No longer shall you be called Abram; your name shall be Abraham, for I am making you the father of a host of nations"
 - "I will render you exceedingly fertile; I will make nations of you; kings shall stem from you. I will maintain my covenant with you and your descendants after you throughout the ages as an everlasting pact, to be your God and the God of your descendants after you." *(Jesus' New Covenant is Eternal)*
 - "I will give to you and to your descendants after you the land in which you are now staying, the whole land of Canaan, as a permanent possession; and I will be their God." *(Gen. 17:5-8)*
- (5) *Our Covenant Relationship with Christ Jesus*
- "I have been crucified with Christ; yet I live, no longer I, but Christ lives in me; insofar as I now live in the flesh, I live by faith in the Son of God who has loved me and given himself up for me." *Gal. 2:19b-20*
- b) Lord Institutes Circumcision - Sign of His Covenant Gen. 17:9-14
(Blood Covenant Applied to Man's Means of Procreation)
- (1) "On your part, you and your descendants after you must keep my covenant throughout the ages."
- (2) "This is my covenant with you and your descendants after you that you must keep: every male among you shall be circumcised."
(Circumcision Initiates a Male Under the Lord's Covenant with Abraham)
- (3) "Circumcise the flesh of your foreskin, and that shall be the mark of the covenant between you and me. Throughout the ages, every male

among you, when he is eight days old, shall be circumcised,.....”
(8 is the Number of New Beginnings. Newborn Sons Brought Under the Lord’s Covenant on their 8th Day)

- (4) “.....Thus my covenant shall be in your flesh as an everlasting pact.”
(Lord’s Covenant with Abraham is Perpetual)
- (5) “If a male is uncircumcised, that is, if the flesh of his foreskin has not been cut away, such a one shall be cut off from his people; he has broken my covenant.” *(Gen. 17:9-14)*
- (6) **Jesus was Circumcised Placing Him Under the Abrahamic Covenant.**
- “When eight days were completed for his circumcision, he was named Jesus, the name given him by the angel before he was conceived in the womb.” Luke 2:21
- (7) *Jesus’ New Covenant is Not Transmitted by Natural Procreation (Like Abraham’s), but by the Spiritual Application of His Blood to His Posterity throughout the Generations.*
- c) **Lord’s Prediction & Promise - A New Beginning** Gen. 17:15-22
- (1) **Abraham’s Wife Sarai is Beyond Child Bearing Years**
- (2) **Lord Changes Sarai’s Name to “Sarah” (“Princess”).** “As for your wife Sarai, do not call her Sarai; her name shall be Sarah. I will bless her *(Sarah Prefigures Virgin Mary)*, and I will give you a son by her. Him also will I bless; he shall give rise to nations, and rulers of peoples shall issue from him *(Fulfilled by Jesus Christ – King of Kings & Lord of Lords).*”
- Covenant will be Bestowed on Son of Abraham & Sarah *(Virgin Mary a Descendant of Sarah)*
- (3) **Abraham Laughs to Himself:** “Can a child be born to a man who is a hundred years old? Or can Sarah give birth at ninety?”
- (4) **Abraham Says to Lord:** “Let but Ishmael live on by your favor!”
(Ishmael Born to Abram & Hagar a Maidservant of Sarai. Gen. 16)
- (5) **The Lord’s Response.** “Nevertheless, your wife Sarah is to bear you a son, and you shall call him Isaac. I will maintain my covenant with him as an everlasting pact, to be his God and the God of his descendants after him.” *(Gen. 17:15-19)*
- Covenant Confirmed with Isaac, Before He is Conceived
 - **Jesus of Nazareth is from Lineage of Isaac - Appointed & Announced by the Lord to Joseph & Mary as His Holy Anointed One Before He was Conceived** Matt. 1:18-25; Luke 1:26-38
 - “Then the angel said to her, ‘Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. Behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High,..... and of his kingdom there will be no end’” *(Luke 1:30-33)*
 - **Jesus Christ will Fulfill the Abrahamic Covenant, Establishing & Ruling Over a New Eternal Covenant**
- 2) **Abraham Circumcises Himself, Ishmael, All His Male Slaves & Household**
 Gen. 17:23-27
- a) *The Lord Instituted the Rite of Circumcision with Abraham to Mark His Covenant People & Put His Seal of Righteousness Upon Them*

b) *Abraham Acts Upon His Faith, Obeying His Lord by Performing the Rite of Circumcision*

3) Circumcision Under Christ's New Covenant

a) Question of Circumcision Arises in Early Church When Gentiles (*The Uncircumcised*) Believe in Jesus as the Messiah (Christ)

(1) The Initial Church was a Jewish Sect Acts 1 - 9

(2) The Lord Calls Peter to Expand His Gospel to Gentiles Acts 10

- Peter Obeys the Lord & Proclaims Gospel to Gentiles
 - The Holy Spirit Sovereignly Descends Upon those Gentiles (*As on Jewish Believers on Day of the Pentecost. Acts 2:1-4*)
 - Gentile Believers Baptized in Name of Jesus Christ

(3) Church Leaders Confront Peter for Associating with Gentiles Acts 11:1-18

- Peter Testifies of Lord's Call & Gentiles' Acceptance of Gospel
- Church Leaders Rejoice: "God has then granted life-giving repentance to the Gentiles too." (*Acts 11:18b*)
- Church Continues to Expand Among Gentiles

(4) Church Council Held in Jerusalem Acts 15:1-35

- Some Officials Insist Gentiles be Circumcised: "Unless you are circumcised you cannot be saved." (*Acts 15:1b*)
- Council Decides that Gentiles Do Not Have to be Circumcised
- Council Establishes Basic Instructions for Gentiles to be Disseminated Among Church Communities
 - Releasing Them from the Requirement of Circumcision

b) *Abraham was Considered Righteous, Before the Lord God Gave Him the Rite of Circumcision*

(1) Previously, "Abram put his faith in the LORD, who credited it to him as an act of righteousness." (*Re: Gen. 15:6*)

(2) "..... we assert that 'faith was credited to Abraham as righteousness.' Under what circumstances was it credited? Was he circumcised or not? He was not circumcised, but uncircumcised. And he received the sign of circumcision as a seal on the righteousness (previously) received through faith while he was uncircumcised. Thus he was to be the father of all the uncircumcised (Gentiles) who believe, so that to them (also) righteousness might be credited, as well as the father of the circumcised (Jews) who not only are circumcised, but also follow the path of faith that our father Abraham walked while still uncircumcised." *Rom. 4:9-12*

c) Christ's New Covenant Based on Spiritual Circumcision

(Circumcision that Cuts Away the Sinful Nature of Man & Applies the Sanctifying Blood of Christ)

(1) Spiritual Application of Circumcision. "Circumcision, to be sure, has value if you observe the law; but if you break the law, your circumcision has become uncircumcision. Again, if an uncircumcised man keeps the precepts of the law, will he not be considered circumcised? One is not a Jew outwardly. True circumcision is not outward, in the flesh. Rather, one is a Jew inwardly, and circumcision is of the heart, in the spirit, not the letter; his praise is

not from human beings but from God.” Rom. 2:25-29

(2) Christian Circumcision. “For in him (*Jesus Christ*) dwells the whole fullness of the deity bodily, and you share in this fullness in him, In him you were also circumcised with a circumcision not administered by hand, by stripping off the carnal body, with the circumcision of Christ. You were buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the power of God, who raised him from the dead. And even when you were dead (in) transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, he brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions;

Col. 2:9-15

(3) Unity in Christ Jesus. “Therefore, remember that at one time you, Gentiles in the flesh, called the uncircumcision by those called the circumcision (*i.e. Jews*), which is done in the flesh by human hands, were at that time without Christ, alienated from the community of Israel and strangers to the covenants of promise, without hope and without God in the world. But now in Christ Jesus you who once were far off have become near by the blood of Christ. For he is our peace, he who made both (*i.e. Jew & Gentile Believers*) one and broke down the dividing wall of enmity, through his flesh, abolishing the law with its commandments and legal claims, that he might create in himself one new person in place of the two, thus establishing peace, and might reconcile both with God, in one body, through the cross, putting that enmity to death by it.... for through him we both have access in one Spirit to the Father.”

Eph. 2:11-18

b. The Lord’s Visitation & Confirmation to Abraham Gen. 18:1-15

1) Lord Appears to Abraham as He Sat at Entrance of His Tent

a) Abraham Sees 3 Men (*Heavenly Visitors*) Standing Nearby

(1) Abraham Shows Visitors Hospitality

b) Visitors Ask: “Where is your wife Sarah?”

(1) Abraham Replies: “There in the tent,” (*Gen. 18:9*)

c) One of Visitors Prophesies: “I will surely return to you about this time next year, and Sarah will then have a son.” (*Gen. 18:10*)

(1) Abraham 99 Years Old & Sarah Stopped Her Womanly Cycles (*Sarah’s Barrenness Symbolically Represents Mary’s Virginity*)

- Angelic Announcement to Virgin Mary. “Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. Behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus.”

Luke 1:30-31

d) Sarah Overhears Them & Laughs to Herself: “Now that I am so withered and my husband is so old, am I still to have sexual pleasure?” (*Gen. 18:12*)

(1) Mary’s Reaction to Angel’s Announcement. “How can this be, since I have no relations with a man?” Luke 1:34

(2) Where Sarah Laughed, Mary Submitted to the Word of the Lord.

“Behold, I am the handmaid of the Lord. May it be done to me according to your word.” Luke 1:38

e) The Lord Says to Abraham: “Why did Sarah laugh and say, ‘Shall I really bear a child, old as I am?’ Is anything too marvelous for the LORD to do?”

At the appointed time, about this time next year, I will return to you, and Sarah will have a son.” (*Gen. 18:13-14*)

(1) God Decrees a Son at His Appointed Time.

(2) Jesus Christ Born at God’s Appointed Time. “But when the fullness of time had come, God sent his Son, born of a woman (*No Male Seed*), born under the law (*Covenant*)” Gal. 4:4

f) *Abraham Enlivened by Faith*

(1) “By faith he (*Abraham*) received power to generate, even though he was past the normal age—and Sarah herself was sterile—for he thought that the one who had made the promise was trustworthy. So it was that there came forth from one man, himself as good as dead, descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and as countless as the sands on the seashore.” *Heb. 11:11-12*

c. Birth of Isaac – Born Under Lord’s Covenant

Gen. 21:1-8

“For a child is born to us (*Jesus - Descendant of Abraham*), a son (*Messiah – Son of God*) is given us; upon his shoulder dominion rests. They name him Wonder-Counselor, God-Hero, Father-Forever, Prince of Peace.” *Isa. 9:5*

1) A Son was Born to Abraham & Sarah

a) Fulfilling the Lord’s Promise (*Re: Gen. 18:10*)

b) Messiah Jesus Born to Israel, Fulfilling the Lord’s Promise *Matt. 1:18-25*

2) Their Son was Born When the Lord Predicted (*Re: Gen. 18:14*)

a) Jesus Born as the Angel Predicted *Matt. 2:1a; Luke 2:1-7*

3) They Named their Son Isaac as Instructed by the Lord (*Re: Gen. 17:19*)

a) Mary & Joseph Name their Son Jesus as Instructed by the Lord

4) Abraham Circumcised Isaac on 8th Day as Prescribed by Lord (*Re: Gen. 17:9-12*)

a) Jesus Circumcised on 8th Day as Prescribed by Law *Luke 2:21*

5) Abraham 100 Years Old When Isaac was Born

a) “He (*Joseph*) had no relations with her (*Mary*) until she bore a son, and he named him Jesus.” *Matt. 1:25*

6) Sarah Praises God: “God has given me cause to laugh, and all who hear of it will laugh with me. Who would have told Abraham that Sarah would nurse children! Yet I have borne him a son in his old age.” (*Gen. 21:6-7*)

a) Mary’s Canticle: “My soul proclaims the greatness of the Lord; my spirit rejoices in God my savior. For he has looked upon his handmaid’s lowliness; behold, from now on will all ages call me blessed.....” *Luke 1:46-55*

7) Abraham Holds Great Feast the Day Isaac is Weaned

a) Jesus Holds a Great Feast at Completion of His Church Age *Matt. 22:1-14; Rev. 19:5-10*

5. Abraham’s Ultimate Offering

Gen. 22:1-19

Abraham’s Offering of His Son Isaac, Prefigures Father God’s Offering of His Son Jesus Christ.

a. The Lord Commands Abraham: “Take your son Isaac, your only one, whom you love, and go to the land of Moriah. There you shall offer him up as a holocaust (*Whole Burnt Offering*) on a height that I will point out to you.” (*Gen 22:2*) (*Image of God’s Eternal Covenant, Where God the Father Conceived of the Sacrifice of God the Son for the Redemption of Mankind. John 3:16*)

- 1) Mount Moriah is Future Site of the Temple in Jerusalem; Where Israel's Priests Offer Sacrifices in the Old Covenant – Fulfilled by Jesus Christ
- b. Abraham Obeys the Lord (*Exercising His Faith & Obedience*)
 - 1) Takes Isaac with 2 Servants & Goes to Land of Moriah
 - (a) *2 Servants Represent Old & New Covenants - Fulfilled by Jesus Christ's Sacrifice in Jerusalem (Land of Moriah)*
 - 2) Takes Wood for Holocaust Offering
 - a) *Wood for Sacrifice Symbolizes Jesus Christ's Cross*
- c. Abraham Offers His Son Isaac
 - 1) Abraham Sights the Place of Sacrifice on Third Day

Jesus Christ Sees His Sacrifice in Third Year of His Ministry Mark 10:33-34

 - a) Orders His Servants to Wait at a Distance
 - (1) *Fulfillment of Old Covenant & Establishment of New Covenant Must Wait for Jesus to Successfully Complete His Sacrifice*
 - 2) Abraham & Isaac Ascend Mount Moriah
 - a) Isaac Carries Wood on His Shoulders
 - (1) *Prefigures Jesus Carrying His Cross to Golgotha Matt. 27:32-33*
 - b) Abraham Carries the Fire & Knife
 - (1) *Symbolic of Father God Leading His Son Jesus throughout His Earthly Life to the Place of Sacrifice John 12:23-28*
 - 3) Isaac Questions His Father: "Father!..... Here are the fire and the wood, but where is the sheep for the holocaust?" (*Gen. 22:6-7*)
 - a) *Jesus, Knowing His Father's Plan, Asks: "My Father, if it is possible, let this cup (His Pending Suffering & Death) pass from me;*
 - b) *Jesus Voluntarily Submits His Life as God's Perfect Sacrifice. "yet, not as I will, but as you will."* *Matt. 26:39*
 - 4) Abraham Answers: "God himself will provide the sheep for the holocaust." (*Gen. 22:8*)
 - a) *Father God Provides His Son as His Sacrificial Lamb*
 - 5) Abraham Builds an Altar
 - a) Ties Up Isaac & Places Him on Wood of Altar
 - (1) *Jesus Secured to a Wooden Cross*
 - b) Raises the Knife to Sacrifice His Son
 - (1) *"By faith Abraham, when put to the test, offered up Isaac, and he who had received the promises was ready to offer his only son, of whom it was said, 'Through Isaac descendants shall bear your name.' He reasoned that God was able to raise even from the dead, and he received Isaac back as a symbol (Of Our Resurrected Lord)." Heb. 11:17-19*
 - 6) Abraham Obeyed the Lord - Putting His Faith into Action
 - a) *"Was not Abraham our father justified by works when he offered his son Isaac upon the altar? You see that faith was active along with his works, and faith was completed by the works." James 2:21-22*
- d. The Lord's Intervention

Prefigures Jesus – God the Son's – Intervention in Man's Condemnation for Sin, by Providing Himself as a Sacrifice to Atone for Man's Sins.

 - 1) Lord's Messenger Calls from Heaven: "Do not lay your hand on the boy. Do not do the least thing to him. I know now how devoted you are to God, since you did not withhold from me your own beloved son." (*Gen. 22:12*)

- a) *Father God Did Not Withhold His Son from the Cross, But Allowed Jesus to Voluntarily Offer Himself as a Sacrifice for Sin*
 (1) *“.....Do you think that I cannot call upon my Father and he will not provide me at this moment (i.e. His Arrest) with more than twelve legions of angels? But then how would the scriptures be fulfilled which say that it must come to pass in this way?” Matt. 26:52-54*
- 2) *Abraham Sees a Ram Caught by its Horns in a Thicket*
 a) *Ram is a Type of Jesus Who Voluntarily Lays Aside His Divine Authority (Symbolized by Horns), Submitting Himself to the Intrigues / Conspiracies of Sinful Men (Symbolized by Thicket). Phil. 2:5-8*
 b) *Jesus is Crowned with Thorns Before He was Crucified Matt. 27:27-31*
- 3) *Abraham Sacrifices the Ram*
 a) *Father God's Gives His Son as a Sacrifice for Sin. “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life.” John 3:16*
 b) *Jesus Christ Offers Himself as a Sacrifice, Taking Upon Himself the Sins of Mankind, Dying in Our Place*
 (1) *“For our sake he (Father God) made him (Jesus – Son of God) to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.” 2 Cor. 5:21*
- 4) *Abraham Names Place “Yahweh-Yireh”*
 a) *“The Lord – Shall be Seen” / “The Lord - Shall Provide”*
 (1) *From Mount Moriah, Abraham Could See the Site Where Jesus – Son of God – Would be Sacrificed*
 • *“Abraham your father rejoiced to see my day (Day Jesus was Crucified); he saw it and was glad.” John 8:56*
- 5) *Lord's Messenger Reiterates Lord's Covenant & Seals it by Divine Oath*
 a) *“I swear by myself (Oath in Name of Lord God Almighty), declares the LORD, that because you acted as you did in not withholding from me your beloved son,*
 (1) *“When God made the (Covenant) promise to Abraham, since he had no one greater by whom to swear, ‘he swore by himself,’ and said, ‘I will indeed bless you and multiply you’. And so, after patient waiting, he (Abraham) obtained the promise.” Heb. 6:13-15*
 b) *“I will bless you abundantly and make your descendants as countless as the stars of the sky and the sands of the seashore; your descendants shall take possession of the gates of their enemies, and*
 c) *“in your descendants all the nations of the earth shall find blessing—all this because you obeyed my command.” (Gen. 22:16-18)*
 (1) *“Now the promises were made to Abraham and to his descendant. It does not say, ‘And to descendants,’ as referring to many, but as referring to one, ‘And to your descendant,’ who is Christ.” Gal. 3:16*
 d) *By His Sacrifice, Jesus Christ Fulfills Lord God's Oath to Abraham*
 (1) *Jesus' Entrance into World. “Then Zechariah his (John the Baptist's) father, filled with the holy Spirit, prophesied, saying: ‘Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel, for he has visited and brought redemption to his people. He has raised up a horn for our salvation within the house of David his servant, even as he promised through the mouth of his*

holy prophets.... to show mercy to our fathers and to be mindful of his holy covenant and of the oath he swore to Abraham our father....”

Luke 1:67-75

- (2) Jesus’ Completed Work on Earth. “In this way the love of God was revealed to us: God sent his only Son into the world so that we might have life through him. In this is love: not that we have loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as expiation (*Paying the Penalty*) for our sins (*Through His Holy Sacrifice*).” 1 John 4:9-10

6. Lord Confirms His Covenant with Isaac

a. Abraham Becomes the Father of Many Nations as Promised by the Lord

Gen. 16; Gen. 17:20; Gen. 21:1-7; Gen. 25:1-6; Gen. 25:12-18

1) “Abraham deeded everything that he owned to his son Isaac.” (Gen. 25:5)

a) *Isaac, the Child of Promise.* “For not all who are of Israel are Israel, nor are they all children of Abraham because they are his descendants; but ‘It is through Isaac that descendants shall bear your name.’ This means that it is not the children of the flesh who are the children of God, but the children of the promise are counted as descendants.” Rom. 9:6b-8

b) *Jesus of Nazareth is a Descendant of Isaac* Matt. 1:1-17; Luke 3:23-34
(1) *Jesus is the Lord’s Child of Promise* Matt. 1:18-25; Luke 1:26-38

b. The Lord Chooses Isaac to Bestow His Covenant Gen. 26:1-6

(Fulfilling the Lord’s Promise to Abraham & Sarah. Gen. 17:19)

Jesus is the Inheritor of the Lord’s Covenant, Who Fulfills His Promises

1) Famine Came to Promise Land (*Symbolizing Spiritual Famine in Jesus’ Time*)

2) Lord Appears to Isaac (*Repeating His Covenant with Abraham*)

a) “Do not go down to Egypt, but continue to camp wherever in this land I tell you.” (*Trust in the Lord*)

(Jesus Trusted in Father God throughout His Entire Life on Earth.)

b) “Stay in this land, and I will be with you and bless you; for to you and your descendants I will give all these lands, in fulfillment of the oath that I swore to your father Abraham.”

c) “I will make your descendants as numerous as the stars in the sky and give them all these lands, and in your descendants all the nations of the earth shall find blessing”

(1) It is through Jesus, a Descendant of Isaac, that the Nations/Peoples of Earth will Find the Ultimate Blessing of Salvation.

d) “this because Abraham (*Jesus*) obeyed me, keeping my mandate (my commandments, my ordinances, and my instructions).” (Gen. 26:2-5)

3) Isaac Settles in Gerar (In Promise Land)

c. The Lord Prospers Isaac During Famine Gen. 26:12-13

d. The Lord Confirms His Covenant with Isaac Gen. 26:23-25

1) Isaac Goes to Beer-Sheba (In Promise Land)

2) Lord Appears to Isaac: “I am the God of your father Abraham. You have no need to fear, since I am with you. I will bless you and multiply your descendants for the sake of my servant Abraham.” (Gen. 26:24)

a) *God’s Promises are Fulfilled in and through Jesus Christ*

(1) *Jesus’ First Greetings After His Resurrection*

- To Women at Tomb. “Do not be afraid.” Matt. 28:10
- To His Disciples. “Peace be with you.” John 20:19

- (2) Two of the Innumerable Blessings Christ Bestows Upon His New Covenant People (Church)
- “My sheep hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me. I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish. No one can take them out of my hand.” John 10:27-28
 - “And whatever you ask in my name, I will do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything of me in my name, I will do it” John 14:13-14
- (3) Multiplication of Christ’s Brethren (Church) Matt. 28:18-20
- “All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me.
 - “Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you.
 - “And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.”
- 3) Isaac Builds an Altar (*Blood Sacrifice*) & Invokes Name of the Lord
- a) *Jesus Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice to Redeem Mankind, Putting into Effect & Sealing the Covenant Promises of God.*
7. Lord Confirms His Covenant with Jacob (Israel)
- a. Isaac has 2 Sons, Esau & Jacob Gen. 25:19-26
- 1) *Jacob, God’s Sovereign Choice.* “..... when Rebecca had conceived children by one husband, our father Isaac — before they had yet been born or had done anything, good or bad, in order that God’s elective plan might continue, not by works but by his call—she was told, ‘The older shall serve the younger.’ As it is written: ‘I loved Jacob but hated Esau.’” Rom. 9:9-13
- 2) *Jesus of Nazareth is a Descendant of Jacob* Matt. 1:1-17; Luke 3:23-34
- a) *Jesus is God’s Chosen One (Messiah).* “..... Jesus came from Nazareth of Galilee and was baptized in the Jordan by John. On coming up out of the water he saw the heavens being torn open and the Spirit, like a dove, descending upon him. And a voice came from the heavens, “You are my beloved Son; with you I am well pleased.” Mark 1:9-11
- b. The Lord Chooses Jacob to Bestow His Covenant Gen. 28:1-5
- Jesus is the Inheritor of the Lord’s Covenant, Who Fulfills His Promises*
- 1) Isaac Instructs Jacob to Go to Paddan-aram to Get a Wife from Among His Kinsmen (*Beyond the Euphrates Outside the Promise Land*)
- a) Isaac Blesses Jacob (*Passing On Lord’s Covenant with Abraham & Isaac*)
- (1) “May God Almighty bless you and make you fertile, multiply you that you may become an assembly of peoples.”
- (2) “May he extend to you and your descendants the blessing he gave to Abraham, so that you may gain possession of the land where you are staying, which he assigned to Abraham.” (Gen. 28:3-4)
- b) *Jesus Instructs His Disciples to Gather People into His Church (His Bride* John 3:22-30) Matt. 28:18-20; Mark 16:15-18
- (1) “But you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” Acts 1:8
- 2) Jacob Departs Beer-sheba & Goes on His Journey
- 3) Jacob Stops at Shrine & Altar Built by Abraham
(*Abraham’s First Altar in Promise Land. Gen. 12:7*)

- a) Places One of the Stones Under His Head & Lays Down to Sleep
- 4) Jacob Dreams of a Stairway to Heaven (*Jacob's Ladder*) Gen. 28:10-15
- a) God's Messengers Going Up & Down Stairway
- (1) Revealing the Way to Heaven will Come through the Line of Jacob – Fulfilled by Jesus, His Descendant
- Jesus Came from Heaven. “No one has gone up to heaven except the one who has come down from heaven, the Son of Man (Referring to Himself).” John 3:13
 - Jesus is the Way to Heaven. “I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.” John 14:6
 - Jesus Returned to Heaven, After Fulfilling the Lord's Covenant. “When he (*Jesus*) had said this (*Re: Acts 1:8*), as they were looking on, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him from their sight.” Acts 1:9
 - Promise of Jesus' Return from Heaven. “While they were looking intently at the sky as he was going, suddenly two men dressed in white garments stood beside them. They said, ‘Men of Galilee, why are you standing there looking at the sky? This Jesus who has been taken up from you into heaven will return in the same way as you have seen him going into heaven.’” Acts 1:10-11
- b) The Lord Stands Beside Jacob, Saying:
(*Confirming His Covenant with Jacob at Site Abraham Sacrificed to Lord*)
- (1) Confirming Land Promise. “I, the LORD, am the God of your forefather Abraham and the God of Isaac; the land on which you are lying I will give to you (*Jacob*) and your descendants.”
- (2) Confirming Seed Promise. “These (*Jacob's Descendants*) shall be as plentiful as the dust of the earth, and through them you shall spread out east and west, north and south. In you and your descendants all the nations of the earth shall find blessing.”
- *It is through Jesus, a Descendant of Jacob, that Nations/Peoples of the Earth will Find the Ultimate Blessing of Salvation*
- (3) Everlasting Covenant. “Know that I am with you; I will protect you wherever you go, and bring you back to this land. I will never leave you until I have done what I promised you.” (*Gen. 28:13-15*)
- Jesus' Promise of an Eternal Covenant. “My sheep (*His New Covenant People*) hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me. I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish. No one can take them out of my hand. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one can take them out of the Father's hand. The Father and I are one.” John 10:27-30
 - “And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.” Matt. 28:20b
- 5) Jacob Wakes from His Sleep, Exclaiming: Gen. 28:16-17
- a) “Truly, the LORD is in this spot, although I did not know it!”
- (1) Previewing Many of Jacob's Descendants Who Did Not Recognize the Lord – their Messiah
- Jesus Predicts Destruction of Jerusalem. “..... they (*Romans*) will not leave one stone upon another within you because you (*Jewish*)

Authorities – Descendants of Jacob) did not recognize the time of your visitation. Luke 19:41-44

- b) “How awesome is this shrine! This is nothing else but an abode of God, and that is the gateway to heaven!”
 (1) *Jesus Is the Gateway to Heaven. “I am the gate. Whoever enters through me will be saved, and will come in and go out and find pasture.”* John 10:9
- 6) Next Morning Jacob Takes the Stone from Under His Head Gen. 28:18-22
- a) Sets It Up as a Memorial Stone
 (1) Pouring Oil on It (*Symbolizing Lord’s Anointing*)
 (2) *Jesus the Lord’s Holy Anointed One & Chief Cornerstone of New Covenant. Matt. 21:33-46; Acts 4:8-12; Rom. 9:30-33; 1 Pet. 2:4-8*
- b) Calls Site “Bethel” (*Meaning “House of God”*) (*Previewing Lord’s Tabernacle/Temple on Earth. See “Mosaic Covenant” Below*)
 (1) *Symbolizes Jesus, the House of God in Bodily Form* John 2:13-22
 • *“Destroy this temple (Referring to His Body) and in three days I will raise it up.” (John 2:19)*
 (2) *Prefigures Christ’s Mystical Body – His Church* 1 Cor. 12:12-26
- c) Makes a Vow to the Lord
 (1) “If God remains with me, to protect me on this journey I am making and to give me enough bread to eat and clothing to wear, and I come back safe to my father’s house, the LORD shall be my God.
 • *Jacob’s Vow Previews Son of God’s Journey to Earth*
 - *Father God Remained with Jesus. “The Father and I are one.”* John 10:30
 - *Father God Protected Jesus. “For God commands the angels to guard you (Messiah) in all your ways. With their hands they shall support you, lest you strike your foot against a stone.”* Psa. 91:11-12
 - *Father God Provided for Jesus. “So do not worry and say, ‘What are we to eat?’ or ‘What are we to drink?’ or ‘What are we to wear?’ All these things the pagans seek. Your heavenly Father knows that you need them all. But seek first the kingdom (of God) and his righteousness, and all these things will be given you besides.”* Matt. 6:31-33
 - *Jesus Returned Triumphantly to Father God. “..... When he (Jesus Christ) had accomplished purification from sins, he took his seat at the right hand of the Majesty on high, as far superior to the angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs”* Heb. 1:1-4
- (2) “This stone that I have set up as a memorial stone shall be God’s abode. Of everything you give me, I will faithfully return a tenth part (10% Tithes) to you.” (*Gen. 28:20-22*)
 • *Jesus Christ Vows 100%. “.....when he (Son of God) came into the world, he said: ‘Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; holocausts and sin offerings you took no delight in.’ Then I said, ‘As is written of me in the scroll, Behold, I come to do your will, O God.’”* Heb. 10:5-7

- Jesus the Capstone of His New Covenant. “..... you (*Gentile Believers*) are fellow citizens with the holy ones (*Jewish Believers*) and members of the household of God, built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus himself as the capstone. Through him the whole structure is held together and grows into a temple sacred in the Lord; in him you also are being built together into a dwelling place of God in the Spirit.” Eph. 2:19-22
- 7) Jacob Arrives & Settles in Paddan-aram
- a) Marries 2 Wives & Sires 12 Children (*Jacob’s Family is Symbolic of Christ’s Family [His Church], Starting with Believing Jews, then Gentiles, and then Offspring Gathered from Among the Nations throughout the Age*)
- c. The Lord Confirms His Covenant with Jacob
- 1) Jacob Returns to Promise Land with His Family Gen. 31:1-18
 - a) Lord Instructs Jacob: “Return to the land of your fathers (*Promise Land*), where you were born, and I will be with you.” (*Gen. 31:3*)
 - (1) Confirming His Earlier Dream. “..... I am the God who appeared to you in Bethel, where you anointed a memorial stone and made a vow to me. Up, then! Leave this land and return to the land of your birth.” (*Gen. 31:12-13*)
 - b) Jacob’s Name Changed to Israel Gen. 32:23-31
 - (1) Jacob Enters Promise Land
 - (2) Man (*Angel of the Lord*) Wrestles with Jacob All Night
 - Man Strikes Jacob’s Hip Wrenching it Out of Socket
 - Man Says: “Let me go, for it is daybreak.” (*Gen. 32:27a*)
 - Jacob Replies: “I will not let you go until you bless me” (*Gen. 32:27b*)
 - Man Blesses Jacob: “You shall no longer be spoken of as Jacob, but as Israel, because you have contended with divine and human beings and have prevailed.” (*Gen. 32:29*)
 - Jesus Christ (Divine & Human) Contends with Evil & Prevails Matt. 4:1-11; John 18 - 21; Eph. 1:15-21; Phil. 2:5-11
 - “And even when you were dead (in) transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, he (*Jesus Christ*) brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions; obliterating the bond against us, with its legal claims, which was opposed to us, he also removed it from our midst, nailing it to the cross; despoiling the principalities and the powers, he made a public spectacle of them, leading them away in triumph by it.” Col. 2:13-15
 - (3) Jacob Names Place “Peniel” (*Meaning “The Face of God”*)
 - Jesus Reflects the Face of God. “..... **Whoever has seen me has seen the Father.....**” John 14:9
- c) Lord Instructs Jacob to Go to Bethel (“*House of God*”) Gen. 35:1-15
 - (1) Place Where Jacob Dreamt of Ladder to Heaven, Set Up a Memorial Stone & Made a Vow to Lord. (*Re: Gen. 28:10-22*)
 - (2) Jacob Purifies His Household & Goes to Bethel
 - Jesus Calls for Repentance: “**Repent, for the kingdom of heaven**

is at hand.”

Matt. 4:17

- d) Jacob & His Household Arrive at Bethel
- (1) Jacob Builds an Altar to Lord (*Blood Sacrifice*)
- Jesus Arrives at His Altar of Sacrifice. “Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and the scribes, and they will condemn him to death, and hand him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and scourged and crucified, and he will be raised on the third day.”
Matt. 20:18-19
- (2) Lord Appears to Jacob & Confirms His Covenant Gen. 35:9-13
- Changes His Name to Israel. “You whose name is Jacob shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel shall be your name.”
(Jesus’ New Covenant People Will be Known by a New Name: “Christians”. Acts 11:26b)
 - Confirming Israel as His Chosen People. “I am God Almighty; be fruitful and multiply. A nation, indeed an assembly of nations, shall stem from you, and kings shall issue from your loins.”
 - Fulfilled by Jesus Christ. “Behold, you (*Mary*) will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob (*Descendants from 12 Tribes of Israel*) forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end.”
Luke 1:31-33
 - Confirming Israel’s Promise Land. “The land I once gave to Abraham and Isaac I now give to you (Israel); And to your descendants after you will I give this land.” (*Gen. 35:10-12*)
 - Jesus Christ was Born, Ministered, Died, was Resurrected, & Birthed His Church (“an Assembly of Nations”) in the Promise Land
- (3) Israel Reaffirms Bethel as Sacred Site
- d. Israel’s Migration to Egypt Gen. 46
- (Fulfilling the First Part of the Lord’s Prophecy to Abraham. Gen. 15:13-16)*
- 1) Severe Famine in Middle East Gen. 41:53-57
- a) Joseph, Son of Jacob, Elevated to a Ruler in Egypt Gen. 41:41-46
- (1) Rescuing People from Starvation
- b) *Prefigures Jesus (Descendant of Jacob) Elevated to the Supreme Ruler of Heaven & Earth* Matt. 28:18; Phil. 2:5-11; Heb. 1:1-4
- (1) *Rescuing People from Spiritual Starvation (Sin & Death)*
- 2) Lord Appears to Jacob (Israel) in Night Vision:
- a) “I am God, the God of your father. Do not be afraid to go down to Egypt, for there I will make you a great nation. Not only will I go down to Egypt with you; I will also bring you back here (*To Promise Land*), after Joseph has closed your eyes.” (*Gen. 46:3-4*)
- (1) *Prophecy Not Only Applies to Jacob, but Also to His Descendants (Nation of Israel)*
- (2) *Prefigures Jesus’ Migration to/from Egypt as a Child* Matt. 2:13-15
- *Angel Appears to Joseph in a Dream. “....., ‘Rise, take the child*

(Jesus) and his mother (Mary), flee to Egypt, and stay there until I tell you. Herod is going to search for the child to destroy him.’” (Matt. 2:13)

- *Jesus Taken to Egypt to Rescue Him from Death*
- *Jesus Brought Back to Promise Land* *Matt. 2:19-23*

- 3) *Jacob (Israel), His Sons & their Families Migrate to Egypt*
- 4) *Israel Settles in Land of Goshen in Egypt* *Gen. 47:1-12*
- 5) *Jacob’s (Israel’s) 12 Sons Inherit the Lord’s Covenant with Abraham, Becoming the 12 Tribes of Israel* *Gen. 48*
 - a) *Israel Takes Possession of Joseph’s Sons – Ephraim & Manasseh (Placing Them Under Lord’s Covenant)*
 - (1) *Splits Heritage of Joseph into Two ½ Tribes of Ephraim & Manasseh*
 - (2) *“By faith Jacob, when dying, blessed each of the sons of Joseph and ‘bowed in worship, leaning on the top of his staff.’” Heb. 11:21*
 - b) *Israel Summons His Sons & Prophecies their Tribal Heritage* *Gen. 49:1-27*
 - (1) *Reuben*
 - (2) *Simeon*
 - (3) *Levi*
 - (4) *Judah (Jesus of Nazareth is a Descendant of Judah. Matt. 1:2-17; Luke 3:23-33)*
 - (5) *Zebulun*
 - (6) *Issachar*
 - (7) *Dan*
 - (8) *Gad*
 - (9) *Asher*
 - (10) *Naphtali*
 - (11) *Joseph*
 - (12) *Benjamin*
- 6) *Abrahamic Covenant Transferred to 12 Sons of Jacob (12 Tribes of Israel)*
 - a) *“Then he (Lord God) gave him (Abraham) the covenant of circumcision, and so he became the father of Isaac, and circumcised him on the eighth day, as Isaac did Jacob, and Jacob the twelve patriarchs.” Acts 7:8*

8. *Summary of Lord’s Everlasting Covenant with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob & Descendants of Israel. Summary of Jesus Christ’s Fulfillment of Lord’s Covenant with Abraham.*
 - a. *The Lord Selected Israel as His Chosen People/Nation*
 - 1) *Jesus of Nazareth, an Israelite, Chosen as God’s Holy Anointed One (Messiah)*
 - b. *The Lord Gave Israel a Promise Land*
 - 1) *Jesus is the Possessor & Ruler of an Eternal Kingdom*
 - c. *The Lord Bestows Blessing on Israel*
 - 1) *Promise to Bless Peoples/Nations that Bless Israel & Curse Peoples/Nations that Curse Israel*
 - a) *People Who Bless Jesus by Placing their Faith/Trust in Him are Blessed with Eternal Life. People Who Reject/Ignore Jesus Remain Under the Curse of Sin & Condemnation.*
 - b) *Jesus is Lord’s Righteous Judge of Israel & All the Nations of the World.*
 - 2) *Promise to Bless All the Nations of the World Through Israel*
 - a) *Jesus is the Descendant of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob (Israel) through Whom All the Nations of the World are Blessed.*

- d. *The Lord God Almighty, Creator of Heaven & Earth, Promises to be the God of Israel*
- 1) *Jesus is the Creative Word of God (Eternal Son of God), Who Became Israel's Messiah & Lord.*
- e. *Spiritual Descendants of Abraham*
- 1) *Jesus Christ Gains for People Who Accept Him as Lord & Savior, the Promises, Blessings & Inheritance God Gave to Abraham. Rom 4; Gal. 3*
- a) *“Amen, I say to you, in no one in Israel have I found such faith. I say to you, many will come from the east and the west (Alluding to Believing Gentiles), and will recline with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob at the banquet in the kingdom of heaven, but the children of the kingdom (Unbelieving Israelites) will be driven out into the outer darkness, where there will be wailing and grinding of teeth.” Matt. 8:10-12*
- b) *“For through faith you are all children of God in Christ Jesus. For all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free person, there is not male and female; for you are all one in Christ Jesus. And if you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham's descendant, heirs according to the promise.” Gal. 3:26-29*

E. The Mosaic Covenant

In this Covenant the Lord God Establishes Israel as His Chosen Nation, Giving them a Divine Constitution that Consists of Moral Laws, Civil Laws and Religious Laws. Through these Laws the Lord Reveals Himself to His People, His Way of Redemption and their Relationship with Him. He also Legislates Acceptable Conduct Before Him and Among Themselves. Jesus Publicly Declares: “Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill.” Matt. 5:17

- 1) *The Lord Extends the Covenant Promises He Gave to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob to the Nation/People of Israel (See Above Summary). Jesus Fulfilled the Lord's Covenant with Abraham, Isaac & Jacob. Luke 1:26-33 & 67-75*
- 2) *The Lord Expects the Nation and Peoples of Israel to Live by Faith in Him and Obedience to His Laws as the Terms of His Covenant. Jesus Lived His Entire Life on Earth Faithful to Father God and in Total Obedience to the Law. John 8:46*

This Section Reveals the Extent that the Lord God of Israel Will Go to Fulfill His Covenant with Abraham, Isaac & Jacob, and Establish His Covenant with their Descendants (Israel). God Reveals the Extent of His Love for Mankind by Sending His Only Son to Become a Holy Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin, Establishing a New Covenant of Reconciliation. “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him.” John 3:16-17

1. *Israel Living in Egypt*
- a. *Israel Enslaved by Egyptians After Many Years Ex. 1*
Symbolizes Mankind Enslaved by Sin. “Amen, amen, I say to you, everyone who commits sin is a slave of sin.” John 8:34
- 1) *Egypt Intimidated by Israel's Proliferation & Prosperity*
(Lord Fulfilling His Promise to Bless Descendants of Jacob/Israel)
- 2) *Pharaoh Enslaves Israelites*

- a) Israelites Continue to Multiply
- 3) Pharaoh Orders Israel's Newborn Sons Drowned
 - a) *Prefigures King Herod's Attempt to Kill Lord's Chosen One* *Matt. 2:1-18*
- b. Lord Sets Apart a Deliverer – Moses Ex. 2
(To Deliver His People from Bondage & Establish His Nation)
Prefigures Jesus of Nazareth Being Set Apart/Consecrated by God to Deliverer People from Bondage of Sin & Establish His Kingdom on Earth. Luke 2:22-50
 - 1) Moses' Life in Egypt
 - a) Lord Gives Levite Couple a Beautiful Son
 - (1) Couple Hide their Son for 3 Months
 - *Moses Preserved by His Parents' Faith*
(Exercising Terms of Lord's Covenant with their Forefathers)
 - *"By faith Moses was hidden by his parents for three months after his birth, because they saw that he was a beautiful child, and they were not afraid of the king's edict."*
Heb. 11:23
 - *Jesus, Lord's Chosen One, Hidden from the General Public for About 30 Years* *Luke 2:51-52; Luke 3:23a*
 - (2) Afterwards, they Put Him in Basket Placing it Among River Marshes
 - *Jesus is Baptized, Beginning His Public Ministry* *Luke 3:21-22*
 - b) Pharaoh's Daughter Retrieves Basket & Adopts Boy
 - (1) Names Him Moses
 - c) Foretaste of Moses Calling
 - (1) Moses Visits His Enslaved Kinsmen when He is Grown
 - (2) Moses Kills an Egyptian Taskmaster Mistreating an Israelite
 - (3) Pharaoh Seeks Moses' Life
 - (4) Moses Flees Egypt Going to Midian (*Arabia by Gulf of Aqaba*)
 - (5) *Moses' Faith in Identifying with His Enslaved Kinsmen*
(Exercising Terms of Lord's Covenant with His Forefathers)
 - *"By faith Moses, when he had grown up, refused to be known as the son of Pharaoh's daughter; he chose to be ill-treated along with the people of God rather than enjoy the fleeting pleasure of sin. He considered the reproach of the Anointed greater wealth than the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking to the recompense.*
 - *"By faith he left Egypt, not fearing the king's fury, for he persevered as if seeing the one who is invisible"* *Heb. 11:24-26*
 - (6) *Jesus Prepares for Ministry in Wilderness* *Matt. 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13*
(Foretaste of Jesus' Calling)
 - *Jesus Fasting & Praying – Seeking Father God's Direction*
 - *Satan Tempts Jesus in an Effort to Kill His Calling*
 - *Jesus Confronts, Rejects, Rebukes & Dismisses Satan*
 - *Jesus Leaves Wilderness & Begins His Public Ministry*
 - *Satan Bides His Time, Waiting for an Opportunity to Kill Jesus*
 - 2) Moses Settles in Midian
 - a) Moses Marries Daughter of Median Priest & Sires a Son
 - b) Pharaoh Who Sought Moses' Life Dies in Egypt
 - c) Israelites in Egypt Cry Out to the Lord

- (1) Lord Hears Their Cries & Remembers His Covenant. "...As their cry for release went up to God, he heard their groaning and was mindful of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob." (*Ex. 2:23-24*)
- c. Lord God Calls & Commissions Moses Ex. 3 – 4
Prefigures God's Call & Anointing of Jesus to Deliver Man from Bondage of Sin. Matt. 3:13-17; John 1:29-34; Luke 4:14-22
- 1) Moses Tending Sheep by Mount Horeb
 - a) *Jesus the Good Shepherd (Pastor)* *John 10*
 - 2) Angel of Lord Appears in Flaming Bush
 - a) Bush is Not Consumed
 - b) *Symbolizes Fire of Christ's Ministry – Which Lasts Throughout the Age*
 - (1) *Spiritual Zeal. "I (John) am baptizing you with water, for repentance, but the one (Messiah) who is coming after me is mightier than I...He will baptize you with the holy Spirit and fire." Matt. 3:11*
 - (2) *Divisiveness. "I have come to set the earth on fire (Purging Sin), and how I wish it were already blazing!....." Luke 12:49-53*
 - (3) *Separation at Judgment. "His winnowing fan is in his hand. He will clear his threshing floor and gather his wheat into his barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire." Matt. 3:12*
 - 3) Moses is Curious & Approaches the Bush
 - 4) Lord God Speaks from Flaming Bush
 - a) Addresses Moses: "Moses!" "Moses!"
 - b) Moses Answers: "Here I am"
 - c) God Says: "Come no nearer! Remove the sandals from your feet, for the place where you stand is holy ground." (*Ex. 3:5*)
 - d) God Identifies Himself: "I am the God of your father, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob." (*Ex. 3:6*)
 - (1) Moses Hides His Face in Fear
 - e) Lord States the Purpose of His Revelation: "I have witnessed the affliction of my people in Egypt and have heard their cry of complaint against their slave drivers, so I know well what they are suffering. Therefore I have come down to rescue them from the hands of the Egyptians and lead them out of that land into a good and spacious land, a land flowing with milk and honey (*Promise Land*), the country of the Canaanites....." (*Ex. 3:7-9*)
 - (1) *Purpose of God's Revelation of the Son of Man – Jesus Christ*
John 3:16-18; Luke 19:10; Heb. 2:14-18
 - *God Witnesses the Suffering of Mankind Under the Bondage & Torment of Sin, and its Taskmaster Satan*
 - *God Hears the Cries of People Seeking Deliverance*
 - *God Sends His Son to Earth to Redeem Mankind from Sin, Rescue Them from its Torments (Sickness, Poverty, Death, etc.) and the Oppressive Forces of Evil (Satan & His Minions); Bringing Mankind Back into His Eternal Presence.*
 - f) Lord Commissions Moses: "Come, now! I will send you to Pharaoh to lead my people, the Israelites, out of Egypt." (*Ex. 3:10*)
 - (1) *Father God Sends His Son to Lead His People Out of Bondage*
John 3:16-18
 - g) Moses Questions God: "Who am I that I should go to Pharaoh and lead the

Israelites out of Egypt?” (Ex. 3:11)

(1) *Where Moses Questioned God; Jesus – Son of God – Accepts & Embraces His Commission* Heb. 10:5-7

- h) God Assures Moses: “I will be with you; and this shall be your proof that it is I who have sent you: when you bring my people out of Egypt, you will worship God on this very mountain.” (Ex. 3:12)
(*Lord Will Give Israel His Covenant at Mount Horeb*)
- i) Moses Asks God His Name
(*Egyptians had Many Gods, All of Whom had Names*)
- j) God Replies:
- (1) “I am who am. This is what you shall tell the Israelites: I AM (“Yahweh”) sent me to you.” (Name Meaning: *I AM the Ever Present, Ever Living, No Beginning, No Ending God*)
 - (2) “Thus shall you say to the Israelites: The LORD (*Yahweh*), the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.
 - (3) “This is my name forever; this is my title for all generations.”
(Ex. 3:14-15)
 - (4) *Jesus Declares His Divine Lordship*. “So the Jews said to him, ‘You are not yet fifty years old and you have seen Abraham?’ Jesus said to them, ‘Amen, amen, I say to you, before Abraham came to be, I AM.’” John 8:57-58
 - *Jesus Claims to Have Existed Before their Forefather Abraham, with Whom God Made His Covenant*
 - *Jesus Applies the Personal Name of God “I AM” (“Yahweh”) to Himself*
(“*Jesus*” in Hebrew is “*Yeshua*”, Meaning: “*Yahweh is Salvation*”.
Re: *Matt. 1:20-21*)
- k) Lord Instructs Moses:
- (1) “Go and assemble the elders of the Israelites, and tell them: The LORD, the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, has appeared to me and said: I am concerned about you and about the way you are being treated in Egypt; so I have decided to lead you up out of the misery of Egypt into the land of the Canaanites,, a land flowing with milk and honey. (*Promise Land Inheritance*)
 - *Jesus’ Invitation: “Come to me, all you who labor and are burdened, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am meek and humble of heart; and you will find rest for your selves. For my yoke is easy, and my burden light (He Carries Our Burdens).”* Matt. 11:28-30
 - (2) “Thus they will heed your message. Then you and the elders of Israel shall go to the king of Egypt and say to him: The LORD, the God of the Hebrews, has sent us word. Permit us, then, to go a three days’ journey in the desert, that we may offer sacrifice to the LORD, our God. (*Acknowledging Lord as their God by Offering Him Sacrifices*)
 - *Jesus Will Offer Himself as a Sacrifice, Rising on the Third Day: “Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and the scribes, and they will*

condemn him to death, and hand him over to the Gentiles to be mocked and scourged and crucified, and he will be raised on the third day.” *Matt. 20:18-19*

- (3) “Yet I know that the king of Egypt will not allow you to go unless he is forced. I will stretch out my hand, therefore, and smite Egypt by doing all kinds of wondrous deeds there (*Revealing His Supremacy*). After that he will send you away.
- *Jesus Will Reveal His Supremacy by Conquering & Destroying Satan & All the Forces of Evil* *Col. 2:13-15*
- (4) “I will even make the Egyptians so well-disposed toward this people that, when you leave, you will not go empty-handed. Every woman shall ask her neighbor and her house guest for silver and gold articles and for clothing to put on your sons and daughters. Thus you will despoil the Egyptians.” (*Gen. 3:16-22*)
(*Recompense for Servitude of Lord’s Chosen People*)
- *Jesus Despoils All the Powers of Darkness* *Col. 2:13-15*
 - *Jesus Gains Wealth of the World for His People* *Matt. 25:14-30; Mark 10:28-30; Luke 6:38*
- 5) Lord Confirms Moses’ Commission *Ex. 4:1-17*
Jesus Confirms His Commission by Performing Works of God. “If I do not perform my Father’s works, do not believe me; but if I perform them, even if you do not believe me, believe the works, so that you may realize (and understand) that the Father is in me and I am in the Father.” *John 10:37-38*
- a) Moses Objects: “But, suppose they will not believe me, nor listen to my plea? For they may say, ‘The LORD did not appear to you.’” (*Ex. 4:1*)
- b) First Confirmation
- (1) Lord Tells Moses to Throw His Staff on Ground
(*Staff is Symbol of Authority*)
- Moses Does So, and Staff Turns into a Serpent
(*Serpent is Symbol of Satan – Source of Egyptian Religion*)
- (2) Lord Tells Moses to Grab Serpent’s Tail
- Moses Does So, and Serpent Turns Back into a Staff
(*Symbolizing Authority Over Satan & the Gods of Egypt*)
- (3) *Jesus Demonstrates Authority Over Demonic Powers* *Matt. 8:28-34*
- (4) “This will take place so that they may believe, that the LORD, the God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, the God of Jacob, did appear to you.” (*Ex. 4:5*)
- c) Second Confirmation
- (1) Lord Tells Moses to Put His Hand in His Bosom
(*Symbolizing Man’s Heart / Innermost Allegiance*)
- Moses Does So, and Withdraws a Leprous Hand
(*Leprosy Symbolizes Sin*)
- (2) Lord Tells Moses to Put His Hand Back in His Bosom
- Moses Does So, and Withdraws a Completely Restored Hand
(*Symbolizing the Lord’s Authority Over Sin*)
- (3) *Jesus Demonstrates Authority Over Sin*
- *By Living a Sinless Life* *John 8:46*
 - *By Curing Leprosy, the Symbol of Sin* *Luke 17:11-19*

- *Proving His Authority to Forgive Sin* *Mark 2:1-12*
- (4) “If they will not believe you, nor heed the message of the first sign, they should believe the message of the second.” (*Ex. 4:8*)
- d) Third Confirmation: “And if they will not believe even these two signs, nor heed your plea, take some water from the river and pour it on the dry land. The water you take from the river will become blood on the dry land.” (*Ex. 4:9*) (*Symbolizing Lord’s Authority Over Nature/Mankind*)
 - (1) *Jesus Demonstrates Authority Over Nature by Turning Water to Wine*
John 2:1-11
 - (2) *Water & Blood Previews Jesus’ Ministry & New Covenant*
- 6) Moses’ Reluctance
 - a) Moses Complains He is Not Eloquent & is Slow of Speech
 - (1) Lord Replies: “Who gives one man speech and makes another deaf and dumb? Or who gives sight to one and makes another blind? Is it not I, the LORD (*Creator*)? Go, then! It is I who will assist you in speaking and will teach you what you are to say.” (*Ex. 4:11-12*)
(Lord Will Anoint Moses with the Necessary Skills)
 - b) Moses Pleads: “If you please, Lord, send someone else!” (*Ex. 4:13*)
 - (1) Lord Angrily Replies
 - Take Your Brother Aaron as Spokesman
 - Take Your Staff to Perform Signs
- 7) Moses Returns to Egypt *Ex. 4:18-22*
As Lord Sent Moses to Deliver Israel from Bondage in Egypt; So, God Sent His Son, Jesus, into the World to Deliver Mankind from Bondage of Sin & Death.
 - a) Lord Orders Moses: “Go back to Egypt, for all the men who sought your life are dead.” (*Ex. 4:19*)
 - b) Moses, His Wife & Son Travel to Egypt
 - (1) Moses Carrying Staff of God (*Under Lord God’s Authority*)
 - c) Lord Warns Moses
 - (1) Pharaoh Will be Obstinate Refusing to Release Israel
 - (2) “So you shall say to Pharaoh: Thus says the LORD: Israel is my son, my first-born. Hence I tell you: Let my son go, that he may serve me. If you refuse to let him go, I warn you, I will kill your son, your first-born.” (*Ex. 4:22-23*)
 - d) Lord Comes Upon Moses to Kill Him at Night
 - (1) Fearful, Moses’ Wife Circumcises their Son
(Bringing Moses’ Posterity Under Lord’s Covenant. Gen. 17)
 - e) Lord Instructs Aaron to Meet Moses in Desert
 - f) Moses & Aaron Assemble Elders of Israel
 - (1) Aaron Tells Them Everything Lord Said to Moses
 - (2) Moses Performs Signs for People
 - (3) People Believe & Worship God
- 2. Lord Delivers Israel from Bondage *Ex. 5:1 – 12:36*
Foreshadows Jesus’ Deliverance of His Covenant People from the Bondage of Sin.
 - a. Moses & Aaron Initially Confront Pharaoh *Ex. 5:1 – 7:13*
Foreshadows Jesus’ Confrontations with the Authorities (Humanistic & Satanic) throughout His Public Ministry.

- 1) Moses & Aaron Declare Word of Lord, God of Israel, to Pharaoh
(*This Confrontation Sets Premise for Lord's Deliverance of His People*)
 - a) Allow Israelites to Go 3 Days into Desert to Sacrifice to Lord
(*Acknowledging the Lord as Their God*)
 - b) *Messiah Jesus Publicly Proclaims the Kingdom of Heaven Matt. 5 - 7*
- 2) Pharaoh Refuses
 - a) Doesn't Know the Lord & Won't Let People Go
(1) *Religious Authorities Do Not Recognize the Lord's Holy Anointed One (Messiah Jesus) John 5:41-43*
 - b) Increases Hardships on Israelite Slaves
(1) *Authorities had Increased Religious Burdens on People Matt. 23:1-12*
- 3) Foremen Complain to Pharaoh, Moses & Aaron
- 4) Moses Consults the Lord
 - a) Moses Complains to Lord
(1) *Jesus Never Complained to Father God, but Faithfully Executes His Ministry Despite the Circumstances*
 - b) Lord Answers Moses (*Repeating His Covenant Promises*)
Jesus Fulfills God's Covenant Promises
 - (1) His Objective for Israel. "Now you shall see what I will do to Pharaoh. Forced by my mighty hand, he will send them away; compelled by my outstretched arm, he will drive them from his land."
 - *Jesus Forcefully Delivers Us from the Bondage of Sin by His Outstretched Arms (On the Cross) John 8:34-36; Col. 2:13-15*
 - (2) His Revelation to Israel. "..... I also established my covenant with them, to give them the land of Canaan (*Promise Land*),"
 - *Jesus Establishes His New Covenant with Us Mark 14:22-25*
 - (3) His Promise to Israel. ".....I will take you as my own people, and you shall have me as your God. You will know that I, the LORD, am your God when I free you from the labor of the Egyptians and bring you into the land which I swore to give to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. I will give it to you as your own possession—I, the LORD!" (*Ex. 6:1-8*)
 - *We Know & Acknowledge Jesus as Our Lord & Savior, Who Delivers Us from Sin John 8:34-36; John 10:27-28; Matt. 10:32*
 - *We Become Jesus' Brethren Heb. 2:10-18*
 - *Jesus Gives Us a Heavenly Home John 14:1-3*
- 5) Moses Repeats Word of Lord to Israelites
 - a) They Refuse to Listen
 - b) *Many Jews Refuse to Listen to Jesus John 7:11-13*
- 6) Moses Consults Lord Again
 - a) The Lord's Command: "Go and tell Pharaoh, king of Egypt, to let the Israelites leave his land." (*Ex. 6:11*)
 - b) Moses Protests
 - (1) Israelites Wouldn't Listen to Him & Neither Will Pharaoh
 - c) Lord Orders Moses Back to Pharaoh: "I am the LORD. Repeat to Pharaoh, king of Egypt, all that I tell you." (*Ex. 6:29*)
 - d) Moses Continues to Protest
(1) *Jesus Continued to Minister as Directed by Father God Despite Rejection*

- e) Lord Encourages Moses (*Revealing His Strategy*)
- (1) “See! I have made you as God to Pharaoh,
 - Jesus Reveals His Divinity to Sanhedrin Matt. 26:63-64
 - High Priest Addresses Jesus: “I order you to tell us under oath before the living God whether you are the Messiah, the Son of God.’
 - Jesus Replies: “You have said so. But I tell you: From now on you will see ‘the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Power’ and ‘coming on the clouds of heaven.’” - (2) “Yet I will make Pharaoh so obstinate that, despite the many signs and wonders that I will work in the land of Egypt, he will not listen to you (*Sanhedrin Refuses to Listen to Jesus Despite the Many Miracles He Performed*). Therefore I will lay my hand on Egypt and by great acts of judgment I will bring the hosts of my people, the Israelites, out of the land of Egypt, so that the Egyptians may learn that I am the LORD, as I stretch out my hand against Egypt and lead the Israelites out of their midst.” (*Ex. 7:1-5*)
 - Authorities Become So Enraged Against Jesus that They Have Him Crucified, Fulfilling the Purpose of His Coming. Matt. 26:65-67; Matt. 27:1-2 & 11-56; 1 Cor. 2:6-16
 - (3) Jesus Rises from the Dead, Rescuing People from Bondage & Curse of Sin Acts 2:22-24; 1 Cor. 15:20-26; Gal. 2:13-15; Heb. 2:14-15
- 7) Lord Instructs Moses & Aaron to Perform a Sign Before Pharaoh
- a) Turn Staff into Serpent
- 8) Moses & Aaron Obey Lord & Return to Pharaoh
- a) Aaron Throws His Staff to Ground
 - (1) Staff Turns into a Serpent
 - (2) *Jesus Casts Out Demons Demonstrating His Authority Matt. 12:22*
 - b) Pharaoh Summons His Wise Men, Sorcerers & Magicians
 - (1) Each One Throws His Staff to Ground
 - Staffs Turn into Serpents (*Duplicating Lord’s Sign by Black Arts*)
 - (2) Aaron’s Staff Swallows Egyptian Staffs (*Showing Superiority*)
 - (3) *Authorities Accuse Jesus of Expelling Demons by Beelzebul (Satan) Matt. 12:23-37*
 - *Jesus Replies:*
 - “Every kingdom divided against itself will be laid waste, and no town or house divided against itself will stand. And if Satan drives out Satan, he is divided against himself; how, then, will his kingdom stand?
 - “And if I drive out demons by Beelzebul, by whom do your own people drive them out?” .
 - “But if it is by the Spirit of God that I drive out demons, then the kingdom of God has come upon you.” (*Matt. 12:25b-28*)
- c) Pharaoh Remains Obstinate, Refusing to Listen to Them
 - (1) *Sanhedrin Remains Obstinate, Refusing to Listen to Jesus John 7:45-53; John 11:45-53*

Comments

1) The Lord did not arbitrary perform signs and send plaques on Egypt. In each confrontation, the Lord

demonstrates His Power and Supremacy over the Egyptian authorities and/or a major Egyptian God. (For example the Lord blotted out the Sun and the source of light in the 9th plague, demonstrating His supremacy over the Egyptian Sun God “Ra”). Yahweh was then the only one able to stop each plague, proving His Sovereignty.

- 2) Through these signs and plagues, the Lord also reveals His Power, Authority and Supremacy to His Chosen People, so that they will fear (awe) Him and place their trust (faith) in Him, the only True God.
- 3) Jesus Christ contended with the temptations and vicissitudes of life, unbelieving and unfaithful people, Satanic and evil forces, hateful and jealous authorities, etc. The oppositions He experienced were far beyond anything we can imagine. He confronted each and every opposition, overcoming them all; thereby, equipping Him to be the source of our victory and our intercessor/mediator with Father God.
 - *“In the world you will have trouble, but take courage, I have conquered the world.”* (John 16:33b)
 - *“For we do not have a high priest (Jesus Christ) who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has similarly been tested in every way, yet without sin. So let us confidently approach the throne of grace to receive mercy and to find grace for timely help.”* (Heb. 4:15-16)
- 4) Through Jesus’ victorious life, His words and the miraculous works He performed, God reveals His Holy Anointed One to the people; so that they will believe and put their faith in Him, receiving deliverance and redemption from sin, and leading them to life eternal with the only True God.

b. Lord God Sends Plagues on Egypt

Ex. 7:14 - 12:30

The 10 Plagues the Lord Sent on Egypt are a Spiritual Overview of Jesus’ Ministry: Plague 1 Foreshadows the Beginning of Jesus’ Ministry.

Plagues 2 – 8 Foreshadow Various Types of Opposition Jesus Encountered During His Ministry (i.e. “Gods” of this World), All of which He Confronted & Conquered. {A Sampling of these Opposing Forces are Identified Below with Each Plague.}

Plague 9 Foreshadows the Primary Purpose of Jesus’ Ministry, the Deliverance & Redemption of Mankind from Sin.

Plague 10 Prefigures the Means the Lord Used to Provide & Secure Redemption for Mankind, Culminating Jesus’ Ministry.

1) Turns Egypt’s Water into Blood

Ex. 7:14-24

a) *The First Plague Foreshadows Jesus’ First Miracle of Turning Water into Wine, as He Begins His Ministry*

John 2:1-12

(1) *Water Symbolizes Baptism, Anointed Him for Ministry* Matt. 3:13-17

(2) *Wine Symbolizes His Blood that Will be Poured Out at His Death, Looking Toward the Culmination of His Ministry* John 19:31-37

2) Infestation of Frogs {Spiritual Uncleaness}

Ex. 7:25 - 8:11

3) Infestation of Gnats {Tormenting Spirits}

Ex. 8:12-15

4) Swarms of Flies {Oppressive Spirits}

Ex. 8:16-28

5) Death of Egyptian Livestock {Poverty & Death}

Ex. 9:1-7

6) Egyptians Afflicted with Boils {Sickness & Disease}

Ex. 9:8-12

7) Devastating Hail Storm {Natural Disasters}

Ex. 9:13-35

8) Plague of Locusts {Pestilence & Famine}

Ex. 10:1-20

9) Intense Darkness {Spiritual Darkness / Deception}

Ex. 10:21-29

a) *The 9th Plague Symbolizes Spiritual Darkness that Envelopes Mankind*

(1) *Jesus is the Light of the World, Illuminating the Way Back to God* John 1:1-5; John 8:12; John 9:5; 1 John 1:5-7

(a) *“And this is the verdict, that the light came into the world, but people preferred darkness to light, because their works were evil. For everyone who does wicked things hates the light and does not come toward the light, so that his works might not be exposed. But whoever lives the truth comes to the light, so that his works*

- may be clearly seen as done in God.”* *John 3:19-21*
- 10) The Last Plague – Death of First Born Ex. 11:1 – 12:30
Jesus Christ Fulfills the 10th Plague by Being the Only Begotten Son of God Who Dies to Deliver Mankind from Sin & Death.
- a) Pronouncement of Last Plague Ex. 11
- (1) Lord Announces Last Plague to Moses
- (a) Pharaoh Will Expel Israelites Out of Egypt
(Instead of Allowing Them to Go into Desert 3 Days to Worship, as Previously Demanded by Moses When Unleashing Plagues.)
- (b) Israel Will Despoil Wealth of Egyptians
(Fulfilling Lord’s Prophecy to Abraham. “Know for certain that your descendants shall be aliens in a land not their own (Egypt), where they shall be enslaved and oppressed for four hundred years. But I will bring judgment on the nation they must serve, and in the end they will depart with great wealth. Gen. 15:13-14)
- (c) *Jesus’ New Covenant People are Aliens in this World of Sin & Death. “But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we also await a savior, the Lord Jesus Christ.” Phil. 3:20*
- *Jesus Will Call Us Out of this World to Live Him Forever I Thess. 4:13-18*
 - *Jesus Will Judge the Nations Matt. 25:31-46*
- (2) Moses Pronounces Last Plague to Pharaoh
- (a) Death of All First Born of Egypt
(Fulfilling Lord’s Word When Commissioning Moses. “So you shall say to Pharaoh: Thus says the LORD: Israel is my son, my first-born. Hence I tell you: Let my son go, that he may serve me. If you refuse to let him go, I warn you, I will kill your son, your first-born.” Ex. 4:22-23)
- *Messiah Jesus is God’s Only Begotten Son Heb. 1:5*
 - *People Who Opposed & Murdered God’s Son Will be Condemned, Unless they Repent & Accept Him as Lord. Matt. 23:29-39; Matt. 27:22-25; Acts 3:11-20*
- (b) Israel Will be Protected from Plague
- *Jesus Protects His People from Plague of Eternal Condemnation John 3:18; Rom. 8:1-2*
- (c) Moses’ Declaration to Pharaoh: “All these servants of yours shall then (Following 10th Plague) come down to me, and prostrate before me, they shall beg me, ‘Leave us, you and all your followers!’ Only then will I depart.” (Ex. 11:8)
- *Moses Angrily Leaves Pharaoh Presence*
 - *All Nations Will Prostrate Themselves Before & Confess that Jesus Christ is Lord Phil. 2:5-11*
- (3) Lord’s Purpose for Making Pharaoh Obstinate. “....that my wonders may be multiplied in the land of Egypt.” (Ex. 11:9)
- b) Preparation for Last Plague
- (1) Lord Prescribes Passover Ritual to Moses Ex. 12:1-20
In Prescribing the Passover Ritual, the Lord God of Israel Predicts the Coming of His Son & How He Will Redeem Mankind from Sin.

- (a) Set this Month as Head of Calendar (1st Month)
(1st Month Represents the Beginning of God's Plan of Redemption, Fulfilled through Jesus Christ's Suffering & Death)
- (b) Instruct Each & Every Israelite Household
Portraying Jesus as the Lamb of God Who Takes Away the Sins of the World *John 1:29; 1 Cor. 5:7b*
- Procure a Lamb on 10th Day of Month
(Jesus Triumphantly Enters Jerusalem on 10th Day of 1st Month – Palm Sunday. Matt. 21:1-11; Mark 11:1-11; Luke 19:28-44; John 12:12-19)
 - Lamb Must be Year Old Male Without Blemish
(Jesus, Unblemished by Sin, is the Lamb of God Who will be Sacrificed at His 1st Coming)
 - Keep Lamb Until 14th Day
*(Time to Inspect Lamb for Blemishes, etc.)
(Jesus, Without Sin, Presents Himself at Temple Daily for Inspection by Priests & People. Matt. 21:12 – 23:39; Mark 11:15 – 12:44; Luke 19:45 – 21:38)*
 - Slaughter (Sacrifice) Lamb at Twilight of 14th Day of Month
(Jesus was Arrested, Tried & Executed on 14th Day of 1st Month. Matt. 26:47 – 27:61; Mark 14:43 – 15:47; Luke 22:47 – 23:56; John 18 – 19)
 - Slaughtered Before Whole Assembly of Israel
(Jesus was Publicly Crucified for All to See)
 - Spread Lamb's Blood on Doorposts & Lintel of Each House
(Jesus was Spread Out on Wooden Cross Between 2 Sinners)
 - Roast Lamb & Eat with Unleavened Bread & Bitter Herbs
(Jesus Celebrated Passover Supper with His Disciples Before He was Arrested. Matt. 26:17-35; Mark 14:12-31; Luke 22:7-38)
- Clarification. The Jewish Day begins at Sunset. Jesus celebrated the Passover (Last) Supper at the beginning of the 14th Day, and died at twilight ending the 14th Day.*
- Remain in House Throughout the Night
(Under Covering of the Blood)
 - Eat Supper with Sandals on Feet & Staff in Hand
(Ready to Leave Egypt)
 - Burn Up Any Leftovers the Next Morning
(Jesus was Totally Consumed as a Holocaust, having been Beaten, Scourged, Crucified & Entombed Before the Next Day – 15th Day of 1st Month.)
- (c) Lord Will Go Through Egypt that Night Killing All First Born of Man & Beast. “...executing judgment on all the gods of Egypt - I, the LORD!” (Ex. 12:12)
- Seeing the Blood, the Lord Will Pass Over Israel's Houses
(Jesus' Blood Covers Our Sins; So that Seeing His Blood, Death Will Pass Over Us.)

- (d) Lord Establishes Passover as a Perpetual Memorial Feast
(Jesus Establishes Holy Communion Feast to Celebrate His New Covenant. Matt. 26:26-29; Mark 14:22-25; Luke 19:14-20)
- Prescribes Purification Rites During Passover Season
 - Rid Houses of All Leavening (*Symbolizing Sin*)
(Jesus Cleanses Us from Our Sins. 1 John 1:7-9)
 - Eat Only Unleavened Bread
(Jesus, Without Sin, is the Bread of Life. John 6:36)
 - Hold Sacred Assemblies on Specified Days
(Church Celebrates Holy Communion. 1 Cor. 11:17-26)
- (2) Israel Prepares for Passover Ex. 12:21-28
- (a) Moses Calls Elders of Israel
- Instructs Them on Passover Ritual Prescribed by Lord
 - Tells Them that Lord Will Execute Final Plague
 - Killing All First Born of Egypt
 - Passing Over Israelite Homes with Blood on Doorposts & Lintels
 - Instructs Them to Observe Passover as Perpetual Ordinance throughout the Generations
 - Recalling Lord's Deliverance of Israel from Bondage
- (b) Israelites Worship the Lord their God
- (c) Israelites Prepare for Passover, as the Lord Commanded Moses
(Receiving & Obeying Word of Lord in Faith)
(We Must Receive Gospel of Christ by Faith. Eph. 2:8)
- c) Execution of the Last Plague Ex. 12:29-36
Jesus Christ Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin, Executing & Effecting God's Plan of Salvation.
- (1) Lord Kills All First Born of Egypt at Midnight
- (a) Loud Wailing throughout Egypt - Death in Every Household
(Followers of Jesus Wail & Mourn at His Death)
- (b) Pharaoh's First Born Son Among Dead
(No One is Exempt from the Plague of Sin - Death. Rom. 6:23a)
- (c) Death Passes Over Israel's Blood Covered Homes
(Sparing the First Born of Israel) (Plague of Death Passes Over People Who are Covered by Blood of Jesus – God's Only Son)
- (d) *Moses' Faith & Obedience Protected His Kinsmen from Plague of Death. "By faith he kept the Passover and sprinkled the blood, that the Destroyer of the firstborn might not touch them."*
Heb. 11:28
- (2) Pharaoh Summons Moses & Aaron During the Night
- (a) Sets Israel Free. "Leave my people at once, you and the Israelites with you! Go and worship the LORD as you said. Take your flocks, too, and your herds, as you demanded, and be gone; and you will be doing me a favor." (*Ex. 12:31-32*)
- (b) *Satan is Conquered by Christ's Sacrifice & Forced to Set the People of God Free. John 12:30-33; Col. 2:13-15; Heb. 2:14-15*
- (3) Egyptians Urge Israelites to Leave Immediately
- (a) Give Israelites All the Valuables they Requested

- (4) Israelites Prepare to Leave Egypt
 - (a) Take Dough from Kneading Bowls Before it was Leavened
 - (b) Gather the Spoils of Egypt
 - (5) Jesus Rises from the Dead, Proving His Conquest of Sin & Death – Releasing His People from the Bondage of Sin. Matt. 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20 – 21; Acts 1:1-3; Acts 2:22-24; 1 Cor. 15:1-8
 - (a) Followers of Christ Rejoice & Prepare to Proclaim the Good News of His Resurrection & Redemption
 - (b) Jesus Returns to His Heavenly Home
Mark 16:19; Luke 24:50-53; Acts 1:9; Phil. 2:5-11; Heb. 1:1-4
 - (c) Jesus Empowers His People to Proclaim His Victory
Acts 1:8; Acts 2
3. Israel's Exodus from Egypt Ex. 12:37 – 18:27
Prefigures Jesus' Deliverance of His Covenant People from the Bondage of Sin
- a. Israelites Leave Egypt Ex. 12:37-42
 - 1) About 600,000 Men plus Women & Children
 - 2) Israelites in Egypt 430 Years
 - b. Lord Gives Moses & Aaron Regulations for Passover Celebrations Ex. 12:43-51
In Preparation for His Fulfillment of Passover, Jesus Instructs His New Covenant People to Celebrate the Lord's Supper: "..... 'This is my body, which will be given for you; do this in memory of me (Fulfillment of Passover).' 'This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which will be shed for you.'" Luke 22:14-20
 - 1) Passover to be Celebrated Exclusively by God's Covenant People (Israel)
 - a) Any Alien (*Gentile Living Among Them*) Who Wishes to Celebrate Passover Must First be Circumcised (*Bringing Them Under Covenant*)
 - b) *Lord's Supper to be Celebrated Only by Christ's New Covenant People*
 (1) *Others Must First Repent & Accept Jesus as Lord & Savior*
 - 2) Whole Israelite Community Must Keep Feast
Christ's Entire Church Must Celebrate Lord's Supper
 - a) Passover Lambs Must be Eaten Inside Each House
 - (1) *Jesus is Our Eternal Passover Lamb* 1 Cor. 5:6-8
 - *Lord's Supper to be Eaten at Gatherings of Christ's Household (His Church)* 1 Cor. 11:17-34
 - b) No Bones of Lamb Shall be Broken
 - (1) *Jesus Sacrificed Without His Bones being Broken* John 19:31-39
 - *Fulfilling this Requirement & Proving that He, Without Sin, Voluntarily Submitted to Death*
 - c. Lord Commands Israel to Consecrate their First Born to Him Ex. 13:1-16
(Israel's First-Born Belong to Lord, Because He Spared Them During 10th Plague) (Revealing that a First Born Son of Israel will be Consecrated by the Lord to Redeem Mankind from the Curse of Death)
 - 1) "Consecrate to me (Lord) every first-born that opens the womb among the Israelites, both of man and beast, for it belongs to me." (Ex. 13:2)
(The Lord Instructs Israel to Set Apart (Consecrate) & Present Every First Born Son to Him, from which He Will Choose His Holy Redeemer)
 - 2) Reminds Israel to Annually Celebrate Passover in Promise Land
(Reminding Israel that the Blood of a Lamb – Fulfilled by God's Chosen Son – will Deliver Them from the Curse of Death)

- 3) “When the LORD, your God, has brought you into the land of the Canaanites (*i.e. Promise Land*), which he swore to you and your fathers he would give you, you shall dedicate to the LORD every son that opens the womb; and all the male firstlings of your animals shall belong to the LORD..... Every first-born son you must redeem (*By Offering a Prescribed Sacrifice*).”
- a) If Your Son Asks: “What does this mean?”
 - b) You Shall Answer: “With a strong hand the LORD brought us out of Egypt, that place of slavery. When Pharaoh stubbornly refused to let us go, the LORD killed every first-born in the land of Egypt, every first-born of man and of beast. That is why I sacrifice to the LORD everything of the male sex that opens the womb, and why I redeem every first-born of my sons.” (*Ex. 13:11-15*)
- 4) Jesus, a First Born Son of Israel, was Consecrated to the Lord Luke 2:22-40
- a) Joseph & Mary Took Jesus to the Temple to be Consecrated to the Lord
 - (1) “.....they (*Joseph & Mary*) took him (*Infant Jesus*) up to Jerusalem to present him to the Lord, just as it is written in the law of the Lord, ‘Every male that opens the womb shall be consecrated to the Lord,’ and to offer the sacrifice in accordance with the dictate in the law of the Lord.” (*Luke 2:22-24*)
 - (2) They are Met by Simeon, a Devout Jew, Who Took Jesus in His Arms & Prophesied: “Now, Master, you may let your servant go in peace, according to your word, for my eyes have seen your salvation, which you prepared in sight of all the peoples, a light for revelation to the Gentiles, and glory for your people Israel.” (*Luke 2:29-32*)
 - Simeon Declares Infant Jesus as Lord’s Chosen Redeemer
 - (3) Simeon then Blesses Jesus’ Parents & Says to Mary: “Behold, this child is destined for the fall and rise of many in Israel, and to be a sign that will be contradicted (and you yourself a sword will pierce) so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed.” (*Luke 2:34b-35*)
 - Simeon Confirms Angelic Announcements to Joseph & Mary (*Re: Matt. 1:18-25 & Luke 1:26-38*)
 - Simeon Prophesies Jesus’ Sacrifice
 - Jesus’ Cross is the “Sign that will be Contradicted”
 - Mary’s Heart is “Pierced” as She Grieves at the Foot of Jesus’ Cross, Bringing Many Souls to Her Son
 - (4) Prophetess Anna Appears at Temple & Confirms Prophecy
- 5) Father God Presents & Confirms Jesus as His Chosen & Consecrated Son
- a) At the Beginning of His Public Ministry Matt. 3:13-17
 - (1) When Jesus was Baptized. “... a voice came from the heavens, saying, ‘This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased.’” (*Matt. 3:17*)
 - b) At the Apex of His Public Ministry. Matt. 17:1-8
 - (1) When Jesus was Transfigured. “.... a bright cloud cast a shadow over them, then from the cloud came a voice that said, ‘This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased; listen to him.’” (*Matt. 17:5*)
 - c) At the Conclusion of His Public Ministry John 12:20-36
 - (1) Jesus Proclaims His Sacrifice: **“The hour has come for the Son of Man (*Lord’s Chosen One*) to be glorified. Amen, amen, I say to you, unless a grain of wheat falls to the ground and dies, it remains just a**

grain of wheat; but if it dies, it produces much fruit.... Father, glorify your name.” (John 12:23-28a)

- (2) Father God Answers: “I have glorified it (In the Old Covenant) and will glorify it again (In Christ’s New Covenant).” (John 12:28b)
- (3) Jesus Declares His Victory: “Now is the time of judgment on this world; now the ruler of this world (i.e. Satan) will be driven out. And when I am lifted up (On a Cross) from the earth, I will draw everyone to myself.” (John 12:31-32)

- 6) Lord Jesus Consecrates His New Covenant People John 17
 - a) His Disciples (Clergy, Religious & Lay Witnesses) “..... They do not belong to the world any more than I belong to the world. Consecrate them in the truth. Your word is truth. As you sent me into the world, so I sent them into the world. And I consecrate myself for them, so that they also may be consecrated in truth.
 - b) All Believers Throughout Church Age. “I pray not only for them, but also for those who will believe in me through their word, so that they may all be one (United & Consecrated / Set Apart for the Lord), as you, Father, are in me and I in you, that they also may be in us, that the world may believe that you sent me.” (John 17:14-21)

- d. Lord Leads Israel Toward Red Sea Ex. 13:17-22
Symbolizes the Holy Spirit Who Leads People to Repentance

- 1) Column of Cloud Preceding Them by Day
- 2) Column of Fire Preceding Them by Night

4. The Lord Leads Israel Through the Red (“Reed”) Sea Ex. 14
Israel Crossing the Red Sea Foreshadows Baptism of Repentance that Preceded & Initiated Jesus’ Ministry of Redemption. Both Portray the Conflict Between Proud Human Authority, and the Lord’s Anointed Authority; the Cynical Unrepentant Heart Closed to God’s Revelations, and a Repentant Faithful Heart Open to Spirit of God.
 - a. The Lord Says to Moses: “..... Thus will I make Pharaoh so obstinate that he will pursue them (i.e. Israel). Then I will receive glory through Pharaoh and all his army, and the Egyptians will know that I am the LORD.” (Ex. 14:4)
 - b. Pharaoh Leads Egyptian Army in Pursuit of Israelites
 - 1) Pharaoh Regrets Releasing Israel (Represents Unrepentant Authorities)
 - 2) Army Pursues Israel to their Encampment by Red Sea
 - c. Israelites See Egyptian Army & Become Fearful
 - 1) People Cry Out to Lord & Complain to Moses (Fearful of Authorities)
 - 2) Moses Calls for Faith in Lord: “Fear not! Stand your ground (Trust in the Lord), and you will see the victory the LORD will win for you today. These Egyptians whom you see today you will never see again. The LORD himself will fight for you; you have only to keep still.” (Ex. 14:13-14)
 - d. Israel Crosses the Red Sea
 - 1) Lord Commands Moses to Move Israelites Forward to Sea
 - 2) God’s Angel & Column of Cloud Move Between Israel & Egyptians (The Lord is their Protector – Separating His People from Worldly Authority)
 - 3) Moses Stretches His Hand Over Sea, as Commanded by the Lord
 - a) Lord Sends a Strong East Wind Dividing the Waters (The Lord is their Deliverer)
 - 4) Israel Marches Through the Sea on Dry Ground

- (The Lord is their Salvation)*
- a) Walls of Water on Both Sides
- 5) Egyptians Pursue Israel into Midst of Sea
- a) Lord Sends Fiery Cloud Upon Egyptians
 - b) Wheels of Chariots Bog Down
 - c) Egyptians Panic & Attempt to Retreat
(The Lord is their Defender)
- 6) Moses Stretches His Hand Over Sea, as Commanded by the Lord
- a) Sea Flows Back to its Normal Depth, Drowning Egyptian Army
(The Lord is their Victory)
- 7) Moses & Israelites Rejoice Ex. 15:1-21
- a) Singing & Dancing Before the Lord
 - b) *Excerpts from Song of Moses (Previewing Jesus, His Authority & Mission)*
 - (1) *“My strength and my courage is the LORD (Yahweh), and he has been my savior.” (‘Jesus’ = ‘Yeshua’ Meaning ‘Yahweh is Salvation’ - Jesus is Our Savior) (Ex. 15:2a)*
 - (2) *“The LORD is a warrior, LORD is his name!” (Jesus Our Champion) (Ex. 15:3)*
 - (3) *“Your right hand, O LORD, magnificent in power, your right hand, O LORD, has shattered the enemy.” (Jesus’ Power & Authority Over Sin, Sickness, Disease, Disabilities, Demons & Death) (Ex. 15:6)*
 - (4) *“In your great majesty you overthrew your adversaries; you loosed your wrath to consume them like stubble.” (Jesus Overthrows Satan & the Forces of Evil) (Ex. 15:7)*
 - (5) *“In your mercy you led the people you redeemed; in your strength you guided them to your holy dwelling.” (Jesus Leads His Covenant People to their Heavenly Home) (Ex. 15:13)*
- 8) *Israel’s Faith & Obedience to the Lord’s Authority*
- a) *“By faith they crossed the Red Sea as if it were dry land, but when the Egyptians attempted it they were drowned.” Heb. 11:29*
- e. **John’s Baptism of Repentance** Matt. 3; Mark 1:1-11; Luke 3:1-22
- 1) **John Calls People to Repentance**
 - a) *“Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand!” (Matt. 3:2)*
(Calling Men to Repentance, Preparing them to Receive their Savior)
 - 2) **People Come to John to Repent of their Sins and be Baptized**
 - a) *“At that time Jerusalem, all Judea, and the whole region around the Jordan were going out to him and were being baptized by him in the Jordan River as they acknowledged their sins” (Matt. 3:5-6)*
 - 3) **John Confronts Religious Authorities Who Came to be Baptized**
 - a) **Discerning their Unrepentant Hearts.** *“You brood of vipers! Who warned you to flee from the coming wrath? Produce good fruit as evidence of your repentance.*
 - b) **Don’t Rely on Your Position.** *“And do not presume to say to yourselves, ‘We have Abraham as our father.’ For I tell you, God can raise up children to Abraham from these stones.*
 - c) **God’s Appointed Time Has Arrived.** *“Even now the ax lies at the root of the trees. Therefore every tree that does not bear good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire.*
 - d) **Messiah is at Hand!** *“I am baptizing you with water, for repentance, but*

- the one (*Promised Messiah*) who is coming after me is mightier than I. I am not worthy to carry his sandals. He will baptize you with the holy Spirit and fire.
- e) Messiah Will Divide Peoples (*Believers from Unbelievers*). “His winnowing fan is in his hand. He will clear his threshing floor and gather his wheat into his barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire.” (*Matt. 3:7-12*)
- 4) John Baptizes Jesus of Nazareth
- a) Jesus Came from Galilee to be Baptized
- (1) John Attempts to Prevent Jesus: “I need to be baptized by you, and yet you are coming to me?” (*Matt. 3:14*)
- Discerning Jesus Did Not Need to Repent of Sin
- (2) Jesus Insists on Being Baptized: “**Allow it now, for thus it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness.**” (*Matt. 3:15*)
- In Obedience to Father God (*Fulfilling Terms of His Covenant*)
 - As an Example to All Mankind (*No One Too Good*)
- b) John Obeys Jesus & Baptizes Him
- (1) Heavens Open as Jesus Came Up from the Water
- (2) Holy Spirit Descends Upon Jesus
- (3) Father God Speaks from Heaven: “This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased.” (*Matt. 3:17*)
- Jesus is the God’s Holy Anointed One (Messiah)
- 5) John Testifies of Jesus John 1:19-35
- a) “The next day he saw Jesus coming toward him and said, ‘Behold, the Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world.’” (*John 1:29*)
- b) “I saw the Spirit come down like a dove from the sky and remain upon him. I did not know him, but the one who sent me to baptize with water told me, ‘On whomever you see the Spirit come down and remain, he is the one who will baptize with the holy Spirit.’ Now I have seen and testified that he is the Son of God.” (*John 1:32-34*)
- f. Jesus’ Authority Matt. 21:23-27
- 1) Religious Authorities Question Jesus’ Authority. “By what authority are you doing these things? And who gave you this authority?” (*Matt. 21:23*)
- 2) Jesus Replies with a Question
- a) “**I shall ask you one question, and if you answer it for me, then I shall tell you by what authority I do these things.** (*Testing their Faith*)
- b) “**Where was John’s baptism from? Was it of heavenly or of human origin?**” (*Matt. 21:24-25*)
- 3) Religious Authorities Discuss Jesus’ Question Among Themselves
- a) Answer: “We do not know” (*Matt. 21:27a*)
- 4) Jesus Replies: “**Neither shall I tell you by what authority I do these things.**” (*Matt. 21:27b*)
- a) *John Baptized for Repentance (They Did Not Repent)*
- b) *John Announced Jesus as Savior (They Did Not Accept His Word. Their Hearts were Not Open to Receive the Lord & His Messiah.)*
- g. Jesus Commissions His Church Matt. 28:18-20; Mark 16:15-18
- 1) Call People to Repentance & Faith in Jesus Christ. “**Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature.**”

- 2) Covenant Terms & Promise. **“Whoever believes (Faith) and is baptized (Repentance & Obedience) will be saved;**
- 3) Consequences of Unbelief. **“whoever does not believe will be condemned.”**
(Mark 16:15-16)

5. The Lord Leads Israel to Mount Horeb Ex. 15:22 – 18:27
(Mount Horeb is the Place where Lord God Originally Revealed Himself to Moses & Commissioned Him to Deliver Israel from Bondage [Ex. 3]. The Lord Instructed Moses: “.....when you bring my people out of Egypt, you will worship God on this very mountain” [Ex. 3:12].) (Lord Will Establish His Covenant with Israel at Mount Horeb.)
(*Prefigures Jesus Leading His Covenant People through this World of Sin to the Mountain of God [Heaven]; Sanctifying, Defending & Providing for Us Along the Way*)
 - a. Lord Sweetens Bitter Water in Desert Ex. 15:22-27
 - 1) Israel Travels 3 Days in Desert Without Finding Water
 - a) Arrive at Marah, Where Waters are Bitter
 - b) People Grumble Against Moses
 - 2) Lord Points Out a Certain Piece of Wood to Moses
 - a) Moses Throws Wood into Bitter Water, as Lord Instructed
 - (1) *Wood Symbolizes Jesus’ Cross*
 - (2) *Bitter Water Symbolizes World of Sin*
 - b) Waters Became Fresh & Suitable to Drink
 - (1) *Jesus’ Cross (His Suffering & Death) Purifies & Refreshes Those Who Will Partake of His Salvation*
 - c) *Symbolic of Jesus’ Fulfillment of God’s Eternal Covenant by His Sacrificial Death & Resurrection*
 - (1) *Jesus’ Explanation After His Resurrection. “‘.....Was it not necessary that the Messiah should suffer these things and enter into his glory?’ Then beginning with Moses and all the prophets, he interpreted to them what referred to him in all the scriptures.” Luke 24:25-27*
 - 3) Terms & Promise of Lord’s Covenant
 - a) “If you really listen to the voice of the LORD, your God, and do what is right in his eyes: if you heed his commandments and keep all his precepts, I will not afflict you with any of the diseases with which I afflicted the Egyptians; for I, the LORD, am your healer.” (Ex. 15:26)
 - b) *Terms & Promise of Christ’s New Covenant*
 - (1) *We Must Live by Faith & Obedience – Being Attentive to Word of God*
 - “..... I (Paul) have been crucified with Christ; yet I live, no longer I, but Christ lives in me; insofar as I now live in the flesh, I live by faith in the Son of God who has loved me and given himself up for me.” Gal. 2:19-20
 - (2) *Jesus Gives Us Living Water (Eternal Life)*
 - “If you knew the gift of God (Jesus the Son of God) you would have asked him and he would have given you living water.” John 4:10
 - “..... whoever drinks the water I shall give will never thirst; the water I shall give will become in him a spring of water welling up to eternal life.” John 4:13-14
 - 4) Lord Then Leads Israel to Oasis of Elim
 - a) *Jesus Leads His Covenant People to an Eternal Oasis* Rev. 21:1 – 22:5

- b. Lord Provides Food in Desert Ex. 16
Jesus Provides Spiritual Nourishment for His Church in this World (Desert of Sin)
- 1) Israel Travels to Desert of Sin
 - a) People Grumble Against Moses & Aaron (*Lord's Anointed*)
 - (1) Prefer to have Died in Egypt Where there was Food
 - b) Lord Informs & Instructs Moses
 - (1) Lord Will Send Bread from Heaven (Manna)
 - Israelites to Gather Daily Portion. ".....thus will I test them, to see whether they follow my instructions or not." (*Ex. 16:4c*)
 (*Terms of Lord's Covenant are Faith & Obedience*)
 - Gather Double Portion on 6th Day
 (*Lord Provides for Israel to Observe Sabbath*)
 - (2) *Prefigures Jesus as the Bread of Life from Heaven*
 - *Jesus Multiplies 5 Loaves & 2 Fish – Feeding 5000 Men plus Women & Children* *John 6:1-15*
 - *Jesus Declares to be the Bread of Life* *John 6:25-40*
 - *Jesus Says to People: "Amen, amen, I say to you, it was not Moses who gave the bread from heaven; my Father gives you the true bread from heaven. For the bread of God is that which comes down from heaven and gives life to the world."*
 - *People Respond: "Sir, give us this bread always."*
 - *Jesus Answers: "I am the bread of life; whoever comes to me will never hunger, and whoever believes in me will never thirst."* (*John 6:32-35*)
 - c) Moses Gathers Whole Israelite Community
 - (1) Moses Rebukes People for Grumbling
 - *People Grumble Against Jesus for Declaring to be Bread of Life from Heaven* *John 6:41-42*
 - *Jesus Rebukes People: "Stop murmuring among yourselves."* *John 6:43*
 - *Jesus Continues His Declaration* *John 6:44-51*
 - *"I am the bread of life. Your ancestors ate the manna in the desert, but they died; this is the bread that comes down from heaven so that one may eat it and not die.*
 - *"I am the living bread that came down from heaven; whoever eats this bread will live forever; and the bread that I will give is my flesh for the life of the world." (*John 6:48-51*)
 (*Manna/Bread from Heaven Represents Jesus – Son of God's Flesh/Body*)*
 - (2) Aaron Orders Israel: "..... Present yourselves before the LORD, for he has heard your grumbling." (*Ex. 16:9*)
 - Israelites Turn Toward Desert
 - Glory of Lord Appears in a Cloud
 - *People Continue to Grumble Against Jesus* *John 6:52*
 - (3) Lord Speaks to Moses from Cloud: "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them: In the evening twilight you shall eat flesh, and in the morning you shall have your fill of bread, so that you may know that I, the LORD, am your God." (*Ex. 16:12*)

- *Jesus Expands His Declaration (Challenging Their Faith)*
John 6:53-59
 - *“Amen, amen, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you do not have life within you. Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him on the last day (Conclusion of Church Age).” (John 6:53-54)*
 - *“This is the bread that came down from heaven. Unlike your ancestors who ate and still died, whoever eats this bread will live forever.” (John 6:58)*
- d) Lord Feeds His People in Desert
- (1) Provides Quail in Evening & Manna in Morning
(Manna Represents Jesus’ Body. Quail Must be Killed & Blood Poured Out, Symbolizing Jesus’ Blood Sacrifice.)
 - (2) Moses Instructs Israelites on Gathering the Manna
 - People Gather their Daily Portion
 - People Gather Double Portion on 6th Day
 - Some Disobey Going Out to Gather Manna on 7th Day & Find None!
 - (3) Lord Rebukes Israelites Who Broke Sabbath, Disobeying the Lord
 - *Jesus Rebukes People Who Reject His Declaration John 6:60-71*
 - *Many Followers of Jesus Grumble & Leave Him*
 - *Jesus Asks 12 Disciples: “Do you also want to leave?”*
 - *Peter Answers: “Master, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life. We have come to believe and are convinced that you are the Holy One of God” (John 6:67-69)*
(Professing Faith & Obedience – Terms of Lord’s Covenant)
- e) Moses Keeps a Portion of Manna as Evidence of Lord’s Provision to Future Generations *(Archived Manna Remains Fresh)*
- (1) *Sacrament of Holy Communion Kept by Succeeding Generations*
Acts 2:42-47; Acts 20:7; 1 Cor. 10:16-17; 1 Cor. 11:17-34
 - *“For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup (Of Holy Communion), you proclaim the death of the Lord until he comes (At the Conclusion of the Church Age).” (1 Cor. 11:26)*
- f) Lord Continues to Provide Manna Entire Time Israel is in the Wilderness
- (1) *Jesus’ Presence Continues in Holy Eucharist the Entire Time His Church is in this World* *Matt. 26:26-30; Luke 22:14-20*
 - *“..... he (Jesus) took bread, said the blessing, broke it, and gave it to them, and said, ‘Take it; this is my body.’*
 - *“Then he took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, and they all drank from it. He said to them, ‘This is my blood of the covenant, which will be shed for many.’*
 - *“Amen, I say to you, I shall not drink again the fruit of the vine until the day when I drink it new in the kingdom of God (At the Conclusion of the Church Age).”* *Mark 14:22-25*
- c. Lord Provides Water from Rock *Ex. 17:1-7*
Prophetic Image of Jesus the Rock of Our Salvation Who Satisfies Our Thirst (Spiritual Yearnings) with Life Giving Water (Holy Spirit)

- 1) Israel Travels to Rephidim & Camps
 - a) No Water for People to Drink at Campsite
 - b) People Quarrel with Moses
- 2) Lord Instructs Moses to Strike Rock at Horeb with His Staff
 - a) Moses Obeys & Water Gushes Out of Rock
(Sufficient Water Supply for Entire Israelite Community)
 - b) *The Rock Symbolizes Jesus (Rock Not Fashioned by Human Hands) that's Strong, Steadfast & Sure, Like Bedrock, Suitable as a Foundation.*
 - (1) *".....our ancestors were all under the cloud and all passed through the (Red) sea, and all of them were baptized into Moses in the cloud and in the sea. All ate the same spiritual food (Manna), and all drank the same spiritual drink, for they drank from a spiritual rock that followed them, and the rock was the Christ." 1 Cor. 10:1-4*
- 3) *Jesus' Invitation to Drink of His Life Giving Water*
 - a) *"Let anyone who thirsts come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as scripture says: "Rivers of living water will flow from within him." He said this in reference to the Spirit that those who came to believe in him were to receive. There was, of course, no Spirit yet, because Jesus had not yet been glorified."* John 7:37-39
- d. Lord Gives Israel Victory Over Amalek Ex. 17:8-16
Prefigures Christ Jesus' Triumph Over Sin & Forces of Evil that Confront His Covenant People in this World.
 - 1) Amalek Wages War with Israel at Rephidim
 - a) Moses Orders Joshua to Select Troops & Engage Amalek
(We Must Recognize & Accept Jesus as Our Commander)
 - b) Moses Stands on Hill Raising His Staff with Aaron & Hur at His Sides
Symbolizes Our Surrender to Jesus as Lord (Staff Represents Authority)
 - (1) Israel Prevailing when Moses' Hands are Raised
(We Prevail When We Surrender to Jesus)
 - (2) Amalek Prevailing when Moses Tires & Lowers His Hands
(We Fail When We Weaken in Faith & Rely on Ourselves)
 - c) Moses Sits on Rock While Aaron & Hur Hold Up His Hands
 - (1) Joshua ('Yeshua' = Jesus) Defeats Amalek (*Sin & Forces of Evil*)
 - 2) Lord Pronounces Judgment Against Amalek
 - a) Lord Will Annihilate Amalek
(Attempted to Thwart Lord's Plan for His Chosen People)
 - b) *Jesus Judges & Condemns Nations, Peoples & Satanic Powers Who Reject & Oppose Him, His Chosen People & Plan of Salvation*
Matt. 25:31-46; Rev. 19:11-21; Rev. 20:10-15
 - 3) Moses Builds an Altar to Lord
 - a) Calls It "Yahweh-Nissi" (Meaning: "The Lord My Victor / Banner")
 - b) *Jesus is Our Victor, Giving Us Victory Over All the Forces of Evil by His Sacrificial Death & Resurrection*
 - (1) *"In the world you will have trouble, but take courage, I have conquered the world."* John 16:33b
 - (2) *"And even when you were dead (in) transgressions..., he brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions; obliterating the bond against us, with its legal claims, which was opposed to us, he also removed it from our midst, nailing it to the*

cross; despoiling the principalities and the powers, he made a public spectacle of them, leading them away in triumph by it. Col. 2:13-15

- c) *Jesus is the Source of Our Victory (Our Banner) Over Sin in this World*
 (1) *St. Paul Explains Our Struggle. “For I know that good does not dwell in me, that is, in my flesh. The willing is ready at hand, but doing the good is not. For I do not do the good I want, but I do the evil I do not want. Now if (I) do what I do not want, it is no longer I who do it, but sin that dwells in me. So, then, I discover the principle that when I want to do right, evil is at hand. For I take delight in the law of God, in my inner self, but I see in my members another principle at war with the law of my mind, taking me captive to the law of sin that dwells in my members. Miserable one that I am! Who will deliver me from this mortal body? Thanks be to God through Jesus Christ our Lord.”* Rom. 7:18-25
- e. *Moses’ Reunion with Wife’s Family* Ex. 18:1-12
Prefigures Jesus Who Unites His Covenant People, Adopting Us into Family of God & Reconciling Us with Father God in Fulfillment of His Eternal Covenant. John 17:20-23; Rom. 8:14-17; Gal. 4:4-7
- f. *Moses Appoints Judges in Israel* Ex. 18:13-27
 1) *Moses Organizes & Appoints Men to Govern & Judge the People*
 a) *Referring Difficult Cases to Him*
 2) *Jesus Christ Appoints Offices to Govern & Minister to His Covenant People, Under His Authority as Head of the Church* 1 Cor. 12:27-31; Eph. 4:7-16
 3) *Jesus Christ Appoints Judges from Among His Covenant People, Under His Authority as Supreme Judge* Matt. 19:28; 1 Cor. 6:2-3; Rev. 20:4a

6. The Lord Establishes His Covenant with Israel

Jesus Christ Fulfills the Lord’s Covenant with Israel, Establishing a New & Everlasting Covenant. “Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill. Amen, I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or the smallest part of a letter will pass from the law, until all things have taken place (Fulfilled).” Matt. 5:17-18

- a. *Overview of Lord God’s Covenant with Israel (His Chosen People & Nation)*
 1) *The Lord’s Covenant with Israel (“The Law” / “Mosaic Law”) Consists of 3 Major Categories, and Applies to Each Individual as well as the Nation. (See “Survey of the Law – Part I” for a Comprehensive Summary of the Law & “Survey of the Law – Part II” for Jesus’ Fulfillment of the Law.)*
 a) Moral Laws. *Regulations Regarding Israel’s Conduct Before the Lord their God.*
 (1) *“.....Be holy, for I, the LORD your God, am holy.”* Lev. 19:1-2
 (2) *Jesus Lived a Holy Sinless Life Before Father God. “Can any of you charge me with sin (i.e. Breaking the Law)?”* John 8:46a
 b) Civil Laws. *Regulations Regarding Israel’s Conduct in Society, and the Governance of the Lord’s Nation.*
 (1) *“You shall love your neighbor as yourself. I am the LORD.”* Lev. 19:18b
 (2) *Jesus Proves His Greater Love by Offering Himself as a Sacrifice for the Atonement for Sins. “No one has greater love than this, to lay down one’s life for one’s friends.”* John 15:13

- (3) *Jesus' Righteous Kingdom. "But seek first the kingdom (of God) and his righteousness (Personified by Jesus), and all these things (Worldly Cares & Needs) will be given you besides" Matt. 6:33*
- c) Religious/Spiritual Laws Regarding Israel's Relationship with the Lord their God.
- (1) *"I, the LORD, am your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, that place of slavery. You shall not have other gods besides me." Ex. 20:2-3*
- (2) *Jesus Observes & Fulfills All the Religious/Spiritual Laws, Providing the Way for Man to Gain a Personal Relationship with God. "I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me. If you know me, then you will also know my Father." John 14:6-7a*
- 2) The Lord Expects the Same Faith & Obedience from the Israelites that was Demonstrated by their Forefather Abraham.
- a) The Lord Requires Faith in Jesus to Become a New Covenant Person
- (1) *"For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him. Whoever believes in him will not be condemned, but whoever does not believe has already been condemned, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God." John 3:16-18*
- (2) *"For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this is not from you; it is the gift of God; it is not from works, so no one may boast." Eph. 2:8-9*
- b) The Lord Expects His New Covenant People to Live by Faith
- (1) *"For I am not ashamed of the gospel. It is the power of God for the salvation of everyone who believes: for Jew first, and then Greek. For in it is revealed the righteousness of God from faith to faith; as it is written, 'The one who is righteous by faith will live.'" Rom. 1:16-17*
- (2) *"But without faith it is impossible to please him, for anyone who approaches God must believe that he exists and that he rewards those who seek him." Heb. 11:6*
- c) Through Faith, Abraham Becomes Our Spiritual Forefather
Rom. 4:13-25; Gal. 3:6-14
- b. The Lord Delivers His Covenant of Laws to Israel Ex. 19 – 20
- 1) Israel Camps at Mount Sinai (Horeb)
(Horeb & Sinai are the Same Mountain. Ex. 19:11 & Deut. 4:10)
- a) Arriving on 1st Day of 3rd Month After Leaving Egypt
(The 1st Day of 3rd Month in Jewish Calendar is the 43rd Day After Israel Celebrated its First Passover Before Leaving Egypt. This Date Coincides with the 43rd Day After Jesus Christ Celebrated His Last Passover Supper & Offered Himself as the Lord's Paschal Lamb. It is the Day that Jesus Commissions His Church and then Ascends into Heaven. Acts 1:1-11)
- 2) Lord's Intention for His Nation Ex. 19:1-15
(The Lord's Intention is for Israel to be His Kingdom of Priests on Earth)
Lord's Intention for His Nation/People Fulfilled through Messiah Jesus

Comment. I believe that the Lord God's intention was to have a personal relationship with each individual in His Holy Nation, in a manner similar to the relationship He had with Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. Jesus Christ fulfills the Lord God's intention by living a close and personal relationship with Father God under the Mosaic Covenant. It is through Jesus Christ that we can enjoy a personal relationship with the Lord God.

- a) Moses Ascends Mount Sinai
 - Prefigures Jesus Christ's Ascension into Heaven
Mark 16:19; Luke 24:50-51; Acts 1:9
 - (1) Lord Speaks to Moses: "Thus shall you say to the house of Jacob;
 - ".....You have seen for yourselves how I treated the Egyptians and how I bore you up on eagle wings and brought you here to myself. (*Jesus Destroyed the Forces of Evil by His Sacrifice, Bringing Salvation to Man, Restoring Him Back to God.*)
 - "Therefore, if you hearken to my voice (*Faith*) and keep my covenant (*Obedience*), you shall be my special possession, dearer to me than all other people, though all the earth is mine. (*Jesus Offers Man a Personal Relationship with God in New Covenant*)
 - "You shall be to me a kingdom of priests, a holy nation....." (*Ex. 19:3c-6*)
 - (2) Lord's Intention for His People Realized by Jesus' Covenant People
 - "But you are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people of his own, so that you may announce the praises' (*Re: Ex. 19:5-6*) of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. Once you were 'no people' but now you are God's (*Covenant*) people; you 'had not received mercy' but now you have received mercy." 1 Pet. 2:9-10
- b) Moses Returns from the Mountain & Summons the Elders
 - (1) Relates the Word of the Lord
 - (2) People Respond: "Everything the LORD has said, we will do." (*Ex. 19:8b*)
- c) Moses Reports Israel's Answer to the Lord
- d) Lord Instructs Moses
 - (1) "I am coming to you in a dense cloud, so that when the people hear me speaking with you, they may always have faith in you also." (*Ex. 19:9b*)
 - (2) "Go to the people and have them sanctify themselves today and tomorrow. Make them wash their garments and be ready for the third day; for on the third day the LORD will come down on Mount Sinai before the eyes of all the people....." (*Ex. 19:10-13*)
- e) Moses Prepares People as the Lord Instructed
- f) Disciples Prepare for the Outpouring of the Holy Spirit Promise by Jesus Acts 1:12-26
 - (1) "While meeting with them, he (*Jesus*) enjoined them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for 'the promise of the Father about which you have heard me speak; for John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the holy Spirit.'" Acts 1:4-5
 - (2) "But you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth." Acts 1:8

- 3) The Lord's Visitation (*"The Great Theophany"*) Ex. 19:16 – 20:17
 God the Son Visits the People of Israel as Jesus of Nazareth, to Personally Proclaim the Good News of Salvation & Eternal Life. John 1:14; 1 John 1:1-3
- a) On 3rd Day, Heavy Cloud Appears Over Mount Sinai with Thunder & Lightning Accompanied by Loud Trumpet Blasts
 (1) Moses Leads People Out of their Camp to Meet the Lord
- Stations Them at Foot of the Mountain
- b) Mount Sinai Wrapped in Smoke & Trembled as the Lord Descends in Fire
 (1) Moses Speaks & Lord Answers with Thunder
- c) Lord Audibly Delivers His 10 Commandments Ex. 20:1-17
 Examples of Jesus' Teachings Expounding on the 10 Commandments
- (1) The Lord Introduces Himself to Israel. "I, the LORD, am your God, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, that place of slavery. Jesus is the Lord Our God Who Delivers Us from the Bondage of Sin!
- Jesus is the Lord Our God. *"No one has gone up to heaven except the one who has come down from heaven, the Son of Man (Jesus – Son of God)."* John 3:13
 - Jesus (Son of God) Frees Us from Slavery. *"Amen, amen, I say to you, everyone who commits sin is a slave of sin. A slave does not remain in a household forever, but a son always remains. So if a son frees you, then you will truly be free."* John 8:34-36
 - Jesus the Covenant Making God. *"All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me (Jesus is Omnipotent). Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them (Initiate Them into His New Covenant) in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit (Jesus Co-Existent & Reigning with Godhead), teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age (Jesus is Eternal & Omnipresent)."* Matt. 28:18-20
- (2) Their Relationship with the Lord their God
 Our Personal Relationship with Father God through Jesus Our Lord!
- "You shall not have other gods besides me."
 - Jesus is the Only Way to God. "I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me." (*Jesus IS Truth & Life – Accept No Other Gods*) John 14:6
 - "You shall not carve idols for yourselves you shall not bow down before them or worship them."
 - "No one can serve two masters. He will either hate one and love the other, or be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and mammon (Idols of Materialism, Humanism, Intellectualism, etc.)." Matt. 6:24
 - "You shall not take the name of the LORD, your God, in vain...."
 - "Amen, I say to you, all sins and all blasphemies that people utter will be forgiven them. But whoever blasphemes against the holy Spirit (Who Convicts People of Sin & Brings Them to the Savior) will never have forgiveness, but is guilty of an everlasting sin." Mark 3:28-29
 - "Remember to keep holy the sabbath day....."

- Observance of Sabbath Acknowledges Lord God of Israel as Creator. “The sabbath was made for man, not man for the sabbath. That is why the Son of Man (Jesus) is lord even of the sabbath.” Mark 2:27-28
- (3) Their Relationship with One Another
- Our Relationship with Others. “Do to others whatever you would have them do to you. This is the law and the prophets.” Matt. 7:12
- “Honor your father and your mother,
 - “You shall not kill.”
 - “You shall not commit adultery.”
 - “You shall not steal.”
 - “You shall not bear false witness
 - “You shall not covet
 - “..... If you wish to enter into life, keep the commandments. ‘You shall not kill; you shall not commit adultery; you shall not steal; you shall not bear false witness; honor your father and your mother’; and ‘you shall love your neighbor as yourself.’” Matt. 19:17-19
- 4) Israel’s Reaction Ex. 20:18-26
- a) People Become Afraid & Ask Moses: “You speak to us, and we will listen; but let not God speak to us, or we shall die.” (Ex. 20:19)
- (1) Israel’s Reaction to God the Son’s Personal Visitation
- “He (*Jesus – Word of God*) was in the world, and the world came to be through him, but the world did not know him. He came to what was his own (*Israel – God’s Chosen People*), but his own people did not accept him.
 - “But to those who did accept him he gave power to become children of God, to those who believe in his name, who were born not by natural generation nor by human choice nor by a man’s decision but of God.” John 1:10-13

Comment. The Israelite People rejected a personal relationship with the Lord their God out of fear (the antithesis of faith), requesting that Moses intercede for them; thereby setting the premise for a formal Intercessory Priesthood. Jesus Christ fulfills Israel’s Ordained Priesthood by becoming the Lord God’s Eternal High Priest, making constant intercession for His New Covenant People (1 Tim. 2:5-6, Heb. 7:23-25).

- b) Moses Approaches Cloud Where God Was
- (1) Lord Tells Moses: “Thus shall you speak to the Israelites: You have seen for yourselves that I have spoken to you from heaven.
- The Lord’s Supremacy. “Do not make anything to rank with me; neither gods of silver nor gods of gold shall you make for yourselves.”
 - Jesus’ Supremacy in Our Lives. “Whoever loves father or mother more than me is not worthy of me, and whoever loves son or daughter more than me is not worthy of me; and whoever does not take up his cross and follow after me is not worthy of me.” Matt. 10:37
 - Requirement of Sacrifice. “An altar of earth you shall make for me, and upon it you shall sacrifice your holocausts and peace

- offerings, your sheep and your oxen.....” (Ex. 20:22-26)
- God’s Requirement for Sacrifice Fulfilled by Jesus Christ. “..... when he (*Jesus – Son of God*) came into the world, he said: ‘Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; holocausts and sin offerings you took no delight in. Then I said, ‘As is written of me in the scroll, Behold, I come to do your will, O God.’” Heb. 10:5-7
- c. The Lord Delivers His Covenant Laws to Moses Ex. 21 – 31
- 1) Moral & Civil Laws Ex. 21:1 – 23:13
(Additional Moral & Civil Laws Recorded throughout Book of Leviticus)
- a) *Spiritual Perspective of the Law*
- (1) *All People, Whether they are Knowledgeable of the Law or Not, are Guilty of Sin* Rom. 2:1 – 3:20
 - (2) *Anyone Who Breaks One of the Lord’s Commandments, is Guilty of Breaking the Whole Law* James 2:10-11
 - (3) *Purpose of the Law is to Reveal Personal Sin* Rom. 7:7-25
 - *Making Man Conscience of Sin*
 - *Revealing Man’s Need of Salvation*
 - (4) *Jesus of Nazareth is the Only Person Who Never Sinned*
 - *Conceived & Born Without Sin* Matt. 1:18-25; Luke 1:26-38
 - *Lived in Total Obedience to the Law, Never Breaking a Single Commandment. “Can any of you charge me with sin?”* John 8:46a
 - *Qualifying Him to be Our Savior* 1 Pet. 2:21-25
 - (5) *Father God’s Approval of Jesus’ Life & Ministry*
 - *At His Baptism. “..... ‘You are my beloved Son; with you I am well pleased.’....”* Luke 3:21-22
 - *At His Transfiguration. “..... ‘This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased; listen to him.’....”* Matt. 17:1-8
 - *At Conclusion of His Public Ministry* John 12:23-28
 - (6) *Jesus Appointed as Righteous Judge of All Mankind* John 5:19-30
 - *He was Tempted Like All Men, Yet Never Sinned* Heb. 4:14-16
- b) *Examples of Moral Laws*
- (1) *Dietary Laws* Lev. 11
 - (2) *Clean & Unclean Conditions* Lev. 12 – 15
 - (3) *Personal Holiness* Lev. 17 – 20
 - (4) *Plus Many More*
 - (5) *Examples of Jesus’ Conduct Before a Holy God*
 - *Heals Leprosy - Restoring Cleanness from Uncleanness* Luke 5:12-15
 - *Lives a Holy Life in Obedience to the Law* John 8:46
 - *Jesus, Our Example of Holiness, Charges Us: “So be perfect, just as your heavenly Father is perfect.”* Matt. 5:48
 - *Plus Many Others*
- c) *Examples of Civil Laws*
- (1) *Restitution for Personal Injury* Ex. 21:12-32; Lev. 24:17-23
 - (2) *Sexual Conduct* Lev. 18
 - (3) *Inheritances & Property Laws* Lev. 25

- (4) Plus Many More
 - (5) Examples of Jesus' Conduct in Society
 - Shows Compassion to an Ostracized Tax Collector Luke 19:1-10
 - Feeds Hungry People Matt. 15:32-39
 - Shows Kindness & Forgiveness to an Adulteress, Without
Condoning Her Sin John 8:1-11
 - Plus Many Others
- 2) Promise Land Conditions Ex. 23:10-33
 Jesus Lived in Promise Land, Obeying All Conditions of Mosaic Covenant
- a) Observe Sabbatical Year
 - b) Observe Sabbath Day
 - c) "Never mention the name of any other god; it shall not be heard from your lips." (*Ex. 23:13b*)
 - d) Observe 3 Annual Pilgrim Feasts Before the Lord
 - e) Etc.
- d. Ratification of the Covenant Ex. 24:1-11
- 1) Moses Relates the Word & Ordinances of Lord to People
- a) People Respond: "We will do everything that the LORD has told us." (*Ex. 24:3b*)
 - b) Moses Writes Book of Covenant, Containing Word & Ordinances of Lord
 - c) Moses Erects 12 Pillars at Foot of Mountain
(*A Memorial Representing Acceptance of Law by 12 Tribes of Israel*)
 - d) Jesus is the Living Word of God John 1:1-18
 - (1) "And the Word (*God the Son*) became flesh (*Jesus of Nazareth*) and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father's only Son, full of grace and truth." (*John 1:14*)
 - (2) "From his fullness we have all received, grace in place of grace, because while the law was given through Moses, grace and truth came through Jesus Christ." (*John 1:16-17*)
- 2) Israelites Build Altar & Offer Sacrifices to Lord
- a) Moses Splashes ½ of Blood on Altar (*Sanctifying It*)
 - b) Moses Reads Book of Covenant to People
 - (1) People Respond: "All that the LORD has said, we will heed and do." (*Ex. 24:7b*) (*Confirming their Previous Declaration*)
 - c) Moses Sprinkles Remaining Blood on People, Declaring: "This is the blood of the covenant which the LORD has made with you in accordance with all these words of his." (*Ex. 24:8*)
(*Inaugurating the Lord's Covenant with Israel*)
 - d) Jesus Inaugurates a New Covenant with His Own Blood Heb. 9:11-28
 - (1) Jesus Offers a More Excellent Sacrifice Under the Old Covenant, Becoming the Mediator of a New Covenant
 - "For if the blood of goats and bulls and the sprinkling of a heifer's ashes can sanctify those who are defiled so that their flesh is cleansed, how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our consciences from dead works to worship the living God.
 - "For this reason he is mediator of a new covenant: since a death

(Jesus' Sacrifice) has taken place for deliverance from transgressions under the first covenant, *those who are called (Under His New Covenant) may receive the promised eternal inheritance.*" (*Heb. 9:13-15*)

- (2) Prefigured by Moses' Inauguration of the Old Covenant.
 - "Thus not even the first covenant was inaugurated without blood. When every commandment had been proclaimed by Moses to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves (and goats), together with water and crimson wool and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book itself and all the people, saying, 'This is the blood of the covenant which God has enjoined upon you.' (*Re: Ex. 24:8*).... According to the law almost everything is purified by blood, *and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.*" (*Heb. 9:18-22*)
- 3) Moses Escorts Aaron & His Sons, and 70 Elders to Meet the Lord
- e. Moses Ascends Mount Sinai to Receive the Sacred Law Ex. 24:12-18
Represents Messiah Jesus in Heaven After His Ascension
Mark 16:19; Luke 24:50-51; Acts 1:9; Heb. 1:1-4
 - 1) Lord Invites Moses: "Come up to me on the mountain and, while you are there, I will give you the stone tablets on which I have written the commandments..." (*Ex. 24:12*)
 - 2) Moses Instructs Elders to Wait Until He Returns
 - a) Puts Aaron & Hur in Charge During His Absence
 - 3) Moses Ascends Mountain of God
 - 4) Glory of the Lord Settles Upon Mount Sinai
 - a) Cloud Covers Mountain 6 Days
 - b) Glory Appears as Consuming Fire on Mountain Top
 - c) Lord Calls Moses into Midst of Cloud (*Lord's Presence*) the 7th Day (*This is the 10th Day of 3rd Month in Jewish Calendar, the 53rd Day After Israel Celebrated its First Passover Before Leaving Egypt. The Lord Later Establishes this Date as the Feast of Pentecost Commemorating His Giving the Law to Moses [Lev. 23:15-22]. This Date Coincides with the 53rd Day After Jesus Christ Celebrated His Last Passover Supper & Offered Himself as the Lord's Sacrifice for Sin, Fulfilling the Law. On that Day of Pentecost, God the Holy Spirit Descended Upon His Church.*)
 - 5) Moses Passes into Midst of Cloud
 - a) Remains 40 Days & 40 Nights
 - 6) Lord Gives Moses Religious/Spiritual Laws Ex. 25 – 31
 - a) *Where the Lord Gave Moses the Sacred Law for His Covenant People (Israel); Jesus Sends the Holy Spirit Upon His New Covenant People (Church), Instilling God's Laws Within their Innermost Beings.*
 - (1) *Jesus Fulfills His Promise to Send Holy Spirit (John 14:15-17 & 26; John 16:7-15; Acts 1:4-5 & 8) on that Day of Pentecost. Acts 2:1-4*
 - (2) *Holy Spirit Instills God's Laws Within His New Covenant People*
 - ".....Behold, the days are coming, says the Lord, when I will conclude a new covenant with the house of Israel and the house of Judah. It will not be like the covenant I made with their fathers the day I took them by the hand to lead them forth from

the land of Egypt;

- *“But this is the covenant I will establish with the house of Israel after those days (Messiah’s Fulfillment of the Law), says the Lord: I will put my laws in their minds and I will write them upon their hearts (By the Indwelling Holy Spirit). I will be their God, and they shall be my people. And they shall not teach, each one his fellow citizen and kinsman, saying, ‘Know the Lord,’ for all shall know me (Personal Relationship with the Lord), from least to greatest. For I will forgive their evildoing and remember their sins no more. (Re: Jer. 31:31-34)...” Heb. 8:7-13*

- f. Summary of Religious/Spiritual Laws Ex. 25 – 31; Book of Leviticus
All the Sacred Laws Prescribed by the Lord God of Israel are Fulfilled by, in and through God the Son – Messiah Jesus.

Religious Laws Consists of 4 Major Elements:

- 1) **Tabernacle** – Lord God’s Dwelling Place Among His People & Israel’s Central Place of Worship. (See *“Tabernacle & Temple – Part I”* for an In Depth Study of the Lord’s Dwelling Place on Earth, and *“Tabernacle & Temple – Part II”* for Jesus’ Fulfillment of the Tabernacle.)
The Tabernacle Represents the Person of Jesus Christ, Leading Man into God’s Holy Presence.

- a) Lord’s Specifications for Tabernacle & Its Furnishings Ex. 25 – 27 & 30
Tabernacle Specifications Point to Messiah Jesus, the Only Way into the Presence of God. “I am the way (Outer Court) and the truth (Inner Court) and the life (Holy of Holies). No one comes to the Father except through me.” John 14:6

- (1) Outer Court (For Israelite People to Gather Before the Lord)

- (a) Open Courtyard Surrounded with Linen Walls

(Salvation is Available to All Humanity, through Messiah Jesus)

- Curtain Entrance at Center of Eastern End
 - *Jesus is the Only Way Man Can be Saved Acts 4:12 (Repent of Your Sins & Seek God’s Forgiveness by Faith)*
- Altar of Sacrifice (Priests Offer Sacrifices to Lord)
 - *Jesus Offered Himself as a Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice for the Salvation of Man 1 Pet. 2:22-24 (Accept Jesus’ Sacrifice as Atonement for Your Sins by Faith)*
- Laver Basin
 - *(Priests Cleanse Themselves Before Entering Sanctuary)*
 - *Jesus’ Blood Cleanses His Covenant People from Sin 1 John 1:7-9 (Enter into Christ’s New Covenant by Faith & be Baptized. John 3:5-8; Mark 16:15-16)*

- (2) Covered Tent (“Meeting Tent” / “Sanctuary”) Within Outer Court

- (a) First Chamber is “Inner Court” or “Holy Place”

(Assigned Priests Minister Daily) (Jesus’ New Covenant People are a Royal Priesthood. 1 Pet. 2:9-10)

- Curtain Entrance on its East End
 - *Jesus is the Only Way into New Covenant John 10:9*
- Table of Showbread on its North Side
 - 12 Loaves of Unleavened Bread

- (Representing Sustenance for 12 Tribes of Israel)*
- *Jesus is the Bread of Life, Sustaining & Nourishing His New Covenant People Unto Eternal Life John 6:35*
 - Lampstand (Menorah) on its South Side
(Perpetual Light Burning in Sanctuary)
 - *Jesus is the Light of the World, Revealing God to His New Covenant People & Illuminating Our Way into His Holy Presence John 8:12*
 - Incense Altar at its Far / West End
(Priests Intercede for Israel Before Presence of the Lord)
 - *Jesus, Our High Priest, Intercedes Continually for His New Covenant People Before a Holy God Heb. 7:18-25*
- b) Second Chamber is “Holy of Holies” or “Most Holy Place”
Beyond West End of Inner Court
(Holy of Holies is God’s Dwelling Place on Earth)
- Veil Separates Inner Court from Holy of Holies
(Only the High Priest is Permitted to Enter Holy of Holies, and that on One Day of the Year - Day of Atonement)
 - *Veil Represents Jesus’ Flesh that was Torn Making Atonement for the Sins of Mankind, Bringing His New Covenant People into God’s Holy Presence Matt. 27:50-52; Heb. 10:19-22*
 - Ark of Covenant
(Box Containing the Law, Jar of Manna & Aaron’s Rod)
 - *Jesus Fulfills the Law in its Entirety, Having Taken the Judgments of Sin Upon Himself Matt. 5:17-18; Rom. 3:21-26*
 - *Jesus is the Living Bread from Heaven John 6:51*
 - *Jesus is God’s Holy & Eternal High Priest Heb. 7:26-28*
 - Ark of Covenant’s Lid (“Propitiation”)
 - Cherubim with Outstretched Wings on Lid
 - God’s Mercy Seat Between the Cherubim
(Prescribed Place Where God Meets with Man)
 - *Jesus is Enthroned in a Heavenly Tabernacle, Mediator of a New Covenant Heb. 1:1-4; Heb. 8:1-2*
 - *Jesus is Enthroned on Heaven’s “Mercy Seat”, Inviting New Covenant People to Approach Him Heb. 4:14-16*
- b) Construction of Tabernacle Ex. 35 – 39
- (1) People Contribute Materials *(Including Spoils of Egypt)*
 - (2) Israelites Construct Tabernacle and Furnishings, as Specified by Lord
 - (3) *Israel’s Tabernacle and its Furnishings are a Copy of God’s Heavenly Tabernacle Heb. 8:5*
- c) Erection & Consecration of Tabernacle Ex. 40
- (1) Moses Erects Tabernacle, as Specified by Lord
(1st Day of 1st Month of 2nd Year from Israel’s Exodus from Egypt)
 - (2) Moses Anoints Tabernacle, Furnishings & Priests, as Lord Instructed
 - (a) Sacrifices Holocausts *(Jesus’ Blood)* & Cereal Offerings *(Jesus’ Body)* on Altar *(Cross)* in Outer Court *(Outside Sanctuary / City)*

- (3) Presence of Lord (Shekinah Glory) Fills the Tabernacle
- (a) “Then the cloud covered the meeting tent, and the glory of the LORD filled the Dwelling (*Holy of Holies*). Moses could not enter the meeting tent, because the cloud settled down upon it and the glory of the LORD filled the Dwelling.” (*Ex. 40:34-35*)
(*Lord Accepts His Tabernacle, Sealing His Covenant*)
- Cloud Periodically Rises from Tabernacle to Lead Israel on its Journey
- (b) *Jesus Enters Heavenly Tabernacle with His Own Blood, Eternally Sealing His New Covenant* Heb. 9:11-28
- “But when Christ came as high priest of the good things that have come to be, passing through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made by hands, that is, not belonging to this creation, he entered once for all into the sanctuary, not with the blood of goats and calves but with his own blood, thus obtaining eternal redemption.” (*Heb. 9:11-12*)
 - “For Christ did not enter into a sanctuary made by hands, a copy of the true one, but heaven itself, that he might now appear before God on our behalf..... But now once for all he has appeared at the end of the ages to take away sin by his sacrifice.” (*Heb. 9:24-26*)
- (c) *Holy Spirit Indwells Christ’s New Covenant People, Making Them God’s Temple on Earth (His Church)* John 16:5-16
- “..... *it is better for you that I go. For if I do not go, the Advocate will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you when he comes, the Spirit of truth, he will guide you to all truth.....*” (*John 16:7 & 13*)
 - “Do you not know that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwells in you?” 1 Cor. 3:16

2) **Priesthood** – Lord’s Chosen Priesthood to Make Constant Intercession for God’s Chosen People (Israel) with Continual Blood Sacrifices
(See “Anointed Priest – Part I” Study for an In Depth Study of Israel’s Consecrated Priesthood, and “Anointed Priest – Part II” for Jesus Christ’s Fulfillment of the Office of High Priest)
Messiah Jesus (God the Son) Provides the Way & Leads His People into the Presence of Almighty God as High Priest of a New Eternal Covenant, Fulfilling God’s Eternal Covenant (See “Prelude” Above).

- a) Lord Establishes His Priesthood
- (1) Designates House of Aaron as His Priests Ex. 28:1
- (a) House of Aaron is Lord’s Exclusive & Perpetual Priesthood Ex. 29:9; Num. 3:10
- (b) Aaron from Tribe of Levi (“*Levitical Priesthood*”)
- (2) Designates Tribe of Levi as His Religious Num. 3:5-13
- (a) Levites Serve as Assistants & Attendants to Priests
- (3) Specifies Priestly Vestments Ex. 28
- (4) Jesus Christ Fulfills the Office of High Priest
- (a) Jesus is High Priest According to the Order of Melchizedek
- God Calls His Son Jesus as High Priest. “..... it was not

Christ who glorified himself in becoming high priest, but rather the one who said to him: ‘You are my son; this day I have begotten you’ (*Re: Psa. 2:7*); just as he says in another place: ‘You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek (*Re: Psa. 110:4*).’” Heb. 5:5-6

- Order of Melchizedek Superior to Order of Aaron
Heb. 7:1-10
- (b) Jesus is Eternal High Priest of a New Covenant Heb. 7:11-28
 - Superseding Levitical Priesthood. “Those priests were many because they were prevented by death from remaining in office, but he (*Jesus Christ*), because he remains forever, has a priesthood that does not pass away. Therefore, he is always able to save those who approach God through him, since he lives forever to make intercession for them” (*Heb. 7:23-25*)
- b) Lord Prescribes Consecration & Ordination of His Priests Ex. 29
The Rituals Prescribed by Lord for Consecration & Ordination of Israel’s Priests Point to Messiah – High Priest
 - (1) Moses Consecrates & Ordains Priests Lev. 8
 - (a) Washes Aaron & His Sons
(*Cleansing from Filth [Sin] – Points to Baptism of Repentance*)
 - *Jesus Baptized by John* Matt. 3:13-17
(*John a Prophet from Priestly House of Aaron*)
 - *John Discerns Jesus Had No Sin and Did Not Need to Repent & be Baptized in Water*
 - *Jesus Insists on Complying with Law of Righteousness*
 - *John Baptizes Jesus. “And a voice came from the heavens, saying, ‘This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased (Pure – Without Sin).’” (Matt. 3:17)*
 - *John Later Proclaims Jesus as the Messiah the Son of God*
John 1:29-34
 - (b) Clothes Aaron in High Priest Vestments & Sons in Priestly Attire
 - *Word of God Clothed with Human Flesh* John 1:1-18
 - *“And the Word became flesh (Jesus of Nazareth) and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father’s only Son, full of grace and truth.” (John 1:14)*
 - (c) Offers Prescribed Sacrifices
Jesus Offers Himself as the Divine Sacrifice Prescribed in God’s Eternal Covenant Heb. 10:1-18
 - Applies Blood to Priests
 - *Jesus’ Blood Cleanses His New Covenant People of Sin*
 - Anoints Priests & Vestments with Blood & Oil
(*Oil Symbolizes the Holy Spirit*)
 - *Image of Jesus as the Lord’s Holy Anointed One (Messiah) Bloodied by His Sacrifice*
 - (d) Priests Undergo 7 Day Sanctification
(*Seven is the Number of Perfect Completion*)
 - Offering Daily Sacrifices to Lord

- Remaining at Entrance of Meeting Tent
 - **Jesus Completes & Fulfills the Law** Matt. 5:17-18
- (2) Lord Accepts His Priesthood on 8th Day Lev. 9
(*Eight is the Number of New Beginnings*)
 - (a) Aaron Offers Sacrifices for Himself & His Family
 - (b) People Present Offerings for Aaron to Sacrifice
 - (c) Fire from Lord's Presence Consumes Sacrifices. ".....the glory of the LORD was revealed to all the people. Fire came forth from the LORD'S presence and consumed the holocaust and the remnants of the fat on the altar (*Sealing His Covenant*). Seeing this, all the people cried out and fell prostrate." (Lev. 9:23-24)
 - *As the Lord Totally Consumed the Sacrifices on the Altar; So, Jesus was Totally Consumed as Lord's (God the Son's) Sacrifice on the Cross, Fulfilling God's Eternal Covenant.*
 - (d) **Jesus Resurrected from Dead on 8th Day (1st Day of the Week, i.e. Day Following Sabbath)** Matt. 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20
 - (e) *Where Heaven's Fire Consumed Aaron's Sacrifices Sealing the Old Covenant on Earth; So, the Resurrected Christ Entered the Heavenly Sanctuary with His Own Blood: Sanctifying, Establishing & Sealing His New Eternal Covenant*
 - *"But when Christ came as high priest of the good things that have come to be, passing through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made by hands, that is, not belonging to this creation, he entered once for all into the sanctuary, not with the blood of goats and calves but with his own blood, thus obtaining eternal redemption." Heb. 9:11-12*
- c) General Duties / Responsibilities of Priests
 - (1) Duties Exclusively Assigned to Priests Lev. 1 - 7
 - (a) Intercede Between Israel & the Lord their God
 - (b) Offer Sacrifices for the Atonement of Sin
 - (2) Examples of Other Duties Assigned to Priests
 - (a) Call Israel to Sacred Assemblies Num. 10:1-10
 - (b) Officiate at Religious Ceremonies, Feasts, etc. Lev. 23
 - (c) Govern & Administer Laws of Purity Lev. 11 - 15
 - (3) Priests Must Remain Sacred Before Lord Lev. 17 - 22
 - (4) **Jesus Fulfills All Priestly Functions Consecrated by Lord**
 - (a) **Jesus Intercedes in Behalf of His Church**
 - **Jesus' Intercessory Prayer Preceding His Sacrifice** John 17
 - **Jesus is Mediator Between God & Man.** "For there is one God. There is also one mediator between God and the human race, Christ Jesus, himself human, who gave himself as ransom for all...." 1 Tim. 2:5-6
 - (b) **Jesus Offered Himself as a Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin** Heb. 10:1-18
 - (c) **Jesus Fulfills Ceremonial Laws Presided Over by Priests**
 - **Example. "For the Son of Man is Lord of the sabbath."** Matt. 12:8
 - (d) **Jesus Remained Sacred (Sinless) Consecrated to Lord throughout**

3) **Sacrifices & Offerings**

(See "*Sacrifices & Offerings – Part I*" for an In Depth Study of Israel's Sacrifices & Offerings Prescribed by the Lord, and "*Sacrifices & Offerings – Part II*" for Jesus' Fulfillment of those Prescribed Sacrifices & Offerings.) All Sacrifices & Offerings Prescribed by the Lord God of Israel are Fulfilled by Messiah Jesus' Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice, Providing Redemption for Mankind in Fulfillment of God's Eternal Covenant (See "*Prelude*" Above).

- a) Sacrifices & Offerings Prescribed by the Lord Lev. 1 – 5
- (1) Blood Sacrifices – Clean Animals Killed, Libated & Burned on Altar
(*Blood is the Essence of Life. Lev. 17:10-14*)
- (a) Holocausts (Whole Burnt Offerings) Lev. 1
- Sacrifices for the Atonement of Sin
 - *The Primary Purpose of God the Son Coming to Earth was to Offer Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sins*
 - *John the Baptist Testifies of Jesus: "Behold, the (Sacrificial) Lamb of God, who takes away the sin of the world. Now I have seen and testified that he is the Son of God." John 1:29 & 34*
 - *Jesus Completes His Mission Totally Consumed on the Cross. "After this, aware that everything was now finished (Fulfilled), he (Jesus) said, 'It is finished.' And bowing his head, he handed over the spirit." John 19:28-30*
- (b) Peace Offerings Lev. 3
- Sacrifices to Fulfill a Vow
 - *Jesus Fulfills His Vow to Father God by Offering Himself as a Sacrifice for the Redemption of Mankind Heb. 10:5-7*
 - *Jesus Bestows His Divine Blessing of Peace Upon His New Covenant People John 14:27; John 20:21*
 - *Jesus' Sacrifice Reconciles His New Covenant People to God, Bringing Us Inner Peace Rom. 5:8-11; Phil. 4:4-7*
- (c) Sin Offerings Lev. 4:1 – 5:13
- Sacrifices for Forgiveness of Sins Against the Lord, and/or Cleansing of Ritual Uncleanness
 - *Jesus Offers Himself as a Sacrifice for Forgiveness of Sins*
 - *Jesus, Without Sin, Became a Pure & Holy Sacrifice 1 Pet. 2:22-24; 1 Pet. 3:18*
 - *Jesus' Sacrifice Reverses the Curse of Sin Gal. 3:10-14; Col. 2:13-15*
 - *New Covenant People Receive Forgiveness of Sins Through Jesus' Sacrifice Rom. 3:21-25; Eph. 1:7-8*
 - *Jesus' Sacrifice Cleanses His New Covenant People from All Unrighteousness 1 John 1:6-9; 2 Cor. 5:21*
- (d) Guilt Offerings Lev. 5:14-26
- Sacrifices to Absolve Guilt of Sin Against Another Person and/or Transgression Against the Law.

- *Jesus' Sacrifice Removes the Guilt & Condemnation of Sin from His New Covenant People* John 3:17-18; Rom. 8:1-2
 - *Jesus' Sacrifice Satisfies God's Justice* Rom. 5:8-9
- (2) Bloodless Sacrifices
- (a) Cereal Offerings (*Bread is Sustenance of Life*) Lev. 2
- Thanksgiving Offerings of Fine Flour / Unleavened Bread (*Leaven Represents Sin*)
 - Prepared with Oil & Burned on Altar
 - *Jesus is the Bread of Life from Heaven, Nourishing & Sustaining His New Covenant People* John 6:25-59
 - *Jesus' Church Celebrates the Holy Eucharist as a Thanksgiving Offering* 1 Cor. 11:23-26
- (3) Typical Practices Prescribed for Sacrifices
The Sacrificial Rituals Prescribed by God Foreshadow Jesus Christ's Holy & Perfect Sacrifice. Matt. 26:47 – 27:61; Mark 14:43 – 15:47; Luke 22:47 – 23:56; John 18 - 19
(Each Type of Sacrifice has Specific Requirements.)
- (a) Offeror Purchases Sacrificial Animal
Jesus was Purchased for 30 Pieces of Silver Matt. 27:3-10
- Animal to be Without Spot, Wrinkle or Blemish
 - *Jesus is Pure, Without Sin or Defect*
- (b) Offeror Brings Sacrificial Animal to Entrance of Tabernacle
Jesus Arrested & Brought Before Sanhedrin (Ruling Priests)
- Lays Hands on Animal's Head & Confesses their Sins
 - *Jesus Manhandled & Falsely Accused Before Priests*
 - Slaughters Animal Before the Lord & His Priests
 - *High Priest & Sanhedrin Condemn Jesus to Death*
- (c) Priest Offers Sacrifice to the Lord
Chief Priests Offer Jesus to Pilate to be Executed (Sacrificed)
- Applies Blood to the Altar
 - *Jesus' Blood Poured Out Sanctifying His Cross (Altar)*
 - Prepares Slain Animal for Sacrifice
 - *Priests Prepare & Present their Case Against Jesus*
 - *Jesus Scourged in an Attempt to Get a False Confession*
 - Burns Animal on Altar
Jesus Voluntarily Submits His Body to Death as God's Holy & Perfect Sacrifice
 - A Sweet-Smelling Oblation to the Lord
 - *"But the LORD was pleased to crush him in infirmity. If he gives his life as an offering for sin, he shall see his descendants (New Covenant People) in a long (Eternal) life, and the will of the LORD (God's Eternal Covenant) shall be accomplished through him."* Isa. 53:10
- b) Lord's Prescribed Regulations for Offering Sacrifices Lev. 6 – 7
- (1) Priests' Portion of Sacrifices (*Sacred Food*) Lev. 7:28-36
- (2) *Jesus Offers His Body & Blood to Church as Sacred Food*
- (a) *Prescribed Cereal Offerings Foreshadow Jesus' Sacred Body.*
"..... Jesus took bread, said the blessing, broke it, and giving it to

his disciples said, 'Take and eat; this is my body.'

(b) *Prescribed Animal / Blood Offerings Foreshadow Jesus' Sacred Blood. "Then he took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, 'Drink from it, all of you, for this is my blood of the covenant, which will be shed on behalf of many for the forgiveness of sins.....'"* *Matt. 26:26-29*

c) *Sacrifices & Offerings to be Sacred Unto the Lord* Lev. 22

(1) *Jesus, Without Sin, Offered Himself as a Sacred Sacrifice Unto the Lord, Fulfilling God's Eternal Covenant for Redemption of Mankind*

4) **Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts** – Divine Appointments Prescribed by the Lord (See "*Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts – Part I*" for an In Depth Study of Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts Ordained by the Lord, and "*Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts – Part II*" for Jesus Christ's Fulfillment of Lord's Prescribed Appointments.) (*Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts are Based on Jewish Spiritual Calendar. Each Day Begins at Sunset.*)

a) *The Sabbath (7th Day of Week) ("Shabbat")* Lev. 23:1-3

(1) *Holy Day of Rest Ordained by God* Ex. 20:8-11

(a) *Commemorates God's Rest After Creation* Gen. 2:1-3

(b) *Acknowledges Lord God of Israel as Creator*

(2) *Jesus Often Healed People on the Sabbath*

(Restoring Creation from Curse of Sin)

(a) *Jesus Performs Creative Miracle, Heals Man Born Blind* John 9

- *Disciples See Man & Ask Jesus: "Rabbi, who sinned, this man or his parents, that he was born blind?" (John 9:2)*

- *Jesus Answers: "Neither he nor his parents sinned; it is so that the works of God might be made visible through him." (John 9:3)*

- *Jesus Spits on Ground, Makes Mud & Applies to Man's Eyes (Emulating God's Creation of Man from Dust of Earth, Breathing Life into Him. Gen. 2:7)*

- *Commands Man to Wash in Pool of Siloam, Meaning "Sent". (Jesus is the Holy Anointed One Sent by God)*

- *Man Obeys & Gains His Sight*

- *(Jesus Created Sight Where There Was None. Fulfilling One of the Signs of Messiah. Isa. 61:1-2; Luke 4:16-19)*

- *Jesus Later Approaches the Man (Who Never Saw Him)*

- *Jesus Asks Man: "Do you believe in the Son of Man?"*

- *Man Answers: "Who is he, sir, that I may believe in him?"*

- *Jesus Replies: "You have seen him and the one speaking with you is he."*

- *Man's Response: "I do believe, Lord," and he worshiped him." (John 9:35-38)*

- *(Man Acknowledges Jesus' Divinity by Worshiping Him)*

(3) *Jesus Declares to be Lord of Sabbath (Equal with Creator God)*

Matt. 12:1-8; Mark 2:23-26; Luke 6:1-5

(a) *"For the Son of Man is Lord of the sabbath." (Matt. 12:8)*

- b) The Passover Festival Lev. 23:4-14
 Jesus Fulfilled the Passover Festival at Completion of His First Coming
- (1) Three Feasts Celebrated in 1st Month of Jewish Calendar
(1st Month Represents the Beginning of God's Redemption of Man)
 - (2) Commemorates Lord's Deliverance of Israel from Bondage in Egypt
 Ex. 11 – 13
(Jesus Delivers His New Covenant People from Bondage of Sin)
 - (3) The Feast of Passover Lev. 23:4-8
 - (a) Passover Supper Celebrated on 14th Day of Month
 - Paschal Lamb Sacrificed at Evening Twilight
 - (b) Jesus Celebrated Passover Supper, is Arrested, Tried & Executed on 14th Day of 1st Month, Fulfilling Feast of Passover
 Matt. 26 & 27; Mark 14 & 15; Luke 22 & 23; John 13 - 19
 - Jesus, the Lord's Paschal Lamb, Dies on Cross by Twilight, When Paschal Lambs were Slaughtered in Temple
 - “.....For our paschal lamb, Christ, has been sacrificed.”
 1 Cor. 5:7
 - (4) The Feast of Unleavened Bread Lev. 23:4-8
 - (a) Celebrated on 15th Day of Month
 - Unleavened Bread Eaten 7 Days Prior to Feasts
 - (b) Jesus' Body, the Unleavened (*Sinless*) Bread of Life, Lies in Tomb on 15th Day of 1st Month
 - Jesus had Perfectly Completed & Fulfilled the Law
 - (5) The Feast of First Fruits Lev. 23:9-14
 - (a) Celebrated on Day Following Passover Sabbath (*i.e. Sunday*)
 - (b) Commemorates Israel's First Harvest in Promise Land
 - (c) Jesus is Resurrected from the Dead on Day Following Passover Sabbath (*i.e. Sunday*), the First Fruit of All Believers to be Resurrected Matt. 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20; 1 Cor. 15
 - “But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep (Died).” (*1 Cor. 15:20*)
- c) Feast of Pentecost (“Feast of Weeks”) (“*Shavuot*”) Lev. 23:15-22
 Pentecost Fulfilled by the Birth of Christ's Church Effectuating His New Covenant
- (1) Celebrated 7 Weeks + 1 Day (50th Day) from Feast of First Fruits
 - (a) Jesus Pours Out the Holy Spirit Upon His Church on 50th Day After His Resurrection, Fulfilling Feast of Pentecost Acts. 2:1-13
 - (2) Commemorates Lord Giving Moses the Law on Mount Sinai
 Ex. 19 – 31
 - (a) Christ's New Covenant Laws are Within Every Believer by the Indwelling Holy Spirit
 - “The holy Spirit also testifies to us, for after saying: ‘This is the covenant I will establish with them after those days (*Jesus' Death & Resurrection*), says the Lord: “I will put my laws in their hearts, and I will write them upon their minds,” he also says: ‘Their sins and their evildoing I will remember no more.’”
 Heb. 10:15-17

- d) Festival of Booths / Tabernacles Lev. 23:23-32
Festival Foreshadows Events that are Still in the Future; the Second Coming of Jesus and His Kingdom (See “[Messianic Kingdom](#)” Study)
- (1) Three Feasts Celebrated in the 7th Month of Jewish Calendar
(7th Month Represents Completion of God’s Redemptive Plan)
 - (2) Celebrates Israel in Promise Land as the Lord’s Chosen Nation
(Israel Living in the Promise Land when Messiah Returns)
 - (3) New Years Day (“Feast of Trumpets”) (“*Rosh Hashanah*”) Lev. 23:23-25
 - (a) Feast Celebrated on 1st Day of Month
 - Trumpet Blasts Usher in New Season
 - (b) *Feast Foreshadows Jesus Christ’s Return for His New Covenant People (Church)* 1 Cor. 15:50-58; 1 Thess. 4:13-18
 - “For the Lord himself, with a word of command, with the voice of an archangel and with the trumpet of God, will come down from heaven, and the dead in Christ will rise first. Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. Thus we shall always be with the Lord.” (1 Thess. 4:16-17)
 - (4) Day of Atonement (“*Yom Kippur*”) Lev. 23:26-32
 - (a) Feast Celebrated on 10th Day of Month
 - (b) Israelites Fast, Mortify Themselves & Repent of their Sins
 - (c) High Priest Performs the Special “Day of Atonement” Rituals Prescribed by the Lord Lev. 16
 - (d) *Feast Foreshadows Coming of Messiah Jesus for the Atonement, Redemption & Restoration of Israel* Zech. 12; Zech. 14; Isa. 61 – 64; Ezek. 40 – 48; Rom. 11:25-29; Rev. 19:11-21
 - (e) *Messiah Jesus Provides Eternal Atonement, Fulfilling “Yom Kippur”* Heb. 9:23 – 10:18
 - (5) Feast of Booths (“Feast of Tabernacles”) (“*Sakkot*”) Lev. 23:33-43
 - (a) Celebration Starts on 15th Day of Month & Continues 7 Days
 - Israelites Build & Live in Temporary Shelters (“Booths”)
 - (b) Recalls Lord’s Deliverance of Israel from Bondage in Egypt, Where the Lord Provided for His People in Wilderness
 - (c) *Feast Foreshadows Israel’s Celebration in Messiah’s Kingdom, Extended to All Nations* Ezek. 45:25; Zech. 14:16

7. Israel’s Unbelief, Disobedience & Rebellion

*(Terms of Lord’s Covenant with Israel are Faith in Him & Obedience to His Laws.)
 (See “[Covenants – Part I](#)” for a Closer Look at 2 Incidents Where Israel Failed to Keep the Terms of the Lord’s Covenant Before Entering the Promise Land.)*

*Israel’s Rebellions are Symptomatic of Man’s Sinful Condition. “...There is no one just, not one, there is no one who understands, there is no one who seeks God. All have gone astray; all alike are worthless; there is not one who does good, (there is not) even one.”
[Rom. 3:10-12](#)*

*Israel’s Unfaithfulness, Disobedience & Rebellion Previews Those People Who Disbelieve, Reject, Ignore and/or Oppose Jesus Christ & His Gospel. “**And this is the***

verdict, that the light came into the world, but people preferred darkness to light, because their works were evil. For everyone who does wicked things hates the light and does not come toward the light, so that his works might not be exposed.” John 3:19-21

- a. Israel’s Rebellion & Idolatry Ex. 32
(Choosing False Gods Over Yahweh, Disobeying His Foremost Commandments.
Ex. 20:3-6)
Where Israel Rebelled Against the Lord, Repeatedly Breaking His Covenant; Jesus Remained Faithful & Obedient to Father God, Fulfilling the Lord’s Covenant with Israel, Providing Redemption for Mankind
 1) *“Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill.”* Matt. 5:17
 2) *“But now the righteousness of God has been manifested apart from the law, though testified to by the law and the prophets, the righteousness of God through faith in Jesus Christ for all who believe. For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God. They are justified freely by his grace through the redemption in Christ Jesus, whom God set forth as an expiation, through faith, by his blood,..... that he might be righteous and justify the one who has faith in Jesus.”* Rom. 3:21-26
- b. Israel’s Fear & Failure to Conquer Promise Land Num. 13 - 14
(Fear is the Antithesis of Faith. Faith a Major Tenet of Lord’s Covenant)
Israel Wandered in the Wilderness 40 Years as Chastisement for their Unbelief when Reconnoitering the Promise Land, and Subsequent Rebellion Against the Lord their God & His Anointed Ministers (Moses & Aaron). Num. 20-33
 1) *The Lord Faithfully Provided for Israel in the Wilderness*

F. The Promise Land Covenant

Book of Deuteronomy

The Generation of Israelites Who were Adults when Israel Left Egypt, Died in the Wilderness Because of their Unfaithfulness and Disobedience to the Lord their God. The Lord Raises Up a New Generation of Israelites, Who were Children at the time of the Exodus or Born while Israel was in the Wilderness.

This is Not Another Covenant, but a Restatement of the Mosaic Covenant to that New Generation of Israelites as they are About to Enter the Promise Land. It Emphasizes What is Acceptable Conduct of God’s Chosen People/Nation in the Promise Land. The Terms Continue to be Faith in the Lord their God and Obedience to His Laws.

Jesus Lived & Ministered in the Promise Land in Absolute Obedience to the Lord’s Covenants, Fulfilling Them. Jesus Often Referred to Laws from the Book of Deuteronomy (See Examples Below).

1. Historical Review Deut. 1 – 3
 a. Israel Passes Through the Wilderness & Camps in the Transjordan *(East of Jordan River - Part of Promise Land)* Adjacent to Canaan *(Heart of Promise Land)*
2. Israel & the Lord their God Deut. 4:1-43
 a. Moses Exhorts the New Generation of Israelites
 1) Remain Faithful & Obedient to the Lord *(Terms of their Covenant)*
 2) Remember Lord’s Revelation at Mt. Horeb (Sinai) *(Re: Ex. 19:16 – 20:17)*
 a) Lord Spoke to Israel from Midst of Fire

- (1) Audibly Proclaiming His Commandments
- (2) Writing 10 Commandments on 2 Stone Tablets
- (3) *The Word of God Personified in Jesus Christ* John 1:1-18
 - “*And the Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father’s only Son, full of grace and truth.*” (John 1:14)
 - “*.... while the law was given through Moses, grace and truth came through Jesus Christ.* (John 1:17)
 - “*No one has ever seen God. The only Son, God, who is at the Father’s side, has revealed him.*” (John 1:18)
- (4) *Jesus Audibly Proclaims Father God’s Words*
 - “*My teaching is not my own but is from the one who sent me. Whoever chooses to do his will shall know whether my teaching is from God or whether I speak on my own.*” John 7:16-17
 - “*..... I did not speak on my own, but the Father who sent me commanded me what to say and speak.*” John 12:49
- b) Lord Charged Moses to Teach His Statutes & Decrees to Israel Before they Enter the Promise Land
 - (1) *Jesus is Central to Moses’ Teachings.* “*Do not think that I will accuse you before the Father: the one who will accuse you is Moses, in whom you have placed your hope. For if you had believed Moses, you would have believed me, because he wrote about me. But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words?*” John 5:45-47
- 3) Warns Against Idolatry – Breaking Lord’s Covenant
 - a) Lord Will Punish Infidelity. “For the LORD, your God, is a consuming fire, a jealous God.” (Deut. 4:24)
 - b) *Jesus Will Judge the Hearts of Man.* “*I (John the Baptist) am baptizing you with water, for repentance, but the one (Messiah Jesus) who is coming after me is mightier than I. He will baptize you with the holy Spirit and fire. His winnowing fan is in his hand. He will clear his threshing floor and gather his wheat into his barn, but the chaff he will burn with unquenchable fire.*” Matt. 3:11-12
- 4) Lord Will Remain Faithful to His Covenant
 - a) Even if His People are Unfaithful
 - b) *Jesus Remains Faithful, Whether Man Believes Him or Not*
 - (1) “*Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes in the one (Father God) who sent me has eternal life and will not come to condemnation, but has passed from death to life.*” John 5:24
 - (2) “*What if some were unfaithful? Will their infidelity nullify the fidelity of God? Of course not! God must be true, though every human being is a liar,....*” Rom. 3:3-4
- 5) Extols God’s Love for His Covenant People

God Exhibits His Love for Mankind through His Son Jesus Christ John 3:16

 - a) Evidenced by His Revelation, Signs & Wonders
 - (1) Unprecedented in All Human History
 - b) *Jesus Performs the Works of God*
 - (1) “*..... The works that the Father gave me to accomplish, these works that I perform testify on my behalf that the Father has sent me.*”

John 5:36

(2) “....*The words that I speak to you I do not speak on my own. The Father who dwells in me is doing his works. Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else, believe because of the works themselves.*” *John 14:10-11*

(3) *Jesus’ Miracles are Unprecedented in All Human History*
Examples: John 9; John 11:1-44; John 20

3. Lord God’s Covenant with Israel Deut. 4:44 – 11:32
 - a. Moses Reintroduces Lord’s Covenant to New Generation of Israelites
 - 1) Preamble to Lord’s Covenant Deut. 5:1-5
 - a) “Hear, O Israel, the statutes and decrees which I proclaim in your hearing this day, that you may learn them and take care to observe them.
 - b) “The LORD, our God, made a covenant with us at Horeb; not with our fathers did he make this covenant, but with us (All of Israel), all of us who are alive here this day.....” (*Deut. 5:1-3*)
 - (1) Covenant Applicable to All Generations
 - c) Lord God Reveals His Redeemer through His Covenants
 - (1) Jesus Fulfills Lord’s Covenants. “Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill. Amen, I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or the smallest part of a letter will pass from the law, until all things have taken place.” *Matt. 5:17-18*
 - (2) God’s Redemptive Plan Transcribed for All Generations. “You search the scriptures, because you think you have eternal life through them; even they testify on my behalf.” *John 5:39*
 - *Jesus, the Central Theme of All Scriptures, is Lord’s Redeemer*
 - 2) Recites Lord’s 10 Commandments (*Re: Ex. 20:1-17*) Deut. 5:6-21
 - a) Jesus Obeyed the Entire Law, Including the 10 Commandments, throughout His Life on Earth. “Can any of you charge me with sin?” *John 8:46a*
 - 3) Reminds Israel that they Requested that He be their Mediator When the Lord Spoke to them at Mt. Horeb (*Re: Ex. 20:18-26*) Deut. 5:22-31
 - a) Jesus is Mediator of a New Covenant. “Now he (*Jesus*) has obtained so much more excellent a ministry (*Than Moses*) as he is mediator of a better covenant, enacted on better promises (Eternal Life).” *Heb. 8:6*
 - 4) Calls for Israel’s Continual Obedience to the Law Deut. 5:32-33
 - a) Jesus Calls New Covenant People to a Life of Faith & Obedience. “If you love me, you will keep my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always” *John 14:15-16*
 - (1) *The Advocate (Holy Spirit) Trains, Corrects, Sustains, Guides & Directs Christ’s People* *John 14:26; John 16:7-11*
 - 5) Benefits of the Law Deut. 6:1-3
 - a) “..... that you and your son and your grandson may fear (Know & Revere) the LORD, your God, and keep, throughout the days of your lives, all his statutes and commandments which I enjoin on you, and thus have long life.”
 - (1) Jesus’ New Covenant People Know Him. “My sheep hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me.” *John 10:27*

- (2) Jesus Gives His New Covenant People Eternal Life. “I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish....” John 10:28
- b) “..... that you may grow and prosper the more, in keeping with the promise of the LORD, the God of your fathers, to give you a land flowing with milk and honey.”
- (1) Jesus is Our Source. “Amen, amen, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in my name he will give you. Until now you have not asked anything in my name; ask and you will receive, so that your joy may be complete.” John 16:23b-24
- 6) Essence of the Law (*Relationship with Lord*) Deut. 6:4-5
- a) “Hear, O Israel! The LORD is our God, the LORD alone! Therefore, you shall love the LORD, your God, with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your strength.”
- b) Love is the Basis of the Law Matt. 22:34-40
- (1) A Scholar of the Law Asks Jesus: “Teacher, which commandment in the law is the greatest?”
- (2) Jesus Replies:
- ““You shall love the Lord, your God, with all your heart, with all your soul, and with all your mind.’ (Quoting Deut. 6:5) This is the greatest and the first commandment.
 - “The second is like it: ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself.’
 - “The whole law and the prophets depend on these two commandments.”
- c) *How Does Love Fulfill the Law?* Rom. 13:8-10
- (1) *Examples from Ten Commandments:* Ex. 20:1-17
- *If One Loves the Lord He/She Will Keep God First in their Life, Will Not Practice Idolatry (Paganism/Hedonism, Love of Money/Things, etc.), Will Not Take Lord's Name in Vain, etc.*
 - *If One Loves His/Her Neighbor, He/She Will Not Steal from their Neighbor, Seduce their Neighbor's Wife/Husband, Lie About their Neighbor, etc.*
- (2) *God Gave Israel Laws to Protect them from Harm, Reveal their Sinful Nature in Need of Redemption, and Bring them Closer to Him. The Law Also Prepares them to Recognize & Accept the Lord's Redeemer.*
- d) *Jesus is the Ultimate Expression of God's Love* Rom. 5:1-11
- (1) “*But God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us.*” (Rom. 5:8)
- 7) Exhortation to Remain Faithful to the Lord & His Law Deut. 6:6-25
- Jesus Exhorts His Disciples to Remain Faithful
- a) Make the Law (*Christ*) a Way of Life
- (1) “As the Father loves me, so I also love you. Remain in my love.
- (2) “If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, just as I have kept my Father’s commandments and remain in his love.
- (3) “I have told you this so that my joy may be in you and your joy may be complete.” John 15:9-11
- b) Honor the Lord (*Christ*) & His Law in All Things
- (1) “Whoever does not honor the Son does not honor the Father who sent him.” John 5:23b

- c) Teach Each Succeeding Generation of the Lord (*Christ*) & His Law
 - (1) “Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you.....” Matt. 28:19-20
 - b. Commands Israel to Cleanse the Promise Land of Idolatry Deut. 7
(*Idolatry is an Abomination to the Lord – Separating God from His Chosen People*)
 - c. Reminds Israel of Lord’s Providence in Wilderness Deut. 8:1 – 9:6
 - d. Reminds New Generation of their Fathers’ Failings in Wilderness Deut. 9:7 – 10:11
 - e. Extols the Majesty of the Lord God Almighty Deut. 10:12-22
 - f. Exhorts Israel to Love the Lord & Obey His Laws Deut. 11
 - 1) Citing Blessings for Obedience & Curses for Disobedience
 - 2) Exhortation to Believe in God’s Son – Jesus. “For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him. Whoever believes in him will not be condemned, but whoever does not believe has already been condemned, because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.” John 3:17-18
 - g. Jesus Equips His New Covenant People to Proclaim Salvation to a Sinful World
 - 1) “But you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” Acts 1:8
 - 2) “Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned. These signs will accompany those who believe: in my name they will drive out demons, they will speak new languages. They will pick up serpents (with their hands), and if they drink any deadly thing, it will not harm them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover.” Mark 16:15-18
4. Moses Reviews the Law to New Generation of Israelites Deut. 12 – 26
In Order to Provide Redemption for Mankind, Jesus had to Live Without Sin, being Careful to Obey & Observe All the Laws Prescribed by the Lord in His Covenants.
- a. Examples of Moral Laws – Conduct Before God
 - 1) Dietary Laws Deut. 14:3-21
 - 2) Paying Tithes Deut. 14:22-29; Deut. 26:12-15
 - 3) Personal Honesty Deut. 25:13-16
 - 4) Plus Many More
 - 5) Jesus Overcomes Temptations in Wilderness Matt. 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13
 - a) Jesus Fasting 40 Days & 40 Nights, Preparing for His Ministry
 - b) Satan Tempts Jesus: “If you are the Son of God, command that these stones become loaves of bread. (*Tempting His Flesh*)” (Matt. 4:3)
 - (1) Jesus Replies (*Quoting Deut. 8:3*): “It is written: ‘One does not live by bread alone, but by every word that comes forth from the mouth of God.’” (Matt. 4:4)
 - c) Satan Takes Jesus to Parapet of Temple, Quoting Scriptures: “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down. For it is written: ‘He will command his angels concerning you and ‘with their hands they will support you, lest you dash your foot against a stone.’ (*Tempted with Pride*)” (Matt. 4:6)
 - (1) Jesus Replies (*Quoting Deut. 6:16*): “Again it is written, ‘You shall not put the Lord, your God, to the test.’” (Matt. 4:7)
 - d) Satan Shows Jesus Kingdoms of World with their Power & Wealth: “All

these I shall give to you (*Tempted with Avarice / Covetousness*), if you will prostrate yourself and worship me (*Idolatry – Submission to Satan’s Authority*).” (*Matt. 4:9*)

(1) Jesus Rebukes Satan (*Quoting Deut. 6:13*): “**Get away, Satan! It is written: ‘The Lord, your God, shall you worship and him alone shall you serve.’**” (*Matt. 4:10*)

6) Jesus Never Yielded to Temptation, Living a Holy Life Before Father God

a) “For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has similarly been tested (*Tempted*) in every way, yet without sin.” Heb. 4:15

b. Examples of Civil Laws – Conduct in Society

1) Care for Poor / Sabbatical Year Deut. 15:1-11

2) Murder & Accidental Manslaughter Deut. 5:17

a) Cities of Refuge Deut. 4:41-43; Deut. 19:1-13

3) Law Against False Witnesses Deut. 5:20; Deut. 19:15-21

4) Plus Many More

5) Jesus & Law of Witnesses (“...a judicial fact shall be established only on the testimony of two or three witnesses.” *Deut. 19:15*) John 5:31-40

a) Corroborating Witnesses for Jesus as Messiah - Son of God

(1) Testimony of John the Baptist. “You sent emissaries to John, and he testified to the truth (*That Jesus is the Messiah – Son of God. John 1:19-34*). I do not accept testimony from a human being, but I say this so that you may be saved.” (*John 5:33-34*)

(2) Divine Testimony. “But I have testimony greater than John’s. The works that the Father gave me to accomplish, these works (*Miracles*) that I perform testify on my behalf that the Father has sent me. Moreover, the Father who sent me has testified on my behalf (*e.g. Matt. 3:17*). But you have never heard his voice nor seen his form, and you do not have his word remaining in you, because you do not believe in the one whom he has sent.” (*John 5:36-38*)

(3) Testimony from Jewish Scriptures. “You search the scriptures, because you think you have eternal life through them; even they testify on my behalf.” (*John 5:39*)

b) Conflicting Witnesses Against Jesus Mark 14:53-65

(1) “The chief priests and the entire Sanhedrin kept trying to obtain testimony against Jesus in order to put him to death, but they found none. Many gave false witness against him, but their testimony did not agree (*Violating their Law Deut. 19:15-21*).” (*Mark 14:55-56*)

c. Examples of Religious/Spiritual Laws

1) Tabernacle Worship Deut. 12:4-14

a) Commandments & Ark of Covenant Deut. 10:1-9

b) *Jesus was the Living Tabernacle, God’s Holy Presence on Earth*

c) *Jesus is the Only Way into God’s Eternal Presence*

2) Levitical Priesthood Deut. 18:1-8

a) *Jesus is Eternal High Priest, Mediator of a New & Better Covenant*

3) Sacrifices & Offerings Deut. 12:4-14; Deut. 17:1

a) *Jesus is the Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sins*

4) Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts Deut. 5:12-15; Deut. 16:1-17

a) *Jesus is Lord of the Sabbath*

- b) *Jesus is the Lord's Paschal Lamb, First Fruits to be Resurrected from the Dead, and Head of the Church (His New Covenant)*
- c) *Jesus is the Coming King of Kings*
- 5) **Jesus' New Covenant Worship: "But the hour is coming, and is now here, when true worshipers will worship the Father in Spirit and truth; and indeed the Father seeks such people to worship him. God is Spirit, and those who worship him must worship in Spirit and truth."** John 4:23-24
- d. **Offices in the Lord's Nation (Theocratic Constitution)**
The Lord Establishes Governmental, Religious & Spiritual Offices in His Nation. Jesus Christ Fulfills & Holds the Messianic Offices of Prophet, Priest & King. He is Appointed as God's Supreme Judge.
- 1) **Office of Judge (Appointed to Administer Lord's Justice in Israel)**
- a) Judges Appointed from Among Tribes to Administer Justice
Deut. 16:18-20
- b) People Must Obey Judgments & Decrees of Judges Deut. 17:8-13
- c) Judges Subject to King's Authority After Israel Becomes a Monarchy
- d) **Father God Appoints His Son Jesus as Supreme Judge** John 5:19-30
- (1) "Nor does the Father judge anyone, but he has given all judgment to his Son, so that all may honor the Son just as they honor the Father. Whoever does not honor (*i.e. Obey*) the Son does not honor the Father who sent him." (John 5:22-23)
- (2) "And he gave him (*Son of God*) power to exercise judgment, because he is the Son of Man (*Having Lived the Life of a Man*)." (John 5:27)
- (3) "I cannot do anything on my own; I judge as I hear, and my judgment is just, because I do not seek my own will but the will of the one who sent me (*Under Divine Authority*)." (John 5:30)
- 2) **Office of King (Lord's Anointed Rulers of Israel)** Deut. 17:14-20
(See "Anointed King – Part I" for a More In Depth Study of Office of King, and "Anointed King – Part II" for Jesus' Fulfillment of Office of King)
- a) Kings to be Chosen by the Lord to Rule Israel
- b) Kings Must be Kinsmen (Israelites)
- (1) Jesus an Israelite from Tribe of Judah Matt. 1:1-16; Luke 3:23-34
- c) Kings are to Rule Under Lord's Authority as His Representative
- (1) Jesus Represents Father God ".... Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I speak to you I do not speak on my own. The Father who dwells in me is doing his works." John 14:9-10
- d) Kings are Subject to the Law
- (1) Must Retain Copy of Levite Scrolls (*Torah*) & Read it Daily
- (2) Must Learn to Fear the Lord, Obey Him & His Law
- (3) Jesus IS the Living Word of God John 1:1-18
- e) Kings are Supreme Judge in Israel
- (1) God Appointed Jesus as Supreme Judge John 5:19-30
- f) Jesus Christ is Lord God's Holy Anointed King
- (1) Chosen as Messiah-King Before His Birth Luke 1:26-38
- "Behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of

- David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob (Israel) forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end.” (Luke 1:31-33)
- (2) Enthroned in Heaven After His Ascension Heb. 1:1-4
- “...When he had accomplished purification from sins, he took his seat (Throne) at the right hand of the Majesty on high, as far superior to the angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs.” (Heb. 1:3-4)
- (3) Returning to Earth as King of Kings Rev. 19:11-21
- “He will rule them with an iron rod, and he himself will tread out in the wine press the wine of the fury and wrath of God the almighty. He has a name written on his cloak and on his thigh (Symbolizing Covenant), ‘King of kings and Lord of lords’.” (Rev. 19:15b-16)
- 3) Office of Priest Deut. 18:1-8
 (Lord’s Anointed Priests – Israel’s Religious Leaders & Intercessors to Lord)
 (See “Anointed Priest – Part I” for a More In Depth Study of Office of Priest, and “Anointed Priest – Part II” for Jesus’ Fulfillment of Office of High Priest)
- a) Priests from House of Aaron, Tribe of Levi (Levites)
- b) Priests are Consecrated To:
- (1) Intercede to Lord in Behalf of Israelite People & Nation
 - (2) Offer Sacrifices to Lord for Atonement of Sins, Transgressions Against the Law, Ritual Cleansing, Sealing of Vows/Oaths, etc.
 - (3) Officiate at Prescribed Worship, Religious Ceremonies, Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts
- c) Jesus Christ Fulfills the Office of High Priest
- (1) High Priest According to the Order of Melchizedek – Not Aaron
 - Called & Ordained by God. “...it was not Christ who glorified himself in becoming high priest, but rather the one who said to him: ‘You are my son; this day I have begotten you’; just as he says in another place: ‘You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.’” Heb. 5:5-6
 - Order of Melchizedek Superior to Order of Aaron Heb. 7:1-10
 - (2) Eternal High Priest of a New Covenant, Superseding Levitical Priesthood of Old Covenant Heb. 7:11-28
 - (3) Jesus Fulfills All Priestly Functions Consecrated by Lord
 - Intercedes in Behalf of His New Covenant People John 17; 1 Tim. 2:5-6
 - Offers Himself as a Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice Heb. 10:1-18
 - Fulfills Ceremonial Laws Presided Over by Priests Matt. 5:17
- 4) Office of Prophet (Lord’s Anointed Spokesmen to Israel & Advisor to King)
 (See “Anointed Prophet – Part I” for a More In Depth Study of the Prophets, and “Anointed Prophet – Part II” for Jesus’ Fulfillment of Office of Prophet)
- a) False Prophets & Forbidden Practices Deut. 18:9-14
- (1) False Prophets & Idolaters Condemned to Death
- b) The Lord’s Anointed Prophet Deut. 18:15-19
- (1) Lord Will Raise Up a Prophet Like Moses
 - (2) Lord Will Speak to Israel Through His Prophet

- (3) Israel Required to Listen to Lord's Prophet
 - (4) Jesus is the "Prophet" Spoken of by Moses
 - John the Baptist is Not that "Prophet", but Announces Him to Israel – Declaring Jesus as Messiah & Son of God John 1:19-34
 - Jesus' Testimony: "For if you had believed Moses, you would have believed me, because he wrote about me." John 5:46
 - Peter Testifies Jesus is the "Prophet Like Moses" Acts 3:11-23
 - (5) Jesus is Superior to Moses Heb. 3:1-6
 - c) Prophets Required to Speak Words They Receive from Lord Deut. 18:20
 - (1) Jesus Speaks the Words of Father God
 - "My teaching is not my own but is from the one who sent me." John 7:16
 - "..... I did not speak on my own, but the Father who sent me commanded me what to say and speak." John 12:49
 - d) Test of Prophets Deut. 18:21-22
 - (1) Lord's Prophecies Always Fulfilled & Verified
 - (2) All of Jesus' Prophecies Concerning His First Advent & its Aftermath have been Fulfilled Luke 18:31-33; Luke 22:31-34; Acts 1:4-5 & 8; Luke 19:41-44
5. Moses' Final Address to Israelite Community Deut. 27 – 33
(Covenant Promise, a Perpetual Inheritance for God's Chosen People)
- a. Moses Prescribes Ceremonies for Israel to Perform When Entering Promise Land
(Moses Instructs Israel to Claim, Possess & Thrive in Promise Land) Deut. 27
 - 1) Moses with Elders (*Civil Authorities*) Charge People: "Keep all these commandments which I enjoin on you today." (*Deut. 27:1*)
Jesus Kept All the Lord's Commandments John 15:10
 - a) Set Up Large Stones Coated with Plaster on Mt. Ebal
 - (1) Write the Law Upon Stones
 - *Represents Jesus Who Kept & Fulfilled All the Laws of the Old Covenant, Becoming the Cornerstone of a New Covenant. 1 Pet. 2:1-10*
 - b) Build an Altar to Lord
 - (1) Sacrifice Holocausts & Peace Offerings
(Blood Sacrifices Effecting their Covenant in Promise Land)
 - *Jesus Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice in the Promise Land, Effectuating a New & Better Covenant Heb.10:1-18*
 - (2) Celebrate & Rejoice Before Lord
 - *Jesus' New Covenant People Rejoice in Our Resurrected Lord*
 - 2) Moses with Priests (*Religious Authorities*) Charge People: "Be silent, O Israel, and listen! This day you have become the people of the LORD, your God. You shall therefore hearken to the voice of the LORD, your God, and keep his commandments and statutes which I enjoin on you today." (*Deut. 27:9-10*)
 - a) Peter Charges Israel to Repent & Accept their Messiah Acts 2:22-41
 - (1) "You who are Israelites, hear these words. Jesus the Nazorean was a man commended to you by God with mighty deeds, wonders, and signs, which God worked through him in your midst, as you yourselves know." (*Acts 2:22*)

- (2) “This man, delivered up by the set plan and foreknowledge of God, you killed, using lawless men to crucify him. But God raised him up, releasing him from the throes of death, because it was impossible for him to be held by it.” (*Acts 2:23-24*)
- (3) “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the holy Spirit.” (*Acts 2:38*)
- 3) Blessings & Curses to be Announced Over People (*Terms of the Covenant*)
- a) *All Mankind Under the Curse of Sin & Death* *Gen. 3:17-19*
- (1) “For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God.” *Rom. 3:22b-23*
- (2) “For the wages of sin is death (Spiritual, Physical & Eternal)”
Rom. 6:23a
- b) *Jesus, Without Sin, Blesses Mankind by Taking the Curse of Sin Upon Himself & Dying in Our Place*
- (1) “Christ ransomed us from the curse of the law by becoming a curse for us, for it is written, ‘Cursed be everyone who hangs on a tree (i.e. Wooden Cross)’” *Gal. 3:13*
- (2) “For our sake he (Father God) made him (Jesus Christ) to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.” *2 Cor. 5:21*
- (3) “For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.” *Rom. 6:23*
- b. Moses Gives Israel a Choice to Accept or Reject Lord’s Covenant *Deut. 28 – 30*
(*Every Person’s Salvation is Predicated Upon Accepting Jesus as Lord & Savior*)
- 1) Cites Blessings for Obeying the Lord & His Law *Deut. 28:1-14*
- 2) Cites Curses for Disobedience *Deut. 28:15-69*
- 3) The Lord Chose Israel as His Covenant People *Deut. 29*
- 4) Promises of Mercy & Restoration *Deut. 30:1-10*
- a) When Israel Repents from Unfaithfulness & Disobedience
- b) *Israel Called to Repent & Accept their Messiah* *Luke 3:1-18*
- 5) Israel Given a Critical Choice *Deut. 30:11-20*
- a) Lord’s Commands are Clear
- b) “Here, then, I have today set before you life and prosperity, death and doom.” (*Deut. 30:15*)
- (1) If You Obey
- Lord Will Bless & Multiply You in Promise Land
- (2) If You Disobey & Serve Other Gods
- You Will Perish & Curses Will Befall You
- (3) Jesus Presents His Gospel of Salvation to the World. “Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature.
- “Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved;
 - “whoever does not believe will be condemned.” *Mark 16:15-16*
- c) “I call heaven and earth today to witness against you: I have set before you life and death, the blessing and the curse. Choose life, then, that you and your descendants may live, by loving the LORD, your God, heeding his voice, and holding fast to him. For that will mean life for you, a long life for you to live on the land which the LORD swore he would give to your

fathers Abraham, Isaac and Jacob.” (Deut. 30:19-20)

(1) *Jesus, an Israelite, Chose to Live in Absolute Obedience to the Law, Rightfully Inheriting All its Blessings. He then Took Upon Himself the Curse of Sin, Dying in Our Place that We May Inherit the Blessings of God in His Name, and Live Under His New Covenant.*

- 6) Jesus Christ Offers All Humanity a Choice – Life or Death
 - a) “Whoever believes (Puts their Faith, Trusts, Relies) in him (Jesus - Son of God) will not be condemned (Saved from Sin), but whoever does not believe has already been condemned (Remaining in their Sins), because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God.” John 3:18
 - b) “Come to me, all you who labor and are burdened (By Sin), and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am meek and humble of heart; and you will find rest for your selves. For my yoke is easy, and my burden light.” Matt. 11:28-30
 - c) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes in the one who sent me has eternal life and will not come to condemnation, but has passed from death to life.” John 5:24
 - d) “I am the resurrection and the life; whoever believes in me, even if he dies, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?” John 11:25-26
 - c. Moses Prepares Israelites to Conquer & Settle in Promise Land Deut. 31
 - 1) Moses Will Die & Not Cross Jordan River
 - a) *Prefigures Jesus Who Died to Effectuate His New Covenant*
 - 2) Lord Will Cross Jordan Before Israel
 - a) To Destroy Pagan Nations & Give You the Land
 - b) Purge the Pagan Nations as Moses Instructed
 - 3) Moses Summons Joshua & Publicly Charges Him to Lead Israel
 - a) *Joshua Foreshadows Jesus Who Leads His New Covenant People to Overcome Sin, Spread His Gospel & Occupy Until He Returns to Earth ('Joshua' & 'Jesus' Have the Same Hebrew Name 'Yeshua')*
 - 4) Moses Writes Out the Law & Gives to Levitical Priests
 - a) Commands Priests to Place Law Beside Ark of Covenant
 - (1) *Symbolizes Jesus Enthroned as High Priest in Heaven Heb. 8:1-2*
 - 5) Lord Commissions Joshua as Israel’s Leader
 - a) Lord Appears at Meeting Tent in Column of Cloud
 - (Sign of Lord’s Appointment of Joshua)
 - b) The Resurrected Christ Commissions His Church to Spread His Gospel to All Nations Under His Authority & Leadership
 - (1) “All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.” Matt. 28:18-20
 - 6) Lord Tells Moses that Israelites Will Break His Covenant & Serve Other Gods
 - 7) Moses’ Final Appeal Deut. 32:45-47
 - d. Moses Blesses Tribes of Israel Deut. 33
6. Death of Moses Deut. 32:48-52; Deut. 34

7. Israel Enters the Promise Land Under Lord's Covenant Jos. 1 – 5
Christ's Church Invades this World of Sin Proclaiming His New Covenant of Salvation, Reconciliation & Peace
- a. Israel Prepares to Enter the Promise Land Jos. 1:1-11
 1) Jesus Prepares His Church to Proclaim His Gospel
John 13 – 16; John 21; Acts 1:1-11
- b. Israel Crosses Jordan River into Promise Land (Canaan) Jos. 3 – 4
Prefigures the Sacrament of Baptism Initiating People into Christ's New Covenant.
“Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned.”
Mark 16:16
- 1) Israel Camps Beside Jordan River
- 2) Priests Carry Ark of Covenant to River's Bed
Ark of the Covenant Represents Jesus Christ. (See “Tabernacle” Above)
- a) River Parts as Priests' Feet Touch the Water
- b) People Pass Over Jordan on Dry Ground
- 3) Joshua has 12 Memorial Stones Erected Where Priests Stand Holding Ark
Symbolizes Jesus Christ the Foundation (Cornerstone) & Head (Capstone) of His New Covenant Church
Acts 4:8-12; Eph. 2:19-22
- 4) River Resumes its Course as Priests Leave River Bed
 a) *Jesus Ascends into Heaven, Commissioning His Church* *Acts 1:6-9*
- c. Israelites Apply Lord's Covenant in Promise Land Jos. 5
- 1) Israelite Males are Circumcised – Sign of Covenant Jos. 5:2-9
(Bringing Them Under Lord's Covenant with Abraham)
(Jesus Christ Brings Believers Under His New Covenant)
- 2) Israel Celebrates Passover in Promise Land Jos. 5:10-12
(Celebrating Lord's Deliverance of Israel from Bondage in Egypt)
(Prefigures Sacrament of Holy Communion that Christ Initiates at Passover, Celebrating the Deliverance of His People from Bondage of Sin)
- 3) Visitation of the Captain of Lord's Host Jos. 5:13-15
Captain of Lord's Host is a Preincarnate Visitation of God the Son (Jesus)
- a) Joshua Sees a Man in Front of Him with Drawn Sword
(Symbolic of Jesus as Commander of His Church)
- b) Joshua Asks: “Are you one of us or of our enemies?” *(Jos. 5:13b)*
- c) Man Replies: “Neither. I am the captain of the host of the LORD and I have just arrived.”
- d) Joshua Prostrates Himself & Worships Man, Saying: “What has my lord to say to his servant?” *(Jos. 5:14) (Worship Reserved Exclusively for God)*
- e) Captain of Lord's Hosts Replies: “Remove your sandals from your feet, for the place on which you are standing is holy.” *(Jos. 5:15)*
(Same Instructions Lord God Gave to Moses When He First Appeared to Him from the Burning Bush. Ex. 3:5)
(Place is Holy Because of the Presence of God the Son)
- f) Joshua Obeys the Captain of the Lord's Host
(Joshua Poised to Lead Israel in their First Conquest in the Promise Land – Jericho – Waiting for the Lord's Command)
(Church Waits for the Promised Coming of the Holy Spirit. Acts 1:12-26)
- g) Jesus' Promise of the Holy Spirit
 (1) *“... John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the holy Spirit.”*
Acts 1:5

- (2) “... you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.” Acts 1:8
- h) Holy Spirit Descends Upon Church, Fulfilling Jesus’ Promise Acts 2:1-4
- (1) Baptizing Them in the Holy Spirit & Fire (Zeal)
- (2) Empowering Them to Fearlessly Spread His Gospel
- d. Joshua Leads Israel in Defeating Jericho, as Commanded by the Lord Jos. 6
Israel’s Conquest of Promise Land is Symbolic of the Victories & Struggles of the Church throughout the Church Age.
- 1) “For he (Jesus Christ) must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death” 1 Cor. 15:25-26

G. The Davidic Covenant

The Lord Establishes a Monarchy to Rule the 12 Israelite Tribes as a Unified Nation. The First King, Saul, was Unfaithful & Disobedient to the Lord, Disrespecting & Breaking the Lord’s (Mosaic) Covenant. The Lord Anointed David as King Over Israel, with Whom He Established a Royal Covenant. In this Covenant, the Lord Establishes a Dynasty to Rule His Chosen Nation (Israel) Under His Authority. The Terms of this Covenant are Faith in the Lord God, Allegiance to Him and Obedience to His Laws.

Jesus Christ, from the House & Lineage of King David, Fulfills the Royal Covenant by Establishing God’s Kingdom on Earth and Ruling it in Absolute Obedience to the Law & the Terms of that Covenant. He then Rules an Everlasting Kingdom, Extending His Reign to Encompass Heaven & Earth, Fulfilling the Promises of the Lord’s Royal Covenant.

(See “Anointed King – Part I” for a Comprehensive Study of the Office of King, and “Anointed King – Part II” for Jesus’ Fulfillment of that Office)

1. David King of Israel

David is a Type of Messiah-King (Jesus Christ) at His First Coming

- a. Prophet Samuel Anoints David, from Tribe of Judah, King of Israel 1 Sam. 16:1-13
- 1) During Reign of King Saul
- 2) *Prophet John Baptizes Jesus, Anointing Him as Messiah (Lord’s Holy Anointed One)* Matt. 3:13-17
- a) “After Jesus was baptized, he came up from the water and behold, the heavens were opened (for him), and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove (and) coming upon him. And a voice came from the heavens, saying, ‘This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased.’” (Matt. 3:16-17)
- b. David Becomes King of Judah Upon Saul’s Death 2 Sam. 2 – 4
- 1) *Jesus is from Tribe of Judah, House & Linage of Kind David*
 Matt. 1:1-16; Luke 3:23-32
- 2) *Jesus Born to be King* Luke 1:26-38
- a) “Behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob (Israel) forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end.” (Luke 1:31-33)
- c. David Rules a United Kingdom
- 1) Unites 12 Tribes of Israel into One Kingdom 2 Sam. 5:1-5

- a) *Jesus Unites Diverse Peoples & Cultures Under One Covenant (His Universal Church)*
 - 2) Captures & Makes Jerusalem Capital of His Kingdom 2 Sam. 5:6-16
 - a) *Jesus Secures His Kingdom in Jerusalem, by His Sacrifice & Resurrection*
 - 3) Defeats & Subjugates Pagan Nations within His Realm
 - 2 Sam. 5:17-25; 2 Sam. 8
 - a) *Jesus Conquers the Forces of Evil, Extending His Church to the World*
- 2. The Lord's Kingdom 2 Sam. 6 & 7; 1 Chron. 13, 15, 16 & 17
 - a. David Brings Ark of Covenant to Jerusalem
(*Ark of Covenant is Lord's Throne on Earth*)
 - 1) David's First Attempt Fails 2 Sam. 6:1-11; 1 Chron. 13
Represents Man's Attempts to Bring in Kingdom of God through Old Covenant
 - a) Ark Improperly Transported
(*Symptom of Man's Inability to Obey & Follow the Law Precisely*)
 - (1) Violating Requirements of Law Num. 3:27-31; Num. 4:1-15
 - (2) Resulting in Death of a Man Escorting Ark
 - b) Ark Diverted & Stored at House of Obed-edom a Levite
(1) *Represents Israel Waiting for the Promised Messiah*
 - 2) David Successfully Brings Ark of Covenant to Jerusalem
2 Sam. 6:12-23; 1 Chron. 15 & 16
Kingdom of God Must be Established According to Lord's Precepts of Total Obedience & Observance of Law - Fulfilled Only by Messiah Jesus
 - a) David Recognizes & Corrects His Error (*Obeying the Law*)
 - b) Procession of the Ark to Jerusalem
Prefigures Christ's Triumphant Entry into Jerusalem Matt. 21:1-11
 - (1) Priests Sound Trumpets Before Ark
 - (2) Levites Carry Ark on Shoulders with Poles, as Prescribed by Law
 - (3) David Offers Sacrifices Every 6 Steps Taken by Bearers of Ark
(a) *Representing that Man Proceeds & Enters Kingdom of God Only through the Sacrifice of God's Holy Son Jesus Heb. 10:1-18*
 - (4) Israelites Rejoice with Song, Musical Instruments & Dance
(a) *People Join Jesus' Procession, Rejoicing: "Hosanna to the Son of David; blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord; hosanna in the highest." Matt. 21:9*
 - c) Ark Brought into Jerusalem
 - (1) David in Linen Apron Dances & Rejoices Before Lord
 - (2) *Jesus Enters Temple Precincts Upon His Arrival into Jerusalem, Lamenting its Fate Luke 19:28-46*
 - d) Ark Placed in Tent (*Temporary House*) Pitched by David
Prefigures God the Son Housed in a Temporal Body (Jesus – Son of Man)
 - (1) David Offers Holocausts & Peace Offerings
 - (2) *Jesus Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice Unto the Lord*
 - e) David Appoints Priests & Levites to Minister Before the Ark
 - (1) Ministering & Offering Sacrifices, as Prescribed by Law
 - (2) *Jesus Appoints & Commissions Disciples to Minister His Gospel Matt. 10:1-4; Matt. 28:18-20*
- b. A House for the Lord 2 Sam. 7; 1 Chron. 17
(*A Permanent Temple for the Presence of God to Dwell Among His People.*)

- 1) David Living in a Palace
 - a) Lord Giving Him Rest from His Enemies
- 2) David Desires to Build a House for Ark of the Covenant
 - a) Expresses His Desire to Prophet Nathan: “Here I am living in a house of cedar, while the ark of God dwells in a tent! (*Tabernacle Meeting Tent*)”
 - b) Nathan Agrees with David: “Go, do whatever you have in mind, for the LORD is with you.” (2 Sam. 7:2-3)
 - c) *Where Nathan Spoke Presumptuously, Without Consulting the Lord; Jesus Only Spoke What He Heard from Father God John 7:16-18; John 14:8-11*
- 3) Lord Speaks to Nathan that Night 2 Sam. 7:4-16; 1 Chron. 17:13-14
(*Revealing Himself through a Covenant with David*)
Jesus (God the Son) Proclaims the Word of the Lord to Israel, Revealing Himself through the Lord’s Covenants. “For if you had believed Moses, you would have believed me, because he wrote about me.” John 5:46
Messiah Jesus Fulfills the Lord’s Covenant with King David
 - a) “Go, tell my servant David, ‘Thus says the LORD: Should you (A Human) build me a house to dwell in?’” (2 Sam. 7:5)
(*Lord God is Omnipresent – Heaven & Earth Can Not Contain Him*)
(*Jesus is the Creative, Eternal Word of God Made Flesh. John 1:1-14*)
 - (1) Lord Does Not Need a House
 - (2) Lord Has Not Asked for a House
 - b) Lord’s Preamble to His Covenant. “Now then, speak thus to my servant David, ‘The LORD of hosts has this to say:....’” (2 Sam. 7:8)
 - (1) David the Lord’s Chosen King
 - (a) Lord Elevated David from Shepherd to King
(*Lord God is Sovereign – Bestowing Favor as He Wills*)
(*Lord God is David’s Source & Strength*)
 - *Jesus is the Good Shepherd, Who Father God Elevated to King of Kings John 10; Phil. 2:5-11; Rev. 19:11-16*
 - (b) Lord Destroyed All David’s Enemies
(*Lord God is Omnipotent – Able to Overthrow All Opposition*)
(*Lord is the Supreme & Righteous Judge of the Nations*)
 - *Jesus Destroys All Forces of Evil, the Curse of Sin & Death 1 Cor. 15:20-26*
 - *Jesus Given Power Over Heaven & Earth Matt. 28:18*
 - *Jesus is Appointed Judge Over All Peoples John 5:19-30*
 - (c) “And I will make you famous like the great ones of the earth.”
(2 Sam. 7:9b) (*Lord Bestows Fame & Blessings on His Chosen*)
 - *All Creation Bows Before Jesus Christ, Acknowledging Him as Lord Phil. 2:5-11*
 - (2) Israel the Lord’s Chosen Nation
 - (a) Lord (*King of the Universe*) Established Israel as His Nation
 - *Jesus Established & Rules His Universal Kingdom (His New Covenant Church) Eph. 1:22-23; Col. 1:15-20*
 - (b) Lord Protects & Gives Israel Peace
(*Lord God is Israel’s Defender & Protector – King of Peace*)
 - *Jesus Protects & Intercedes for His New Covenant People John 17:9-26; Rom. 8:26-39*

- *Jesus Gives His New Covenant People a Peace that Surpasses All Understanding* John 14:27; Phil. 4:4-7
- c) Lord's Covenant Promises 2 Sam. 7:11c-16; 1 Chron. 17:10c-14
(Lord's Covenant Establishes the House of David as a Perpetual Kingship Over His People.) All Covenant Promises are Fulfilled by Messiah Jesus.
- (1) 'The LORD also reveals to you that he will establish a house for you.'
- (a) The Lord Promises David a Royal House & Lineage
(A Living House - Not a House of Stone)
 - (b) *Kings of Israel, then Judah that are Descendants of David (His Royal House)* Matt. 1:6-11
 - *Jesus is of David's Royal House* Matt. 1:6-16
 - *".....the angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream and said, 'Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife into your home. For it is through the holy Spirit that this child has been conceived in her. She will bear a son and you are to name him Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins.'" Matt. 1:20-21 (Adopted Sons Inherit the Same Rights, Privileges & Heritage as Natural Sons)*
 - (c) *Jesus is the Descendant of King David Who Brings His Covenant People into the Household of God*
 - *"....you received a spirit of adoption, through which we cry, 'Abba, Father!' The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, then heirs, heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ,..." Rom. 8:14-17*
- (2) 'And when your time comes and you rest with your ancestors, I will raise up your heir after you, sprung from your loins, and I will make his kingdom firm. It is he who shall build a house for my name.'
- (a) The Lord Promises David that His Son will Succeed Him as King
 - The Lord Will Secure His Kingdom
 - (b) The Lord Promises David that His Son Will Build the Lord's House (*Temple*)
 - (c) *Lord Chooses Jesus of Nazareth, from House & Lineage of King David, as His Holy Anointed King, Fulfilling that Promise*
 - *Jesus is the Promised Son of David. "Behold, you (Virgin Mary) will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob (Israel) forever, and of his kingdom (Including Gentile Nations) there will be no end."* Luke 1:31-33
(Mary is a Natural Descendant of David. Luke 3:23-31)
 - (d) *Father God Secures Jesus' Kingdom* Matt. 16:13-20
 - *Simon Peter's Confession of Faith: "You (Jesus of Nazareth) are the Messiah, the Son of the living God."*
 - *Jesus' Response: "Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah. For flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but my heavenly Father. And so I say to you, you are Peter, and*

upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of the netherworld (Death & Hell) shall not prevail against it."
(Matt. 16:16-18)

(e) *Jesus Builds a Heavenly Home for His Covenant People*

- *"....You have faith in God; have faith also in me. In my Father's house there are many dwelling places. If there were not, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back again and take you to myself, so that where I am you also may be."* John 14:1-3

(3) 'And I will make his royal throne firm forever.'

(a) *The Lord Promises David that He Will Firmly Establish His Son's Throne Forever*

(b) *Jesus is Enthroned at Right Hand of God* Heb. 1:1-4

- *"..... When he (Jesus – Son of God) had accomplished purification from sins, he took his seat at the right hand of the Majesty on high, as far superior to the angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs"*

(c) *Jesus Will Rule from Lord's Temple on Earth During His Messianic Kingdom (See Below)* Ezek. 43:1-9; Zech. 6:9-15

(4) 'I will be a father to him, and he shall be a son to me. And if he does wrong, I will correct him with the rod of men and with human chastisements; but I will not withdraw my favor from him as I withdrew it from your predecessor Saul, whom I removed from my presence.'

(a) *The Lord Promises a Personal Relationship with David's Son (Lord Reveals Himself as a Loving Father)*

- Correcting & Chastising Him for Transgressions
- Retaining His Royal Covenant with David

(b) *Jesus is the Son of God* Col. 1:15-20

- *Announced by the Angel Gabriel: "The holy Spirit will come upon you (Mary), and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. Therefore the child to be born will be called holy, the Son of God."* Luke 1:35
- *Proclaimed by Prophet John: "Now I have seen and testified that he (Jesus of Nazareth) is the Son of God."* John 1:34
- *Testified by Father God: "This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased; listen to him."* Matt. 17:5
- *Confirmed by the Holy Spirit: "Whoever acknowledges that Jesus is the Son of God, God (The Holy Spirit) remains in him and he in God."* 1 John 4:15

(c) *Jesus of Nazareth is the Lord's Promised One (Messiah) from the House & Lineage of David* Matt. 1:18-25

- *Jesus, Who Lived a Sinless Life, Took the Chastisements of Sin Upon Himself. "For our sake he (Father God) made him (Jesus) to be sin who did not know sin, so that we might become the righteousness of God in him.'* 2 Cor. 5:21

- (d) *Jesus' New Covenant People are Adopted as 'Sons of God'*
Rom. 8:14-17; Gal. 4:1-7
- *Father God Corrects His Adopted Children. "..... My son, do not disdain the discipline of the Lord or lose heart when reproved by him; for whom the Lord loves, he disciplines; he scourges every son he acknowledges." Heb. 12:5-6*
- (5) 'Your house and your kingdom shall endure forever before me; your throne shall stand firm forever.' (2 Sam. 7:11c-16)
- (a) The Lord Promises David that His Kingdom will Last Forever Ruled by His Descendants
- (b) *Messiah-King Jesus Rules All Creation from His Heavenly Throne. "..... God greatly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bend, of those in heaven and on earth and under the earth, and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father." Phil. 2:5-11*
- 4) Prophet Nathan Delivers Word of the Lord to King David
 2 Sam. 7:17; 1 Chron. 17:15
- 5) King David Prays in the Presence of Lord (*Before Ark of Covenant*)
 2 Sam. 7:18-29; 1 Chron. 17:16-27
- Ark of Covenant Represents Jesus Christ. (Ark is a Box [Body] Made of Wood [Symbolizing Man], Covered in Gold [Symbolizing God], Containing the Law [Word of God]. Jesus Christ is Son of God & Son of Man. He is the Word of God Made Flesh [John 1:14], the Fulfillment of the Law [Matt. 5:17].)*
- a) David Accepts the Word of Lord
- (1) "Who am I, O LORD God, and what is my family, that you should have brought me as far as I have come? (*From Shepherd to King*) And yet, even this you now consider too little, O God! For you have made a promise regarding your servant's family reaching into the distant future," (1 Chron. 17:16-17)
- (2) *Peter (Representing the Church) Accepts Jesus' Words: "Master, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life. We have come to believe and are convinced that you are the Holy One of God." John 6:68-69*
- b) David Offers Praise & Thanksgiving
- (1) "Great are you, Lord GOD! There is none like you and there is no God but you, just as we have heard it told." (2 Sam. 17:22)
- (2) *Jesus, Lamb of God, is Worthy of Praise. "Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power and riches, wisdom and strength, honor and glory and blessing." Rev. 5:12*
- c) Claims the Lord's Promises
- (1) "...O LORD, may the promise that you have uttered concerning your servant and his house remain firm forever. Bring about what you have promised, that your renown as LORD of hosts, God of Israel, may be great and abide forever, while the house of David, your servant, is established in your presence." (1 Chron. 17:23-24)
- (2) *Promise Fulfilled by the Word of God Becoming Flesh as 'Son of David'*
John 1:1-14

- (a) *Jesus is Superior to King David* *Matt. 22:41-46*
- *Jesus Asks Pharisees: “What is your opinion about the Messiah? Whose son is he?”*
 - *Pharisees Answer: “David’s.”*
 - *Jesus Replies: “How, then, does David, inspired by the Spirit, call him ‘lord,’ saying: ‘The Lord (Yahweh) said to my lord (Messiah), Sit at my right hand until I place your enemies under your feet’? If David calls him ‘lord,’ how can he be his son?”*
 - *Pharisees Unable to Answer (They Fail to See God’s Fulfillment of His Promises Before their Eyes – Jesus Who is Both Son of God (Lord) & Son of David (God Made Flesh.)*
- (b) *Jesus is the Lion of Tribe of Judah* *Rev. 5*
- (c) *Jesus is the Root (Source/Creator) of David* *Rev. 22:16*
- c. King David’s Preparations for the House of the Lord (Temple)
(Nearing the End of His Reign, David Acts on His Faith Making Preparations for His Son to Build the Temple Promised by the Lord)
(Prefigures Jesus, Who Nearing the End of His Life on Earth, Makes Preparations for the Initiation & Activation of His New Covenant)
- 1) David Purchases the Site for Lord’s House *2 Sam. 24; 1 Chron. 21:1 – 22:1*
 - a) David Presumptuously Takes a Census of the People
(People Belong to Lord, Who Alone Should Know their Number)
(David’s Disobedience is Symptomatic of Man’s Sinful Condition)
(1) Who Can Number God’s Elect (Saved Under Christ’s New Covenant), Except the Lord Himself!
 - b) David Regrets Numbering the People
 - (1) Repents & Asks the Lord for Forgiveness
 - (2) *Represents People Who Repent of their Sins & Seek Forgiveness from a Holy God*
 - c) The Lord’s Chastisements
 - (1) Lord Gives Prophet Gad 3 Alternative Chastisements to Offer David:
(God is Willing to Forgive Sin, but, in His Justice Requires a Suitable Chastisement to Atone for that Sin.)
 - (a) 3 Years of Famine, or
 - (b) 3 Months Fleeing from His Enemies, or
 - (c) 3 Days of Pestilence.
 - (2) David Chooses Pestilence: “I am in dire straits. But I prefer to fall into the hand of the LORD, whose mercy is very great, than into the hands of men.” *(1 Chron. 21:13) (Trusting in the Lord)*
 - (a) *Jesus Accepts Lord’s Chastisements for Sins of Man. “Father, if you are willing, take this cup (His Pending Sacrifice & Death) away from me; still, not my will but yours be done.” Luke 22:42*
 - d) Lord Sends Pestilence on Israel
(Represents All Mankind who Suffer Under Curse of Sin & Death)
 - (1) 70,000 People Die
 - (2) Angel Stretches Forth His Hand (Sword) to Destroy Jerusalem
 - (a) Lord Regrets the Calamity & Stays Angel’s Hand
 - (b) Angel Standing on Threshing Floor of Ornan the Jebusite

- (c) David Sees Angel & Appeals to Lord: “It is I who have sinned; it is I, the shepherd, who have done wrong. But these (*People*) are sheep; what have they done? Punish me and not my kindred.”
(2 Sam. 24:17)
- *Prefigures Jesus (Good Shepherd), Who Accepts Responsibility for Mankind’s Sins; Asking the Lord to Place its Punishment (Death) Upon Himself. John 10*
 - *“I am the good shepherd. A good shepherd lays down his life for the sheep.” (John 10:11)*
 - *“This is why the Father loves me, because I lay down my life in order to take it up again. No one takes it from me, but I lay it down on my own. I have power to lay it down, and power to take it up again. This command I have received from my Father.” (John 10:17-18)*
- e) Angel of Lord Commands Prophet Gad
- (1) Tell David to Build an Altar on Ornan’s Threshing Floor (*Mt Moriah*)
(*The Lord Selects the Site for His Earthly Temple. The Same Site Where Abraham Offered His Son Isaac to Lord. Gen. 22:1-19*)
 - (2) *Repentance Alone Will Not Atoned for Sin*
 - (a) *Sacrifice is Required to Pay the Penalty of Sin. “...without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.” Heb. 9:22*
- f) David Purchases Ornan’s Threshing Floor
- (1) David Goes to Threshing Floor at Gad’s Command
 - (a) Ornan Threshing Wheat
 - (b) *Jesus, the Bread of Life, is Scourged & Beaten John 19:1-3*
 - (2) David Offers Ornan: “Sell me the ground of this threshing floor, that I may build on it an altar to the LORD. Sell it to me at its full price, that the plague may be stayed from the people.” (*1 Chron. 21:22*)
 - (a) *Jesus Silent before His Abusers (Paying the Price for Healing)*
 - *Pilate Asks Jesus After being Scourged: “Do you not speak to me? Do you not know that I have power to release you and I have power to crucify you?”*
 - *Jesus Replies: “You would have no power over me if it had not been given to you from above....” John 19:10-11*
(*God Uses a Pagan Governor to Bring About Jesus’ Fulfillment of the Eternal Covenant. 1 Cor. 2:7-8*)
 - (3) Ornan Offers to Give David His Threshing Floor, Oxen for Holocausts, Threshing Sledges & Yokes for Wood, and Wheat for Cereal Offerings
 - (a) *Pilate Attempts to Release Jesus*
 - (b) *Crowd Rejects Pilate’s Offer: “Crucify him!” John 19:12-15*
 - (4) David Replies: “No! I will buy it from you properly, at its full price. I will not take what is yours for the LORD, nor offer up holocausts that cost me nothing.” (*1 Chron. 21:24*)
 - (a) *Pilate Orders Jesus to be Crucified John 19:16*
 - (b) *Jesus Suffers & Dies on Cross Fully Paying the Price for Our Salvation. “They (We) are justified freely by his grace (Unmerited Favor) through the redemption in Christ Jesus, whom*

God set forth as an expiation (Paying Penalty of Sin in Full), through faith, by his blood,...” Rom. 3:24-25

- (5) David Purchases Threshing Floor & Oxen from Ornan
- g) David Builds an Altar on Threshing Floor
- (1) David Offers Sacrifices & Holocausts to Lord (*Blood Sacrifices*)
- (a) *Jesus Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice on Lord’s Altar (Cross), Sealing His New Covenant with His Own Blood.*
- (2) David Calls Upon the Lord
- (a) Lord Answers by Sending Fire from Heaven on Altar of Holocausts (*Confirming His Covenant with a Sign*)
- *Jesus (God the Son) Descended from Heaven to Fulfill God’s Eternal Covenant John 3:13; Heb. 10:5-7*
 - *Jesus Arose from the Dead & Ascended into Heaven, Eternally Securing His New Covenant. Acts 1:9*
 - *Jesus Baptizes His New Covenant People with the Holy Spirit & Fire from Heaven, Activating His New Covenant Matt. 3:11-12; Acts 1:4-5 & 8; Acts 2:1-4*
- (b) Lord Stops the Plague on Israel
- *Sins of the People Forgiven by Christ’s Sacrifice, Satisfying God’s Righteous Justice Rom. 3:21-28; Titus 3:4-7*
- (3) David Proclaims: “This is the house of the LORD God, and this is the altar of holocausts for Israel.” (1 Chron. 22:1)
(David Declares that Site for the Lord’s Earthly Temple)
- (a) *David’s Sacrifice Fulfilled by Jesus (Son of God & Son of David)*
- *Jesus Declares to be the Living Temple of God John 2:18-22*
 - *“**Destroy this temple (Referring to His Body) and in three days I will raise it up.**” (John 2:19)*
 - *Jesus Offered Himself as a Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sin, Acceptable to a Holy & Righteous God*
 - *Satisfying the Lord’s Justice Rom. 4:23-25*
 - *Commuting the Penalty for Sin Gal. 3:10-13*
- (b) *David’s Sacrifices on this Particular Site Previews All of Israel’s Sacrifices that will be Offered in the Temple*
- *Jesus’ One Eternal Sacrifice Fulfills All of Israel’s Sacrifices Heb. 10:10-18*
- 2) David Gathers Materials & Workmen for Lord’s House 1 Chron. 22:1-5
Represents People Who Jesus Gathered During His Ministry on Earth to Build His House (His New Covenant Church)
- 3) David Establishes His Son Solomon as King 1 Kings 1
David Co-Reigns with Solomon During a Transitional Period Where Solomon is Firmly Established on the Throne & Commissioned to Build the Lord’s House (Temple). This Transition Period, Where Both David & Solomon Co-Reigned, Prefigures Both the Finished Work of Christ (John 19:30) and the Glorified Christ (Heb. 1:1-4) Fulfilled in One Person. It Foreshadows the Church Age, Where Christ Commissions His New Covenant People to Build His Household (Mark 16:15-18) & Prepare for His Return (Titus 2:11-14).
- a) King David Decrees Solomon as His Successor
- (1) Prophet Nathan & Priest Zadok Anoint Solomon King of Israel

(Involving All 3 Offices in Lord's Kingdom, All Fulfilled by Jesus)

- (a) *Zadok & Nathan Represent Old Covenant Priesthood (Law) & Prophets; Fulfilled by Messiah Jesus, Entitling Him to be Enthroned in Glory as King of Kings.*
Matt. 5:17-18; John 17:1-8; Phil. 2:5-11; Heb. 7:26-28
- (2) Solomon Sits on His Father's Throne
 (a) *Jesus Enthroned at Right Hand of Father God Heb. 1:1-4*
- (3) Solomon Secures (Firmly Establishes) His Rule 1 Kings 2:12-46
 (a) *Jesus Firmly Secures His Rule by His Faith, Obedience, Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection Phil. 2:5-11*
- b) David Commands Solomon to Build House for Lord ("Temple")
 1 Chron. 22:6-16
- (1) David had Desired to Build Lord's House
 (a) Lord Would Not Allow Him. "You have shed much blood, and you have waged great wars. You may not build a house in my honor...."
 • *Prefigures Jesus in His First Advent, Where He Suffered (Bloodied) & Died on the Cross Effecting His New Covenant.*
 - *"Now where there is a will (i.e. Covenant), the death of the testator must be established. For a will takes effect only at death; it has no force while the testator is alive."*
Heb. 9:16-17
- (b) David's Son Will Rule in Peace. "However, a son is to be born to you. He will be a peaceful man, and I will give him rest from all his enemies on every side. For Solomon shall be his name....."
 • *'Son Born to David' Prefigures Jesus Resurrected from the Dead. "But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep." 1 Cor. 15:20*
 • *Jesus Will Destroy All Evil & Rule His Kingdom in Peace. "For he (Messiah Jesus) must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death" 1 Cor. 15:25-26*
- (c) King Solomon Shall Build Lord's House. "It is he who shall build a house in my honor; he shall be a son to me, and I (Lord God) will be a father to him, and I will establish the throne of his kingship over Israel forever." (1 Chron. 22:8-10)
 • *Jesus Will Build God's House – Living Temples of the Holy Spirit. "Do you not know that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwells in you?" 1 Cor. 3:16-17*
 • *Jesus is the Son of God. "Behold, you (Virgin Mary) will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High,*
 • *Jesus' Everlasting Rule. "and the Lord God will give him the throne of David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end."*
Luke 1:31-33

- (2) David Reveals His Preparations for Temple to Solomon
- (a) Materials He Gathered for Temple
- *Materials Represent the Resources Christ Bestows Upon His Church for Spreading His Gospel (e.g. Gifts of the Spirit 1 Cor. 12:1-11, Fruits of the Spirit Gal. 5:22-23, etc.)*
- (b) Workmen He Commissioned to Build Temple
- *Workmen Represent Christ's New Covenant People Commissioned to Spread His Gospel to the World Acts 1:8*
- (3) David Charges Solomon: "Set to work, therefore, and the LORD be with you!" (1 Chron. 22:16b)
- (a) *Christ Commissions His Church to Build Him a House of Souls (Mystical Body of Christ. 1 Cor. 12:12-30) Mark 16:15-18*
- c) King David Summons Israel's Officials 1 Chron. 22:17 – 27:34
- (1) Commands Them to Help Solomon Build Temple of the Lord
1 Chron. 22:17-19
- (2) Organizes Priests & Levites 1 Chron. 23:1 – 26:28
- (a) *Christ Organizes His Church John 21:15-22; Eph. 2:19-22*
- *"Some people God has designated in the church to be, first, apostles; second, prophets; third, teachers; then, mighty deeds; then, gifts of healing, assistance, administration, and varieties of tongues."* 1 Cor. 12:28
- d) David Gives Temple Plans to Solomon 1 Chron. 28:11-21
- (1) Charges Solomon: "Be firm and steadfast; go to work without fear or discouragement, for the LORD God, my God, is with you. He will not fail you or abandon you before you have completed all the work for the service of the house of the LORD." (1 Chron. 28:20)
- (a) *Jesus Charges His Church to Build His House*
- *"All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me (King of Kings). Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations (Build His House), baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age."* Matt. 28:18-20
 - *"And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached throughout the world as a witness to all nations, and then the end will come."* Matt. 24:14
- e) Contributions for the Temple 1 Chron. 29:1-9
- (1) David Gives the Materials He had Gathered
- (2) David Gives Additional Materials from His Personal Fortune
- (3) Israel's Tribes & Families Make Contributions for Temple
- f) David Offers Prayer of Praise & Thanksgiving to Lord 1 Chron. 29:10-19
- g) David Charges Israelite Community to Bless Lord 1 Chron. 29:20-22a
- (1) Israelites Offer 1000s of Sacrifices & Offerings (*Blood Sacrifices*)
(*Jesus Offered One Eternal Sacrifice for the Salvation of Mankind. Heb. 9:27-28*)
- (a) Feasting & Rejoicing in Lord Presence (*Before Ark of Covenant*)
- (b) *Jesus Charges His Church to Celebrate His New Covenant*
- *Feasting in His Presence. "..... Jesus took bread, said the*

blessing, broke it, and giving it to his disciples said, 'Take and eat; this is my body.' Then he took a cup, gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, 'Drink from it, all of you, for this is my blood of the covenant, which will be shed on behalf of many for the forgiveness of sins.'” Matt. 26:26-28

- *Rejoicing in His Presence. "Rejoice in the Lord always. I shall say it again: rejoice!"* Phil. 4:4

- 4) Solomon Publicly Anointed & Confirmed King of Israel 1 Chron. 29:22b-25
 - a) *Jesus Publicly Proclaimed as Messiah-King; Confirmed by Signs* Acts 3
 - d. King David's Death 1 Kings 2:10-11, 1 Chron. 29:26-30
 - 1) *David's Prophecy Concerning Messiah: "For David says of him: '..... you will not abandon my soul to the netherworld, nor will you suffer your holy one to see corruption. You have made known to me the paths of life; you will fill me with joy in your presence.'* (Re: Psa. 16:8-11)
 - 2) *Jesus Fulfills David's Prophecy. "My brothers, one can confidently say to you about the patriarch David that he died and was buried, and his tomb is in our midst to this day. But since he was a prophet and knew that God had sworn an oath to him that he would set one of his descendants upon his throne, he foresaw and spoke of the resurrection of the Messiah, that neither was he abandoned to the netherworld nor did his flesh see corruption. God raised this Jesus; of this we are all witnesses. Exalted at the right hand of God, he received the promise of the holy Spirit from the Father and poured it forth, as you (both) see and hear."* Acts 2:25-33
 - e. Solomon Succeeds His Father David as King of Israel
King Solomon's Reign is a Type of Messiah-King (Jesus Christ) at His Second Coming, When He Establishes His Kingdom Over the Entire Earth & Reigns as King of Kings (See "Messianic Kingdom Covenant" Below).
Zech. 14; Rev. 19:11 - 20:10
3. Lord Confirms His Covenant with King Solomon
King Solomon Obeys His Father David's Command, and the Word of the Lord, to Build the Lord's Temple in Jerusalem. Jesus (Word of God & King of Kings) Obeys Father God, Building Lord God's Household (Sons & Daughters Adopted into Family of God).
 - a. Preparations to Build the Temple 1 Kings 5:15-32; 2 Chron. 1:18 – 2:17
 - 1) Solomon Makes Trade Agreement with Hiram – King of Tyre (Lebanon)
 - a) To Provide Lumber & Skilled Craftsmen to Build Temple
 - b) *Represents Gentiles Who Labor to Build Christ's Church on Earth*
 - 2) Lord Gives Solomon Wisdom to Work in Harmony & Peace with Tyre
 - a) *Jesus is Wisdom Itself!* Prov. 8:22-36; Luke 2:41-50; Matt. 22:15-22
 - b) *Jesus is the Source of True Peace* John 14:27; Phil. 4:4-7
 - c) *Jesus Will Rule a Peaceful World with Wisdom* Isa. 2:4; Micah 4:3-4
 - 3) Solomon Conscripts Workmen from Israel
 - a) *Represents Saved of Israel Who Labor to Build Christ's Church on Earth*
 - 4) Accumulates Materials Previously Provided by King David & Tribal Leaders (Re: 1 Chron. 22:1-16; 1 Chron. 29:1-11)
 - a) *Old Covenant Provides the Foundational Material for Christ's Church*
 - b. King Solomon Builds the Lord's Temple 1 Kings 6 – 9; 2 Chron. 3 - 8
(See "Tabernacle & Temple – Part I & Part II" Studies)

- 1) Construction of the Temple 1 Kings 6; 2 Chron. 3 – 4
- a) *Messiah Jesus Fulfilled Old Covenant Temple at His First Coming, Providing the Way into Father God's Presence (His Household)*
- (1) *“Destroy this temple (Referring to His Body) and in three days I will raise it up (Reconciling Man to God).” John 2:19*
- (2) *“I am the way and the truth and the life. No one comes to the Father except through me.” John 14:6*
- b) Construction Started 480th Year from Israel's Exodus from Egypt
- c) Temple Built in Jerusalem on Mount Moriah (*Temple Mount*)
- (1) Site Selected by King David which He Purchased from Ornan
(*Re: 2 Sam. 24:18-25; 1 Chron. 21:18 – 22:1*)
- d) Temple Built to Lord's Specifications
- (1) Plans Given to Solomon by King David (*Re: 1 Chron. 28:11-19*)
- (a) *Temple Plans the Lord Gave to David*
- (b) *Temple Plans Reveal Person & Works of Messiah Jesus*
- (2) Complex of Structures Adjacent to Temple Structure
- (a) Priests' Chambers, Temple Treasuries, Storerooms, etc.
- (3) Basic Configuration of Temple Structure
- (a) Walled Courtyard for People to Worship
Represents that Sinful Man is Separated from a Holy God. Jesus is the Only Way into God's Presence Acts 4:12
- Bronze Altar to Offer Holocausts & Sacrifices
(Jesus Offered Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice to Atonement for Man's Sins, Reconciling Man to God. Heb. 10:1-18)
 - Sea of Glass (Basin/Laver) for Priests to Cleanse Themselves
(Jesus Cleanses His People from Sin. 1 John 1:6-10)
- (b) Temple Building
- Outer Room (Holy Place) Reserved for Ministering Priests
(Jesus is the Truth that Leads His People into the Presence of God)
 - Tables of Showbread
(Jesus is the Bread of Life. John 6:35; John 6:53-58)
 - Lampstands (Menorahs)
(Jesus is the Light of the World. John 8:12; John 9:5)
 - Incense Altar Before Veil Covering Holy of Holies
(Jesus is Mediator Between Man & God, Continually Interceding for His People. 1 Tim. 2:5-6; Heb.7:25)
 - Inner Sanctuary (Holy of Holies) Reserved for High Priest on Day of Atonement
(Jesus, God the Son, is Life Itself! Jesus Entered the Heavenly Sanctuary as Eternal High Priest with His Own Blood Making Atonement for Sin; Fulfilling the Old Covenant & Inaugurating a New Covenant, Granting His People Eternal Life in God's Holy Presence. John 5:25-30; John 11:25-26; Heb. 4:14-16; Heb. 9:11-14)
 - Ark of the Covenant (*Lord's Throne on Earth*)
(Jesus is Enthroned at the Right Hand of God Almighty. Heb. 1:1-4; Rev. 5)
- e) Manufactured Temple Furnishings & Utensils for Worship

- 2) Word of Lord Comes to King Solomon
(Confirming the *Terms of His Covenant with David* – Faith & Obedience)
 - a) “As to this temple you are building— If you observe my statutes, carry out my ordinances, keep and obey all my commands, I will fulfill toward you the promise I made to your father David. I will dwell in the midst of the Israelites and will not forsake my people Israel.” (1 Kings 6:12-13)
 - b) *Messiah Jesus (Son of David & Descendant of Solomon) Observed All the Lord’s Statutes, Fulfilled All the Lord’s Ordinances, Kept and Obeyed All the Lord’s Commands; therefore, the Lord God is Obligated by His Word to Keep the Promise He Made to Kings David & Solomon to Messiah, to Dwell in His Covenant People Forever.*
- 3) Temple Took 7 Years to Build (Seven the Number of Perfect Completion)
 - a) *Messiah Jesus Builds a New Temple at His Second Coming, in which He is Enthroned, that Commemorates & Celebrates His Fulfillment of Both the Old & New Covenants (See “Messianic Kingdom” for a Closer Study of Messiah’s New Temple).* Ezek. 40 - 42
- c. Dedication of the Temple 1 Kings 8:1 – 9:9; 2 Chron. 5 – 7
Prefigures Consecration of New Temple in Messiah’s Kingdom. Ezek. 43
 - 1) Solomon Orders Elders, Tribal Leaders & Princes to Assemble at Temple
 - a) *Messiah-King Commands an Assembly of Israel & Nations* Isa. 66:15-21
 - 2) Priests Bring Ark of Covenant to Temple
 - a) Followed by Levites Bringing Sacred Vessels from Tabernacle
 - b) Israelites Offer Sacrifices Before Ark (*Blood Sacrifices*)
 - (1) “...sheep and oxen too many to number or count” (1 Kings 8:5)
(Represents Christ Jesus’ Immeasurable & Eternal Sacrifice)
 - c) Priests Take Ark into Temple’s Holy of Holies
 - (1) Place Ark in Holy of Holies & Depart
 - d) Levite Musicians with 120 Priests Stand Before Bronze Altar
 - (1) Praising the Lord by Singing, Blowing Trumpets & Playing Musical Instruments
 - e) *Prefigures Messiah’s Procession into Jerusalem & the New Temple*
Psa. 24; Psa. 100
 - (1) “...I (Prophet Ezekiel) saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east (Mount of Olives, Where Jesus Returns). I heard a sound like the roaring of many waters (Messiah Speaks with Divine Authority), and the earth shone with his glory (Messiah the Light of the World).”
Ezek. 43:2
 - 3) A Cloud (“Shekinah Glory” of Lord) Fills the Temple
(Lord’s Residence Among His People)
 - a) Priests Fall to Pavement
 - (1) Unable to Stand Because of the Lord’s Presence
 - b) King Solomon Welcomes the Lord: “The LORD intends to dwell in the dark cloud; I have truly built you a princely house, a dwelling where you may abide forever.” (1 Kings 8:12)
 - c) *Messiah Jesus Enters the New Temple*
 - (1) “... I (Prophet Ezekiel) fell prone as the glory of the LORD entered the temple by way of the gate which faces the east, ...And I saw that the temple was filled with the glory of the LORD.
 - (2) “Then I heard someone speaking to me from the temple...., this is

where my (Messiah – Son of God’s) throne shall be, this is where I will set the soles of my feet; here I will dwell among the Israelites forever. Never again shall they and their kings profane my holy name”
Ezek. 43:3-9

- 4) **King Solomon Declares Lord’s Covenant with David Fulfilled**
- a) “Blessed be the LORD, the God of Israel, who with his own mouth made a promise to my father David and by his hand has brought it to fulfillment” (*1 Kings 8:15*)
- (1) Lord Chose David to Rule His People Israel
(a) Lord God Chose Jesus from the House & Royal Lineage of King David to Rule Israel Forever Luke 1:30-33
- (2) Lord Chose David’s Son to Build a Temple to Honor Him
(a) Jesus, Son of David, Builds an Everlasting House of Lord God
- (3) Lord Fulfilled His Promise
- (a) Solomon Succeeded His Father & Sits on Throne of Israel
 (b) Solomon Built Temple to Honor Lord
 (c) Solomon Provided a Place for the Ark of Covenant
- b) Messiah Jesus Fulfills Lord’s Covenant with David, Qualifying Him to Sit Upon His Everlasting Throne*
- 5) **Solomon Prays to Lord God of Israel**
- a) Praises the Lord for His Faithfulness
- (1) “LORD, God of Israel, there is no God like you in heaven above or on earth below; you keep your covenant of kindness with your servants who are faithful to you with their whole heart.
- (2) “You have kept the promise you made to my father David, your servant. You who spoke that promise, have this day, by your own power, brought it to fulfillment.” (*1 Kings 8:23-24*)
- (3) Examples of Praise & Thanksgiving Offered to Messiah Jesus*
- (a) Creator, Savior & King Psa. 98*
(b) Holy & Righteous King Psa. 99
(c) King, High Priest & Judge Psa. 110
- b) Asks the Lord to Keep & Confirm His Promise (Covenant) to David to Always Have a Descendant on Israel’s Throne
- (1) Conditioned Upon their Obedience
(2) Promise Fulfilled & Confirmed by Messiah-King Jesus
- c) Acknowledges Greatness & Sovereignty of the Lord
- (1) “Can it indeed be that God dwells among men on earth? If the heavens and the highest heavens cannot contain you, how much less this temple which I have built!” (*1 Kings 8:27*)
- (2) All Creation (Including Solomon) Acknowledges Greatness & Sovereignty of Lord Jesus Phil. 2:9-11*
- d) Offers Petitions to the Lord: “Look kindly on the prayer and petition of your servant, O LORD, my God, and listen to the cry of supplication which I, your servant, utter before you this day.” (*1 Kings 8:28*)
- (1) Watch Over & Protect His Temple
 (2) Listen to Prayers of His People (Israel)
 (a) Whether Offered at Temple, within Israel or Distant Lands
 (3) Grant Justice Among His People
 (4) Grant Forgiveness to His People When They Repent of Sin

- (a) Whether Personal or National
- (5) Grant Favor to Foreigners Who Come to Temple to Honor Him
- (6) Hear Prayers of His Chosen People
- (7) *Prefigures Messiah's Constant Intercession for His Church & His People* *John 17:9-26; 1 Tim. 2:1-6; Heb. 4:14 – 5:10*
- e) Invites Glory of God to Take His Throne in the Holy of Holies
 - (1) “Advance, LORD God, to your resting place, you and the ark of your majesty.
 - (2) “May your Priests, LORD God, be clothed with salvation, may your faithful ones rejoice in good things.” (*2 Chron. 6:41*)
- 6) Fire Descends from Heaven Consuming Sacrifices on Altar
(Lord God Seals His Covenant by Fire)
Prefigures Purification & Dedication of Altar of Sacrifice in New Temple (Commemorating Jesus - God's Holy & Perfect Sacrifice) *Ezek. 43:13-27*
 - a) Glory of Lord Fills Temple
(1) Prefigures Coronation & Enthronement of Messiah Jesus (Son of God) in New Temple's Holy of Holies *Zech. 6:9-15*
 - b) Priests Unable to Enter Temple Because of Glory of Lord
 - c) People Fall on their Faces - Seeing the Fire & Glory
- 7) King Solomon Blesses the Lord & His People
 - a) “Blessed be the LORD who has given rest to his people Israel, just as he promised. Not a single word has gone unfulfilled of the entire generous promise he made through his servant Moses.
 - b) “May the LORD, our God, be with us as he was with our fathers and may he not forsake us nor cast us off.
 - c) “May he draw our hearts to himself, that we may follow him in everything and keep the commands, statutes, and ordinances which he enjoined on our fathers.” (*1 Kings 8:56-58*)
 - d) Charges People to Devote Themselves to Lord
- 8) King Solomon & Israel Offer Sacrifices to Lord (*Blood Sacrifices*)
 - a) Solomon Offers 22,000 Oxen & 120,000 Sheep as Peace Offerings
 - b) Israel Celebrates 7 Day Festival
(1) Priests Sacrifice Sin Offerings for 7 Days Dedicating New Temple. “Daily for seven days you shall offer a he-goat as a sin offering, and a young bull and a ram from the flock, all unblemished, shall be offered for seven days. Thus atonement shall be made for the altar, and it shall be purified and dedicated” *Ezek. 43:25-26*
 - c) Solomon Dismisses People on 8th Day
(1) Priests Offer Perpetual Sacrifices at New Temple. “..... from the eighth day on, the priests shall offer your holocausts and peace offerings on the altar. Then I will accept you, says the Lord GOD.” *Ezek. 43:27*
- 9) The Lord Answers King Solomon's Prayer
(Confirming His Covenant with David's Son)
 - a) Lord Appears & Speaks to Solomon
 - b) Lord Heard His Prayer. “I have heard the prayer of petition which you offered in my presence.” (*1 Kings 9:3a*)
 - c) Lord Consecrates the Temple. “I have consecrated this temple which you have built; I confer my name upon it forever, and my eyes and my heart

shall be there always.” (1 Kings 9:3b)

(1) *Messiah Sanctifies Temple Mount. “..... This is the law of the temple: its whole surrounding area on the mountain top shall be most sacred.”*
Ezek. 43:10-12

- d) Lord Confirms His Covenant Promises to King Solomon. “As for you, if you live in my presence as your father David lived, sincerely and uprightly, doing just as I have commanded you, keeping my statutes and decrees (*Laws of Moses*), I will establish your throne of sovereignty over Israel forever, as I promised to your father David when I said, ‘You shall always have someone from your line on the throne of Israel.’”
(1 Kings 9:4-5)
- (1) *Messiah Jesus (Son of David & Descendant of Solomon) Lived His Life Sincerely & Uprightly before Father God, Obeying the Lord’s Commands, Keeping & Fulfilling All the Lord’s Statutes & Decrees; thus, Fulfilling the Lord’s Conditional Promise to King Solomon. Christ Jesus; therefore, Claims that Promise and Secures His Sovereign Rule Over Israel Forever.*
- e) Lord Will Correct His Children (*Israel*)
- (1) Chastisement. Land Will be Afflicted with Famine, Pestilence, etc. for Infidelity / Sin
- (2) Repentance & Restoration. “and if my people, upon whom my name has been pronounced, humble themselves and pray, and seek my presence and turn from their evil ways, I will hear them from heaven and pardon their sins and revive their land.” (2 Chron. 7:14)
- f) Lord Attentive to Prayers of His People. “Now my eyes shall be open and my ears attentive to the prayer of this place (*Temple*).” (2 Chron. 7:15)
- g) Lord Warns King Solomon & His Successors of Infidelity & Disobedience
- (1) “But if you and your descendants (*Kings from House of David*) ever withdraw from me, fail to keep the commandments and statutes which I set before you, and proceed to venerate and worship strange gods (*Idolatry*), I will cut off Israel from the land I gave them and repudiate the temple I have consecrated to my honor.....” (1 Kings 9:6-7)
- (a) Lord’s Presence Will Depart from the Temple & He Will No Longer Live Among His People
- (b) Israel Will No Longer be Protected by the Lord
- (c) The Temple Will be Destroyed
- (d) Israel Will be Subjugated by Foreign Nations
- (2) *Where King Solomon and His Descendants (Kings of Judah) Failed, Suffering the Lord’s Chastisements; Messiah-King Jesus (Descendant of King Solomon & Kings of Judah) Succeeded, Restoring Nation of Israel, the Temple, the Lord’s Presence and the Lord’s Kingdom.*

SECOND COVENANT BOOK
Messiah's New Covenant

Jesus (God the Son) was Born as a Man, Lived, Ministered, Died, was Resurrected from the Dead, Ascended into Heaven and Glorified under the Old Covenants.

When on Earth, Jesus Christ Fulfilled the Lord's Old Covenants (Matt. 5:17-18); while Promising, Establishing & Inaugurating His New Covenant. Upon His Glorification in Heaven, Jesus Sent God the Holy Spirit to Earth to Activate, Apply and Fulfill His New Covenant. The Terms of the New Covenant are Repentance from Sin, Faith in Jesus Christ as Lord & Savior, and Obedience to the Holy Spirit.

The New Covenant Age (i.e. "Church Age") Began with the Descent of the Holy Spirit on the Day of Pentecost (Acts 2:1-4) Birthing the Church, and Ends with the Ascent of the Holy Spirit taking the New Covenant People with Him (1 Thess. 4:13-18).

This Section Expands on the New Covenant Revelations Integrated within the Previous Sections of this Study. It Highlights Some of the Basic Tenets of Christ's New Covenant, which are Too Extensive to be Thoroughly Presented within the Scope of this Study.

➤ *"But as it is written: 'What eye has not seen, and ear has not heard, and what has not entered the human heart, what God has prepared for those who love him (Re: Isa. 64:3),' this God has revealed to us through the Spirit." (1 Cor. 2:9-10a)*

A. Introduction of New Covenant

1. Foundation of the New Covenant is Love

In His Infinite Love, God (Father, Son & Holy Spirit) Made an Eternal Covenant with Himself for the Redemption of Mankind, before He Created the Earth. God the Son Fulfilled that Covenant by Coming to Earth as a Man to Offer Himself as a Holy and Perfect Sacrifice for the Atonement of Sins, Reconciling Mankind Back to God.

a. God the Son's Fulfillment of the Eternal Covenant

1) Word of God Became the Man Jesus

John 1:1-18

- a) Jesus is the Pre-Existent Divine Word. "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God (i.e. 'God the Son')."
- b) Jesus is the Eternal Word. "He was in the beginning with God."
- c) Jesus is the Creative Word. "All things came to be through him, and without him nothing came to be"
- d) Jesus is the Life Giving Word. "What came to be through him was life, and this life was the light of the human race;"
- e) Jesus is the Light Giving Word. "the light shines in the darkness (*World of Sin*), and the darkness has not overcome it (*Victorious Over Sin*)."
- f) Jesus is the Illuminating Word. "... The true light, which enlightens everyone, was coming into the world."
- g) Jesus is the Saving Word. "He was in the world, and the world came to be through him, but the world did not know him. He came to what was his own (*Israel*), but his own people did not accept him. But to those who did accept him he gave power to become children of God, to those who believe in his name, who were born not by natural generation nor by human choice nor by a man's decision but of God."
- h) Jesus is the Incarnate Word (*God Made Flesh*). "And the Word became flesh (*Jesus of Nazareth*) and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his

- glory, the glory as of the Father's only Son, full of grace and truth.....”
- i) Jesus is the Word of Enduring Love. “From his fullness we have all received, grace in place of grace, because while the law was given through Moses, grace (*Unearned Love*) and truth came through Jesus Christ.”
 - j) Jesus Reveals Father God. “No one has ever seen God. The only Son, God, who is at the Father's side, has revealed him.”
- 2) God the Son Emptied Himself in Love!
 - a) “Have among yourselves the same attitude (*Love*) that is also yours in Christ Jesus, Who, though he was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God something to be grasped. Rather, he emptied himself (*Of His Divine Glory*), taking the form of a slave, coming in human likeness; and found human in appearance, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, even death on a cross.” Phil. 2:5-8
 - 3) God the Son Offered Himself in Love!
 - a) God's Preordained Sacrifice for Atonement of Sin. “..... when he (*God the Son*) came into the world, he said: ‘Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; holocausts and sin offerings you took no delight in.’ Then I said, ‘As is written of me in the scroll (*The ‘Tanach’ - Old Testament*), Behold, I come to do your will, O God.’ First he says, ‘Sacrifices and offerings, holocausts and sin offerings (*Of the Old Covenant*), you neither desired nor delighted in.’ These are offered according to the law. Then he says, ‘Behold, I come (*To Earth*) to do your will (*Fulfill God's Eternal Covenant*).’ He takes away the first to establish the second (*New Covenant*).” Heb. 10:5-9
- b. God's Greatest Commandment in the Old Covenant – Essence of the Law
 - 1) Jesus Affirms God's Greatest Commandment is Love Mark. 12:28-34
 - a) **“The first (*Commandment*) is this: ‘Hear, O Israel! The Lord our God is Lord alone! You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your mind, and with all your strength (*Quoting Deut. 6:4-5*).’ The second is this: ‘You shall love your neighbor as yourself (*Quoting Lev. 19:18*).’ There is no other commandment greater than these.” (*Mark 12:29-31*)**
 - 2) Jesus Confirms that the Greatest Commandment is Love Luke 10:25-37
 - a) “There was a scholar of the law who stood up to test him and said, ‘Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal life?’
 - b) “Jesus said to him, **‘What is written in the law? How do you read it?’**
 - c) “He said in reply, ‘You shall love the Lord, your God, with all your heart, with all your being, with all your strength, and with all your mind, and your neighbor as yourself.’
 - d) “He replied to him, **‘You have answered correctly; do this and you will live.’” (*Luke 10:25-28*)**
 - c. Fulfillment of God's Greatest Commandment in the New Covenant
 - 1) Love Within the Godhead – Manifested in Jesus Christ
 - a) “The Father loves the Son and has given everything over to him. Whoever believes in the Son has eternal life, but whoever disobeys the Son will not see life, but the wrath of God remains upon him.” John 3:35-36
 - b) **“Amen, amen, I say to you, a son cannot do anything on his own, but only what he sees his father doing; for what he does, his son will do also. For the Father loves his Son and shows him everything that he himself does,**

- and he will show him greater works than these, so that you may be amazed.”
John 5:19-20
- c) “This is why the Father loves me, because I lay down my life in order to take it up again. No one takes it from me, but I lay it down on my own. I have power to lay it down, and power to take it up again. This command I have received from my Father.”
John 10:17-18
- 2) God’s Love for Man – Love Revealed by Jesus Christ
- a) “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life.”
John 3:16
- b) Jesus Prays for His New Covenant People. “Father, they are your gift to me. I wish that where I am they also may be with me, that they may see my glory that you gave me, because you loved me before the foundation of the world. Righteous Father, the world also does not know you, but I know you, and they know that you sent me. I made known to them your name and I will make it known, that the love with which you loved me may be in them and I in them.”
John 17:24-26
- c) “But God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us.”
Rom. 5:8
- d) “For I am convinced that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor present things, nor future things, nor powers, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord.”
Rom. 8:38-39
- e) “We have come to know and to believe in the love God has for us. God is love, and whoever remains in love remains in God and God in him.”
1 John 4:16
- 3) Our Love of God – Love Received & Returned through Jesus Christ
- a) “If you love me, you will keep my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth,”
John 14:15-17
- b) “Whoever has my commandments and observes them is the one who loves me. And whoever loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and reveal myself to him.”
John 14:21
- c) Jesus Speaks of His Pending Sacrifice. “You heard me tell you, ‘I am going away and I will come back to you.’ If you loved me, you would rejoice that I am going to the Father; for the Father is greater than I. And now I have told you this before it happens, so that when it happens you may believe. I will no longer speak much with you, for the ruler of the world (*i.e. Satan*) is coming. He has no power over me, but the world must know that I love the Father and that I do just as the Father has commanded me (*Fulfill God’s Eternal Covenant*).....”
John 14:28-31
- d) “For the Father himself loves you, because you have loved me and have come to believe that I came from God.”
John 16:27
- e) “Although you have not seen him (*Jesus Christ*) you love him; even though you do not see him now yet believe in him, you rejoice with an indescribable and glorious joy, as you attain the goal of (your) faith, the salvation of your souls.”
1 Pet. 1:8-9
- f) “Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ is begotten by God, and everyone who loves the father loves (also) the one begotten by him.

1 John 5:1

- 4) Our Love for One Another – Applying the Love of Jesus Christ
- a) “...the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, generosity, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control. Against such there is no law.”
Gal. 5:22-23
 - b) “Above all, let your love for one another be intense, because love covers a multitude of sins. Be hospitable to one another without complaining. As each one has received a gift, use it to serve one another as good stewards of God’s varied grace.” 1 Pet. 4:8-10
 - c) “And his (*Father God’s*) commandment is this: we should believe in the name of his Son, Jesus Christ, and love one another just as he commanded us. Those who keep his commandments remain in him, and he in them, and the way we know that he remains in us is from the Spirit that he gave us.” 1 John 3:23-24
 - d) “Beloved, let us love one another, because love is of God; everyone who loves is begotten by God and knows God.” 1 John 4:7
 - e) “In this is love: not that we have loved God, but that he loved us and sent his Son as expiation for our sins. Beloved, if God so loved us, we also must love one another. No one has ever seen God. Yet, if we love one another, God remains in us, and his love is brought to perfection in us.” 1 John 4:10-12
 - f) “We love because he first loved us.....whoever does not love a brother whom he has seen cannot love God whom he has not seen. This is the commandment we have from him: whoever loves God must also love his brother.” 1 John 4:19-21
- 5) Jesus Christ’s Commandment to His Church
- a) “I give you a new commandment: love one another. As I have loved you, so you also should love one another. This is how all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.” John 13:34-35
 - b) “As the Father loves me, so I also love you. Remain in my love. If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, just as I have kept my Father’s commandments and remain in his love. I have told you this so that my joy may be in you and your joy may be complete. This is my commandment: love one another as I love you. No one has greater love than this, to lay down one’s life for one’s friends. You are my friends if you do what I command you.” John 15:9-14
 - c) “This I command you: love one another.” John 15:17

2. Basic Provisions/Elements of the New Covenant

a. All Provisions Fulfilled by Jesus Christ – Son of Man

1) The Lord’s Promise of Redemption & Reconciliation

- a) “But when the fullness of time had come, God sent his Son, born of a woman, born under the law, to ransom those under the law, so that we might receive adoption.” Gal. 4:4-5
 - (1) “Fullness of Time” (On God’s Perfect Agenda)
 - (2) “God Sent His Son” (God the Son Came as Jesus of Nazareth)
 - (3) “Born of a Woman” (Jesus Born of a Woman, i.e. a Virgin)
 - (a) *Fulfilling the Adamic Covenant Promise that the “Seed of a Woman” Will Destroy Satan (See Above) Gen. 3:15*

- (4) “Born Under the Law” (Jesus Born a Jew Under Mosaic Covenant)
- (5) “To Ransom Those Under the Law” (Paying the Penalty of Sin in Full, Fulfilling the Law & Redeeming Mankind)
- (6) “We Might Receive Adoption” (Reconciling Man Back to God)
- 2) Terms of the Covenant (Faith & Obedience)
- a) Jesus Lived a Faithful Life in Absolute Obedience to Father God and the Terms of the Old Covenants; Successfully Accomplishing His Mission
- (1) Jesus’ Faith & Obedience. “Who, though he (*Jesus Christ – Son of God*) was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God something to be grasped. Rather, he emptied himself, taking the form of a slave, coming in human likeness; and found human in appearance, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, even death on a cross.” Phil. 2:6-8
- (2) Jesus’ Prayer Before Offering Himself as a Holy Sacrifice
- (a) “**Father, the hour has come (*For His Sacrifice*). Give glory to your son, so that your son may glorify you, just as you gave him authority over all people, so that he may give eternal life to all you gave him. Now this is eternal life, that they should know you, the only true God, and the one whom you sent, Jesus Christ.**
- (b) “**I glorified you on earth by accomplishing the work that you gave me to do (*Fulfilling God’s Eternal Covenant*). Now glorify me, Father, with you, with the glory that I had with you before the world began (*As God the Son*).**” John 17:1-5
- 3) Covenant Executed & Put into Effect by Blood Sacrifice
- a) Jesus Fulfills the Old Covenants & Executes His New Covenant by His Holy & Perfect Sacrifice. Matt. 26:47 – 27:61; Mark 14:43 – 15:47; Luke 22:47 – 23:56; John 18 – 19
- (1) “**And just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the desert, so must the Son of Man be lifted up, so that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.**” John 3:14-15
- (a) *Moses & Bronze Serpent Foreshadowed Jesus’ Sacrifice*
Num. 21:4-9
- *People Complained Against God (Sin)*
 - *Lord Sent Serpents that Bit & Killed People (Penalty of Sin)*
 - *People Repent & Moses Intercedes to Lord*
 - *Lord Instructs Moses to Make Bronze Serpent & Mount it on a Pole (Symbol of Christ Bearing Our Sins on Cross)*
 - *Dying People Who Looked (Act of Faith) Upon Bronze Serpent (Christ) are Healed (Saved)*
- (2) “But now once for all he has appeared at the end of the ages (*i.e. Old Covenant*) to take away sin by his sacrifice. Just as it is appointed that human beings die once, and after this the judgment, so also Christ, offered once to take away the sins of many,” Heb. 9:26b-28
- (3) “But this one (*Jesus Christ*) offered one sacrifice for sins, and took his seat forever at the right hand of God; now he waits until his enemies are made his footstool. For by one offering he has made perfect forever those who are being consecrated.” Heb. 10:12-14

- b) Father God Accepts His Son's Sacrifice & Restores His Glory
- (1) "Because of this (*Fulfilling Covenant Terms & Sacrifice*), God greatly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bend, of those in heaven and on earth and under the earth, and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father." Phil 2:9-11
- 4) The Lord Seals His New Covenant with a Sign - Raising Jesus from the Dead
Matt. 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20 – 21; Acts 1:1-3; 1 Cor. 15:1-8
- a) Father God's Acceptance of His Son's Sacrifice
- (1) "Son though he was, he learned obedience from what he suffered; and when he was made perfect (*Completely Fulfilling the Covenant*), he became the source of eternal salvation for all who obey him, declared by God high priest according to the order of Melchizedek (*Honoring Jesus & His Sacrifice*)." Heb. 5:8-10
- b) Jesus Consecrated as Eternal High Priest
- (1) "But when Christ came as high priest of the good things that have come to be, passing through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made by hands, that is, not belonging to this creation, he entered once for all into the sanctuary, not with the blood of goats and calves (*Of the Old Covenant*) but with his own blood, thus obtaining eternal redemption." Heb. 9:11-12
- (2) "..... we have such a high priest, who has taken his seat at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, a minister of the sanctuary and of the true tabernacle that the Lord, not man, set up." Heb. 8:1-2
- c) High Priest Jesus Sends the Holy Spirit Upon His Church
- (1) A Sign of the Holy Spirit's Presence. "And they were all filled with the holy Spirit and began to speak in different tongues, as the Spirit enabled them to proclaim." Acts 2:4
- (2) Sealing His New Covenant People. "In him you also, who have heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and have believed in him, were sealed with the promised holy Spirit, which is the first installment of our inheritance toward redemption as God's possession, to the praise of his glory." Eph. 1:13-14
- b. Application of the Covenant Provisions (*Jesus Christ Completely Fulfilled All the Covenant Provisions. To Enter Christ's New Covenant, Each Person Must Accept Him as Lord & Savior, Appropriating the Salvation He Achieved for His People.*)
- 1) Covenant Promises of Forgiveness of Sins, Redemption, Reconciliation with a Holy God & Eternal Life
- a) It is Necessary to Personally Accept Jesus Christ as Lord & Savior to Receive the Promises of God & Enter into Covenant with Him.
- (1) "For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him. Whoever believes in him will not be condemned (*i.e. Forgiven of their Sins*), but whoever does not believe has already been condemned (*Remaining in their Sins*), because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God." John 3:16-18

- (2) "...if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For one believes with the heart and so is justified, and one confesses with the mouth and so is saved." Rom. 10:9-10
- 2) Covenant Terms are Repentance of Sins, Faith in Jesus Christ as Lord & Savior, and Obedience to the Holy Spirit
- a) "For by grace you have been saved through faith, and this is not from you; it is the gift of God; it is not from works, so no one may boast. For we are his handiwork, created in Christ Jesus for the good works that God has prepared in advance, that we should live in them." Eph. 2:8-10
- (1) Grace is Love Shown to Those Who Don't Deserve It
- (2) We Receive God's Grace by Placing Our Faith in Jesus Christ, Trusting & Relying in Him to Save Us. Jesus is God's Holy Gift.
- (3) We Can Not Boast in Our Salvation; It's a Gift We Did Not Earn
- (4) Our Good Works Prove & Confirm We are Saved by God's Grace
- b) "... live by the Spirit and you will certainly not gratify the desire of the flesh. For the flesh has desires against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; these are opposed to each other, so that you may not do what you want. But if you are guided by the Spirit, you are not under the law." Gal. 5:16-18
- c) "Hence, now there is no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. For the law of the spirit of life in Christ Jesus has freed you from the law of sin and death." Rom. 8:1-2
- 3) Personally Accept & Rely on Jesus Christ's Blood Sacrifice as Payment in Full for Our Salvation
- a) "For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God. They are justified freely by his grace through the redemption in Christ Jesus, whom God set forth as an expiation, through faith, by his blood, to prove his righteousness because of the forgiveness of sins previously committed, through the forbearance of God—to prove his righteousness in the present time, that he might be righteous and justify the one who has faith in Jesus." Rom. 3:22b-26
- b) "For Christ, while we were still helpless, yet died at the appointed time for the ungodly. Indeed, only with difficulty does one die for a just person, though perhaps for a good person one might even find courage to die. But God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us. How much more then, since we are now justified by his blood, will we be saved through him from the wrath. Indeed, if, while we were enemies, we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son, how much more, once reconciled, will we be saved by his life." Rom. 5:6-10
- c) "He himself bore our sins in his body upon the cross, so that, free from sin, we might live for righteousness. By his wounds you have been healed. For you had gone astray like sheep, but you have now returned to the shepherd and guardian of your souls." 1 Pet. 2:24-25
- 4) Invite the Holy Spirit into Our Lives - Receiving Him by Faith Luke 11:9-13
- a) Jesus' Promise. "If you love me (*Faith*), you will keep my commandments (*Obedience*). And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth, which the world cannot accept, because it neither sees nor knows it. But you know it,

because it remains with you, and will be in you.” John 14:15-17

(1) The Holy Spirit Lives Within His Covenant People (*Sealing Us*)
1 Cor. 3:16; 1 Cor. 6:19-20; Eph. 1:13-14

(2) The Holy Spirit Instructs, Guides, Directs & Sanctifies His Covenant People
John 14:23-26; John 16:7-11

(3) The Holy Spirit Empowers His Covenant People to Perform the Works of God
John 14:12; Acts 1:8

b) Giving Us Recourse When We Fail. “My children, I am writing this to you so that you may not commit sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous one. He is expiation for our sins, and not for our sins only but for those of the whole world.”
1 John 2:1-2

c) Adopting Us into the Family of God. “For those who are led by the Spirit of God are children of God. For you did not receive a spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you received a spirit of adoption, through which we cry, ‘Abba, Father!’ The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, then heirs, heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ, if only we suffer with him so that we may also be glorified with him.”
Rom. 8:14-17

3. Scope of the New Covenant

a. Jesus Reveals the Scope of His New Covenant in Commissioning His Church
Matt. 28:18-20

1) “All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me.”

a) Jesus Resumes the Heavenly Authority He had as God the Son.
(“Heaven” in this Context Means Both the Spiritual & Physical / Astronomical Realms throughout Creation.)

b) Having Defeated Satan on the Cross, Jesus – Son of Man – Gains the Earthly Authority God Originally Gave to Adam in the Edenic Covenant; which Adam had Abdicated to Satan When He Fell.

2) “Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations,”

a) The Abrahamic, Mosaic & Davidic Covenants were Given to a Chosen People & Nation (*Israel*), Appropriating to Them a Promise Land. Jesus Extends His New Covenant to Encompass All the Nations & Peoples of the World, as Promised in the Noahic Covenant.

b) Jesus Commissions His Church to Fulfill the Commission God Originally Gave to Adam & Eve Under the Edenic Covenant; to Fill the Earth with Offsprings (*Procreated in the Image of God*) & Subdue It. The New Covenant Church is Commissioned to Fill the Earth with Spiritually Born Again Peoples, Adopted into the Family of God, and Subdue Earth by Establishing Christ’s Churches (*i.e. His Kingdom*) Worldwide.

3) “baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit,”

a) Jesus Reveals the Triune God, Who Made an Eternal Covenant Among Themselves for the Redemption of Mankind. This New Covenant Baptism Acknowledges & Honors Each Divine Person of the Trinity, and Their Conception, Initiation, Revelation, Establishment & Fulfillment of Their Eternal Covenant.

b) By Faith, We Died, were Buried & Resurrected with Christ Jesus in the

Sacrament of Baptism, Bringing Us Under His New Covenant.

- 4) **“teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you.”**
 - a) Jesus Instructs His Disciples (*Clergy, Religious & Lay Witnesses*) to Proclaim His Words (*i.e. Holy Scriptures*) to the World throughout the Church Age; Evangelizing Unbelievers, Edifying Believers, and Preparing Subsequent Generations to Continue Christ’s Commission.
- 5) **“And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.”**
 - a) Jesus Christ as Lord, Savior, High Priest & Head of the Church; Promises to be With His New Covenant People as We Proclaim His Gospel throughout the Church Age.
- 6) Jesus Reveals Certain of His Divine Attributes within His Commission
 - a) **“All Power in Heaven & Earth”** = Jesus is Omnipotent!
 - b) **“Baptize in Name of Father, Son (*Jesus*) & Holy Spirit”** = His Equality Within the Godhead!
 - c) **“Teach All He Commanded”** = Jesus is the Word of God, Speaking with Divine Authority!
 - d) **“With You (*His Church*) Always”** = Jesus is Omnipresent & Timeless!

B. God the Son’s Revelation of His New Covenant

(This Section Highlights Some Events in Jesus’ Life & Ministry that Pertain to His New Covenant. See “Life of Christ”, “Our King” & “Son of God” for Comprehensive Studies.)

1. God & Man United in One Person to Fulfill God’s Eternal Covenant.
(Jesus of Nazareth is Both Son of God & Son of Man. “And the Word became flesh and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father’s only Son, full of grace and truth.” John 1:14)
 - a. Angel Gabriel Appears to Mary Luke 1:26-38
 - 1) Announces She Will Bear an Anointed Son
 - a) “Do not be afraid, Mary, for you have found favor with God. Behold, you will conceive in your womb and bear a son, and you shall name him Jesus. He will be great and will be called Son of the Most High, and the Lord God will give him the throne of David his father, and he will rule over the house of Jacob forever, and of his kingdom there will be no end.”
(Luke 1:30-33)
 - 2) Mary Asks: “How can this be, since I have no relations with a man?” *(Mary is a Virgin) (Luke 1:34)*
 - 3) Gabriel Answers: “The holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Most High will overshadow you. (Uniting God & Man) Therefore the child to be born will be called holy, the Son of God.” *(Luke 1:35)*
 - 4) Mary Submits to the Lord: “Behold, I am the handmaid of the Lord. May it be done to me according to your word.” *(Luke 1:38)*
 - b. Angel Appears to Joseph (Mary’s Betrothed) in a Dream Matt. 1:18-25
 - 1) Confirms Her Divine Insemination. “Joseph, son of David, do not be afraid to take Mary your wife into your home. For it is through the holy Spirit that this child has been conceived in her. She will bear a son and you are to name him Jesus, because he will save his people from their sins.” *(Matt. 1:20-21)*
 - a) *Fulfilling a 700 Year Old Prophecy.* *Isa. 7:14*
 - (1) *“Behold, the virgin shall be with child and bear a son, and they shall name him Emmanuel, which means ‘God is with us.’”* *(Matt. 1:23)*

- 2) Joseph Obeys the Lord
 - a) Fulfills His Marriage Contract with Mary
 - b) Has No Sexual Relations with Mary while She is Pregnant
 - c) Names His Son Jesus (“Yeshua” Meaning “Yahweh is Salvation”)
 - c. Jesus Born in Bethlehem of Judea Matt. 2:1a; Luke 2:1-7
 - 1) *Fulfilling a 700 Year Old Prophecy* *Micah 5:1-4*
 - a) *“And you, Bethlehem, land of Judah, are by no means least among the rulers of Judah; since from you shall come a ruler, who is to shepherd (Pastor) my people Israel.”* *Matt. 2:6*
2. Initiation of Jesus’ Ministry as Lord’s Holy Anointed One (Messiah)
- a. John the Baptist, an Anointed Prophet from Priestly House of Aaron
 - 1) John Calls People to Repent of their Sins and be Baptized Matt. 3:1-17
 - 2) Jesus Comes to be Baptized
 - a) John Attempts to Prevent Jesus: “I need to be baptized by you, and yet you are coming to me?” (*Matt. 3:14*)
 - (1) *Discerning Jesus, Without Sin, Did Not Need to Repent*
 - b) Jesus Insists: **“Allow it now, for thus it is fitting for us to fulfill all righteousness (Sanctifying a New Covenant Sacrament).”** (*Matt. 3:15*)
 - (1) *If Jesus, Who is Without Sin, Submits to Baptism, then Everyone Who Wants to Enter into His New Covenant Must Repent of their Sins and be Baptized.* *Mark 16:15-16*
 - 3) John Baptizes Jesus
 - a) Holy Spirit Descends Upon Jesus – Anointing Him for Ministry
 - (1) “After Jesus was baptized, he came up from the water and behold, the heavens were opened (for him), and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove (and) coming upon him.” (*Matt. 3:16*)
 - b) Father God Speaks from Heaven: “This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased.” (*Matt. 3:17*)
 - c) Revelation of Father, Son & Holy Spirit at Jesus’ Baptism
(*Coming Together of the Triune God to Initiate Jesus’ Ministry*)
 - b. Holy Spirit Leads Jesus into Wilderness for 40 Days Matt. 4:1-11
 - 1) To Prepare Him for Ministry by Fasting & Prayer
 - 2) A Time to be Tested & Tried for Ministry (*Prepare for the Many Temptations He Will Encounter throughout His Ministry*)
 - a) Jesus Overcomes Temptation & Rebukes Satan
(*Reversing Adam & Eve’s Yielding to Temptation*)
 - (1) **“Get away, Satan!”** (*Matt. 4:10*)
 - b) *Jesus Remained Faithful to Father God & His Divine Mission, Knowing it will Lead Him to a Shameful & Agonizing Death on the Cross to Fulfill God’s Eternal Covenant.*
 - c. Jesus Publicly Announces His Messianic Ministry Luke 4:14-30
 - 1) Jesus Leaves Wilderness & Returns to His Hometown of Nazareth
 - 2) Jesus Stands Up in Synagogue on Sabbath
 - a) Reads a Messianic Prophecy (*Isa. 61:1-2*): **“The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he has anointed me to bring glad tidings to the poor. He has sent me to proclaim liberty to captives and recovery of sight to the blind, to let the oppressed go free, and to proclaim a year acceptable to the Lord.”** (*Luke 4:18-19*)

- 3) Jesus Sits Down & Exclaims: **“Today this scripture passage is fulfilled in your hearing.”** (*Luke 4:21*)
- a) Applies Prophecy to Himself - Claiming to be Lord’s Holy Anointed One:
 - (1) To Proclaim Good News (Gospel) to the Poor in Spirit
 - (2) To Proclaim Liberty to Those Bound by the Law
 - (3) To Open the Eyes of the Blind (Both Physically & Spiritually)
 - (4) To Deliver Those Oppressed by Satan & Sin
 - (5) To Proclaim & Fulfill the Lord’s Appointed Time of Salvation
3. Jesus’ Teaching / Preaching Ministry – Revealing His Divine Wisdom
- a. Jesus Delivers Sermon on Mount – Constitution of His New Covenant Matt. 5 - 7
 - 1) The Beatitudes – Jesus’ Invitation to Enter into Covenant with Him
Matt. 5:3-12
 - a) **“Blessed are the poor in spirit, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.”**
 - (1) *Poor in Spirit are Totally Dependant Upon the Lord.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because Those Who Accept Jesus – King of Kings – Will Obtain the Kingdom of Heaven.*
 - b) **“Blessed are they who mourn, for they will be comforted.”**
 - (1) *Those Who Mourn - Cry Out to the Lord with Sorrow.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because Those Who Accept Jesus – Our Suffering Savior – Will be Comforted.*
 - c) **“Blessed are the meek, for they will inherit the land.”**
 - (1) *The Meek Submit Themselves to the Lord.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because through Jesus – God’s Obedient Servant – They Will Possess the Lord’s Inheritance.*
 - d) **“Blessed are they who hunger and thirst for righteousness, for they will be satisfied.”**
 - (1) *Those Who Yearn to be Righteous.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because through Jesus – The Righteousness One – They Will be Righteous Before God.*
 - e) **“Blessed are the merciful, for they will be shown mercy.”**
 - (1) *Those Who Show Mercy to Others.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because Those Who Accept Jesus – Our Merciful Savior – Will Receive Mercy.*
 - f) **“Blessed are the clean of heart, for they will see God.”**
 - (1) *A Clean Heart is a Repentant Person Seeking Forgiveness.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because Those Who Accept Jesus – Our Sinless Savior – Will be Reconciled to God.*
 - g) **“Blessed are the peacemakers, for they will be called children of God.”**
 - (1) *Peacemakers Share God’s “Shalom” (Peace) with Others.*
 - (2) *They are Blessed, Because Those Who Accept Jesus – Prince of Peace – Will Become Children of God.*
 - h) **“Blessed are they who are persecuted for the sake of righteousness, for theirs is the kingdom of heaven. Blessed are you when they insult you and persecute you and utter every kind of evil against you (falsely) because of me. Rejoice and be glad, for your reward will be great in heaven. Thus they persecuted the prophets who were before you.”**
 - (1) *The Result of Following Jesus Will be Persecution in this World & Great Rewards in Heaven.*

- 2) Jesus' New Covenant People Matt. 5:13-16
(People Who Accept Jesus as Lord & Enter into Covenant with Him)
- a) **“You are the salt of the earth. But if salt loses its taste, with what can it be seasoned? It is no longer good for anything but to be thrown out and trampled underfoot.”**
(1) Salt is Used to Promote Healing, Preserve & Flavor Food
(2) Jesus Exhorts Us to Remain “Salty”
- b) **“You are the light of the world. A city set on a mountain cannot be hidden. Nor do they light a lamp and then put it under a bushel basket; it is set on a lampstand, where it gives light to all in the house. Just so, your light must shine before others, that they may see your good deeds and glorify your heavenly Father”**
(1) Light Exposes Sin, Overcomes Darkness, Brings Warmth & Enhances Visibility
(2) Jesus Exhorts Us to Let the Spirit of God Shine Forth in Our Lives
- 3) Jesus Fulfills the Old Covenants to Establish a New Covenant Matt. 5:17-20
- a) Jesus Fulfills All Law & Prophets. **“Do not think that I have come to abolish the law or the prophets. I have come not to abolish but to fulfill. Amen, I say to you, until heaven and earth pass away, not the smallest letter or the smallest part of a letter will pass from the law, until all things have taken place.”**
- b) Irrevocability of God's Laws. **“Therefore, whoever breaks one of the least of these commandments and teaches others to do so will be called least in the kingdom of heaven. But whoever obeys and teaches these commandments will be called greatest in the kingdom of heaven. I tell you, unless your righteousness surpasses that of the scribes and Pharisees, you will not enter into the kingdom of heaven.”**
- 4) Jesus Restates the Law for His New Covenant Matt. 5:21-48
(Personal & Spiritual Application of the Law)
(Jesus Refers to the Old Covenant: "You have heard that it was said....."; He then Applies that Law to His New Covenant: "But I say to you,.....")
- a) Anger & Forgiving Heart. **“You have heard that it was said to your ancestors, ‘You shall not kill; (Quoting Ex. 20:13 & Deut. 5:17) and whoever kills will be liable to judgment.’ (Referring to Gen. 9:6 & Lev. 24:17) But I say to you, whoever is angry with his brother will be liable to judgment.....”**
Matt. 5:21-26
- b) Adultery & Purity of Heart. **“You have heard that it was said, ‘You shall not commit adultery.’ (Quoting Ex. 20:14 & Deut. 5:18) But I say to you, everyone who looks at a woman with lust has already committed adultery with her in his heart.....”**
Matt. 5:27-30
- c) Sanctity of Marriage. **“It was also said, ‘Whoever divorces his wife must give her a bill of divorce.’ (Quoting Deut. 24:1) But I say to you, whoever divorces his wife (unless the marriage is unlawful) causes her to commit adultery, and whoever marries a divorced woman commits adultery.”**
Matt. 5:31-32
- d) Swearing Oaths. **“Again you have heard that it was said to your ancestors, ‘Do not take a false oath, but make good to the Lord all that you vow.’ (Quoting Lev. 19:12) But I say to you, do not swear at all; not by heaven,**

- for it is God's throne; nor by the earth, for it is his footstool; nor by Jerusalem, for it is the city of the great King....." Matt. 5:33-37
- e) Retaliation and a Loving Heart. "You have heard that it was said, '*An eye for an eye and a tooth for a tooth.*' (Quoting Ex. 21:24, Lev. 24:20 & Deut. 19:21) But I say to you, offer no resistance to one who is evil. When someone strikes you on (your) right cheek, turn the other one to him as well....." Matt. 5:38-42
- f) Conquering Hate with Love. "You have heard that it was said, '*You shall love your neighbor* (Quoting Lev. 19:18) *and hate your enemy.*' But I say to you, love your enemies, and pray for those who persecute you, that you may be children of your heavenly Father," Matt. 5:43-47
- g) Summary of the Law. "So be perfect, just as your heavenly Father is perfect." Matt. 5:48
- 5) Jesus Calls His People to a Life of Faith Matt. 6:1 – 7:27
(*Jesus Calls Us to Develop a Personal Relationship with Father God.*)
- a) Good Works Matt. 6:1-4
- (1) Works Pleasing to God . "... take care not to perform righteous deeds in order that people may see them; otherwise, you will have no recompense from your heavenly Father."
- (2) Alms Pleasing to God. "When you give alms, do not blow a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets to win the praise of others. Amen, I say to you, they have received their reward. But when you give alms, do not let your left hand know what your right is doing, so that your almsgiving may be secret. And your Father who sees in secret will repay you."
- b) Prayer Matt. 6:5-15
- (1) Pray in Private. "When you pray, do not be like the hypocrites, who love to stand and pray in the synagogues and on street corners so that others may see them. Amen, I say to you, they have received their reward. But when you pray, go to your inner room, close the door, and pray to your Father in secret. And your Father who sees in secret will repay you."
- (2) Pray in Faith. "In praying, do not babble like the pagans, who think that they will be heard because of their many words. Do not be like them. Your Father knows what you need before you ask him."
- (3) Pray to God as "Our Father". "This is how you are to pray: Our Father in heaven, hallowed be your name, your kingdom come, your will be done, on earth as in heaven. Give us today our daily bread; and forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors; and do not subject us to the final test, but deliver us from the evil one."
(a) Honor & Glorify Father God
(b) Seek God's Will to be Manifest on Earth & Our Personal Lives
(c) Ask Father God to Protect & Sustain Us, Spiritually & Physically
(d) Seek Forgiveness – Right Standing Before God
(e) Trust in God for Our Salvation
- (4) Forgiveness. "If you forgive others their transgressions, your heavenly Father will forgive you. But if you do not forgive others, neither will your Father forgive your transgressions."
- c) Fasting. "When you fast, do not look gloomy like the hypocrites. They

- neglect their appearance, so that they may appear to others to be fasting. Amen, I say to you, they have received their reward. But when you fast, anoint your head and wash your face, so that you may not appear to be fasting, except to your Father who is hidden. And your Father who sees what is hidden will repay you.” Matt. 6:16-18
- d) True Wealth (*Know, Love & Serve God*) Matt. 6:19-34
- (1) Store Up Heavenly Treasures. “Do not store up for yourselves treasures on earth, where moth and decay destroy, and thieves break in and steal. But store up treasures in heaven, where neither moth nor decay destroys, nor thieves break in and steal. For where your treasure is, there also will your heart be.”
 - (2) Keep Chaste & Disciplined Before God. “The lamp of the body is the eye. If your eye is sound, your whole body will be filled with light; but if your eye is bad, your whole body will be in darkness. And if the light in you is darkness, how great will the darkness be.”
 - (3) Serve, Trust & Depend on God
 - (a) “No one can serve two masters. He will either hate one and love the other, or be devoted to one and despise the other. You cannot serve God and mammon (*Money*).”
 - (b) “Therefore I tell you, do not worry about your life, what you will eat (or drink), or about your body, what you will wear. Is not life more than food and the body more than clothing?.....”
 - (4) Seek God’s Kingship Over You. “But seek first the kingdom (of God) and his righteousness, and all these things will be given you besides.”
- e) Avoid Judging Others. “Stop judging, that you may not be judged. For as you judge, so will you be judged, and the measure with which you measure will be measured out to you.....” Matt. 7:1-5
- f) Keep Christ’s Covenant Sacred. “Do not give what is holy to dogs (*Unbelievers*), or throw your pearls before swine (*Unclean*), lest they trample them underfoot, and turn and tear you to pieces.” Matt. 7:6
- g) Trust in the Lord as Your Source Matt. 7:7-11
- (1) Persistent Prayer. “Ask and it will be given to you; seek and you will find; knock and the door will be opened to you. For everyone who asks, receives; and the one who seeks, finds; and to the one who knocks, the door will be opened.”
 - (2) Father God’s Loving Faithfulness. “Which one of you would hand his son a stone when he asks for a loaf of bread, or a snake when he asks for a fish? If you then, who are wicked, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your heavenly Father give good things to those who ask him.”
- h) Our Covenant Relationships Matt. 7:12-23
- (1) Relationship with Other People. “Do to others whatever you would have them do to you. This is the law and the prophets.”
 - (2) Relationship with the Lord. “Enter through the narrow gate; for the gate is wide and the road broad that leads to destruction, and those who enter through it are many. How narrow the gate and constricted the road that leads to life. And those who find it are few.”
(*Jesus Is the Narrow Gate that Leads to Eternal Life. John 10:1-10*)
 - (3) Trust in the Lord, Not Man

- (a) Spiritual Discernment. “Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but underneath are ravenous wolves. By their fruits you will know them.... Every tree that does not bear good fruit will be cut down and thrown into the fire. So by their fruits you will know them.”
- (b) Christ’s Judgment of Imposters. “Not everyone who says to me, ‘Lord, Lord,’ will enter the kingdom of heaven, but only the one who does the will of my Father in heaven. Many will say to me on that day, ‘Lord, Lord, did we not prophesy in your name? Did we not drive out demons in your name? Did we not do mighty deeds in your name?’ Then I will declare to them solemnly, ‘I never knew you (No Personal Relationship with Christ). Depart from me, you evildoers’.”
- 6) Jesus’ Call to Obedience Matt. 7:24-27
- a) The Obedient. “Everyone who listens to these words of mine and acts on them will be like a wise man who built his house on rock. The rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and buffeted the house. But it did not collapse; it had been set solidly on rock.” (*Jesus is Our Rock*)
- b) The Disobedient. “And everyone who listens to these words of mine but does not act on them will be like a fool who built his house on sand. The rain fell, the floods came, and the winds blew and buffeted the house. And it collapsed and was completely ruined.”
- b. Spiritual Sustenance in Christ’s New Covenant John 6
(*Jesus Unveils the Life Sustaining Sacrament of His New Covenant – Holy Communion / Eucharist.*)
- 1) Jesus Multiplies Food Feeding Over 5000 People John 6:1-15
(*Jesus Publicly Demonstrates that He is the Source of Physical Nourishment; Establishing the Premise of His Upcoming Teaching on Spiritual Nourishment*)
- 2) Jesus Walks on Water John 6:16-21
(*Jesus Demonstrates His Authority Over the Natural Order to Bolster the Faith of His Disciples, So they Accept His Upcoming Teaching on Holy Communion*)
- 3) Jesus Sets the Agenda to Declare His Holy Sacrament John 6:22-34
- a) People Looking for Jesus, Because He Fed Them
- (1) People Find & Ask Jesus: “Rabbi, when did you get here?”
(*They Saw that Jesus Did Not Embark with His Disciples on Other Side of the Lake and had No Other Way to Get There*)
- (2) Jesus Replies: “Amen, amen, I say to you, you are looking for me not because you saw signs but because you ate the loaves and were filled”
- (3) Jesus Redirects their Attention: “Do not work for food that perishes but for the food that endures for eternal life, which the Son of Man will give you. For on him the Father, God, has set his seal.”
- b) The Work of God
- (1) People Ask Jesus: “What can we do to accomplish the works of God?”
- (2) Jesus Answers: “This is the work of God, that you believe in the one he sent.” (*Work of God is to Believe in His Son Jesus the Messiah*)
- c) People Confront Jesus
- (1) People Ask Jesus for a Sign: “What sign can you do, that we may see and believe in you? What can you do?”
(*Jesus Multiplied Food Feeding Over 5000 People the Day Before.*)

- (2) People Remind Jesus of the Miracle of Manna (*Re: Ex. 16*): “Our ancestors ate manna in the desert, as it is written: ‘He gave them bread from heaven to eat.’”
- (3) Jesus Replies (*Manna Prefigures God’s Living Bread from Heaven*):
- (a) “Amen, amen, I say to you, it was not Moses who gave the bread from heaven; my Father gives you the true bread from heaven.
 - (b) “For the bread of God is that which comes down from heaven and gives life to the world.”
- (4) People Request: “Sir, give us this bread always.”
- 4) Jesus’ Discourse on Sacrament of Holy Communion John 6:35-59
(In His Discourse, Jesus Intertwines Two Indispensable Themes: Faith in Him as the Son of God, and Revelation of Himself as God’s Holy Communion.)
- a) Jesus Declares to be the Bread of Life
 - (1) Responds to People’s Request. “I am the bread of life; whoever comes to me will never hunger, and whoever believes in me will never thirst”
 - (2) Chastises People for Unbelief. “But I told you that although you have seen (me), you do not believe.”
 - b) Jesus Fulfills the Will of Father God
 - (1) “Everything that the Father gives me will come to me, and I will not reject anyone who comes to me, because I came down from heaven not to do my own will but the will of the one who sent me.”
 - (2) “And this is the will of the one who sent me, that I should not lose anything of what he gave me, but that I should raise it (on) the last day. For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him may have eternal life, and I shall raise him (on) the last day.”
 - c) People Murmur Against Jesus
 - (1) Because He Said: “I am the bread that came down from heaven,”
 - (2) “Is this not Jesus, the son of Joseph? Do we not know his father and mother? Then how can he say, ‘I have come down from heaven’?”
 - d) Jesus Rebukes the Unbelievers
 - (1) “Stop murmuring among yourselves.”
 - (2) “No one can come to me unless the Father who sent me draw him, and I will raise him on the last day.”
 - e) Jesus Declares to be the Son of God – Bread from Heaven
 - (1) “It is written in the prophets: ‘They shall all be taught by God.’ Everyone who listens to my Father and learns from him comes to me.”
 - (2) “Not that anyone has seen the Father except the one who is from God; he has seen the Father.”
 - (3) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes has eternal life.”
(Faith in Jesus is Essential to Eternal Life)
 - (4) Jesus Repeats: “I am the bread of life.”
 - (a) Israel’s Ancestors Ate Manna but Died. “Your ancestors ate the manna in the desert, but they died;”
 - (b) Jesus’ Bread Gives Everlasting Life. “This is the bread that comes down from heaven so that one may eat it and not die.”
 - (c) Jesus is that Living Bread. “I am the living bread that came down from heaven; whoever eats this bread will live forever; and the

bread that I will give is my flesh for the life of the world.”

- f) People Quarrel: “How can this man give us (his) flesh to eat?”
(*People Look at the Physical Without Discerning the Spiritual*)
- g) Jesus Expands His Teaching to Include His Blood (*Seat of Eternal Life*)
 - (1) “Amen, amen, I say to you, unless you eat the flesh of the Son of Man and drink his blood, you do not have life within you.”
 - (2) “Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood has eternal life, and I will raise him on the last day.”
(*Promise of Resurrection & Eternal Life through His Body & Blood*)
 - (3) “For my flesh is true food, and my blood is true drink.”
 - (4) “Whoever eats my flesh and drinks my blood remains in me and I in him. Just as the living Father sent me and I have life because of the Father, so also the one who feeds on me will have life because of me.”
(*Jesus, God the Son, is Eternal Life! Believers Who Partake of Jesus’ Body & Blood are Eternally United with Him.*)
 - (5) “This is the bread that came down from heaven. Unlike your ancestors who ate and still died, whoever eats this bread will live forever.”
- 5) Result of Jesus’ Discourse John 6:60-71
(*Jesus Solidifies & Confirms that His New Covenant Requires Faith in Him & Everything He Says [Whether We Understand it or Not]; Dividing People of Faith from Unbelievers.*)
 - a) Many Disciples Reject Jesus’ Discourse
 - (1) Unbelievers Grumble: “This saying is hard; who can accept it?”
 - (2) Jesus Asks Them:
 - (a) “Does this shock you? What if you were to see the Son of Man ascending to where he was before (His Heavenly Throne)?”
 - (b) “It is the spirit that gives life, while the flesh is of no avail. The words I have spoken to you are spirit and life. But there are some of you who do not believe.”
 - b) Many Disciples Leave Jesus
 - (1) Jesus Knows Who Would Believe Him & Who Would Not
 - (a) “For this reason I have told you that no one can come to me unless it is granted him by my Father.”
(*In His Foreknowledge, Father God Knew Who Will Accept His Son, Believe in Him & Trust in His Words; and Who Will Not. Father God Draws those Believers to Jesus to Receive Salvation.*)
 - c) Jesus Asks the Twelve: “Do you also want to leave?”
 - (1) Simon Peter’s Answer: “Master, to whom shall we go? You have the words of eternal life. We have come to believe and are convinced that you are the Holy One of God.”
 - (2) Jesus’ Reply: “Did I not choose you twelve? Yet is not one of you a devil (Referring to Judas Iscariot – His Betrayer)?”

Comment. Jesus is the Creative Word of God (*Gen. 1, John 1:1-5, Col. 1:15-17*), whatever He verbally declares is brought into existence.

4. Jesus’ Miraculous Ministry – Revealing His Anointing & Authority

a. Jesus’ Authority Over Sickness, Disease & Disabilities

- 1) “He (*Jesus*) went around all of Galilee, teaching in their synagogues,

proclaiming the gospel of the kingdom, and curing every disease and illness among the people. His fame spread to all of Syria, and they brought to him all who were sick with various diseases and racked with pain, those who were possessed, lunatics, and paralytics, and he cured them. And great crowds from Galilee, the Decapolis, Jerusalem, and Judea, and from beyond the Jordan followed him.” Matt. 4:23-25

b. Jesus’ Authority to Forgive Sins

1) Jesus Heals a Paralytic, Forgiving His Sins Mark 2:1-12

a) Jesus in a House Surrounded by a Heavy Crowd

- (1) Four Men Bring a Paralytic - Unable to Get Him to Jesus
- (2) Men Open the Roof & Let Paralytic Down on a Mat

b) Jesus Says to Paralytic: **“Child, your sins are forgiven”** (Mark 2:5b)

- (1) Religious Scribes Ask Themselves: “Why does this man speak that way? He is blaspheming. Who but God alone can forgive sins?” (Mark 2:7)

c) Jesus Knowing their Mind Addresses those Scribes:

- (1) **“Why are you thinking such things in your hearts? Which is easier, to say to the paralytic, ‘Your sins are forgiven,’ or to say, ‘Rise, pick up your mat and walk’?”**
- (2) **““But that you may know that the Son of Man has authority to forgive sins on earth””** — he said to the paralytic, **“I say to you, rise, pick up your mat, and go home.”** (Mark 5:8b-11)

d) Paralytic Immediately Healed – Picks Up His Mat & Walks

c. Jesus’ Authority Over Demonic Forces

1) Jesus Expels Demons at Gerasenes Mark 5:1-20

a) Jesus & His Entourage are Confronted by a Maniac

- (1) Strong Demon Possessed Man Living Among Tombs

b) Jesus Commands Demons: **“Unclean spirit, come out of the man!”** (Mark 5:8b)

c) Man Prostrates Himself Before Jesus, Crying in a Loud Voice: “What have you to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? I adjure you by God, do not torment me!” (Mark 5:7)

- (1) *Recognizing Jesus’ True Identity & Authority*

d) Jesus Asks Man: **“What is your name?”** (Mark 5:9a)

e) Demons Answer through the Man: “Legion is my name. There are many of us.” (Mark 5:9b)

- (1) Plead with Jesus to Send Them into Swine on Hillside

f) Jesus Expels Demons Allowing Them to Enter Swine

- (1) Swine Run into Sea & Drown

g) Man Restored to His Right Mind

h) Jesus Instructs Man. **“Go home to your family and announce to them all that the Lord in his pity has done for you.”** (Mark 5:19b)

d. Jesus’ Authority Over Nature

1) Jesus Stills the Storm Mark 4:35-41

a) Jesus Asleep in Boat During a Violent Storm

b) Disciples Wake Jesus: “Teacher, do you not care that we are perishing?” (Mark 4:38b)

c) Jesus Wakes Up & Rebukes the Wind: **“Quiet! Be still!”** (Mark 4:39)

- (1) The Wind Immediately Ceases & the Sea Calms

- d) Jesus Asks Disciples: **“Why are you terrified? Do you not yet have faith?”**
(Mark 4:40)
- e) Disciples in Awe: **“Who then is this whom even wind and sea obey?”**
(Mark 4:41)
- e. Jesus’ Authority Over Death
 - 1) Jesus Raises Lazarus from the Dead John 11:1-44
 - a) Jesus’ Friend Lazarus Becomes Gravely Ill – Jesus in Different Town
 - (1) Lazarus’ Sisters Mary & Martha Send Word to Jesus: **“Master, the one you love is ill.”** (John 11:3)
 - (2) Jesus’ Response: **“This illness is not to end in death, but is for the glory of God, that the Son of God may be glorified through it.”**
(John 11:4)
 - (3) Jesus Waits Until Lazarus is Dead
 - b) Jesus & His Disciples Go to Bethany – Lazarus’ Residence
 - (1) Lazarus in Tomb 4 Days (Undeniably Dead)
 - (2) Martha Meets Jesus on the Way: **“Lord, if you had been here, my brother would not have died. (But) even now I know that whatever you ask of God, God will give you.”** (John 11:21-22)
 - (3) Jesus Reassures Her: **“Your brother will rise.”** (John 11:23)
 - (4) Martha Replies: **“I know he will rise, in the resurrection on the last day.”** (John 11:24)
 - (5) Jesus Declares: **“I am the resurrection and the life; whoever believes in me, even if he dies, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”** (John 11:25-26)
(Jesus’ New Covenant Promise to Resurrect Those Who Die Believing in Him, and Those Believers Who are Living at His Second Coming will Never Die. **“Do you believe this?”**)
 - (6) Martha Confesses Her Faith (She Believes): **“Yes, Lord. I have come to believe that you are the Messiah, the Son of God, the one who is coming into the world.”** (John 11:27)
 - c) Jesus Taken to Lazarus’ Tomb by Mary & Martha, Followed by Mourners
 - (1) Jesus Weeps (Weeps for All People Who Die Under the Curse of Sin)
 - (2) Stone Laid Across Entrance of Tomb (Representing Finality of Death)
 - (3) Jesus Commands: **“Take away the stone.”** (John 11:39a)
(Jesus Removes the Curse of Death)
 - (4) Martha’s Response: **“Lord, by now there will be a stench; he has been dead for four days.”** (John 11:39b)
 - (5) Jesus’ Reply: **“Did I not tell you that if you believe you will see the glory of God?”** (John 11:40)
 - (6) Stone Taken Away from Tomb as Jesus Instructed
 - (7) Jesus Looks to Heaven & Prays: **“Father, I thank you for hearing me. I know that you always hear me; but because of the crowd here I have said this, that they may believe that you sent me.”** (John 11:41-42)
 - (8) Jesus Loudly Commands: **“Lazarus, come out!”** (John 11:43b)
 - (9) Lazarus Obeys Jesus, Returns to Life & Comes Out of the Tomb
 - (a) Bound Hand & Foot with Burial Linens
(Mankind Bound by Sin & Death)
 - (b) Face Wrapped in Cloth
(Sinful Man Blind to the Love & Mercy of God)

(10) Jesus' Instructs Bystanders: **"Untie him and let him go."** (*John 11:44*)
(Jesus Delivers Us from the Bondage of Sin & Death)

5. Jesus' Prophetic Ministry – Revealing Him as the Lord's Anointed Prophet, Authorized to Speak for the Lord God of Israel
 - a. A Prophet Speaks Forth the Word of God
 - 1) Jesus is the Living Word of God
 - a) "In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.... And the Word became flesh (*Jesus Christ*) and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father's only Son, full of grace and truth." John 1:1-14
 - 2) Jesus is the Prophetic Word of God
 - a) **"You search the scriptures, because you think you have eternal life through them; even they testify on my behalf."** John 5:39
 - b) **"For if you had believed Moses, you would have believed me, because he wrote about me. But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe my words?"** John 5:46-47
 - 3) Jesus Speaks the Words of Father God
 - a) **"My teaching is not my own but is from the one who sent me. Whoever chooses to do his will shall know whether my teaching is from God or whether I speak on my own."** John 7:16-17
 - b) **".... I did not speak on my own, but the Father who sent me commanded me what to say and speak. And I know that his commandment is eternal life. So what I say, I say as the Father told me."** John 12:46-50
 - b. Miracles are a Sign of a Prophet (*See "Jesus' Miraculous Ministry" Above*)
 - 1) **"Amen, amen, I say to you, a son cannot do anything on his own, but only what he sees his father doing; for what he does, his son will do also."** John 5:19
 - 2) **"If I do not perform my Father's works, do not believe me; but if I perform them, even if you do not believe me, believe the works, so that you may realize (and understand) that the Father is in me and I am in the Father"** John 10:37-38
 - 3) **"Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me? The words that I speak to you I do not speak on my own. The Father who dwells in me is doing his works. Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else, believe because of the works themselves."** John 14:10-11
 - c. A True Prophet is Verified by the Fulfillment of His Prophecies
 - 1) Jesus Predicted His Own Death & Resurrection. **"Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem and everything written by the prophets about the Son of Man will be fulfilled. He will be handed over to the Gentiles and he will be mocked and insulted and spat upon; and after they have scourged him they will kill him, but on the third day he will rise."** Luke 18:31-33
 - a) Prophecy Fulfilled Luke 22:47 – 24:49
 - 2) Jesus Predicted Peter's Denials. **"Amen, I say to you (*Simon Peter*), this very night before the cock crows, you will deny me three times."** Matt. 26:34
 - a) Prophecy Fulfilled Matt. 26:69-75
 - 3) Jesus Predicted the Fall of Jerusalem. **"You see all these things (*Temple Precincts & Buildings*), do you not? Amen, I say to you, there will not be left here a stone upon another stone that will not be thrown down."** Matt. 24:2
 - a) Prophecy Fulfilled When Rome Destroyed the Temple in 70 AD

- 4) Jesus Predicted His Imminent Second Coming
 - a) To Unite with His New Covenant People. **“Do not let your hearts be troubled. You have faith in God; have faith also in me. In my Father’s house there are many dwelling places. If there were not, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back again and take you to myself, so that where I am you also may be.”** John 14:1-3
 - b) To Establish His Kingdom on Earth. **“And then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming upon the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.”** Matt. 24:30

6. Jesus Prepares for the Ongoing Ministry of His New Covenant
 - a. Jesus Calls 12 Apostolic Disciples to Lead His Church
 - 1) Jesus Calls His First Disciples Luke 5:1-11
 - a) Jesus Gets into a Boat to Teach a Crowd by the Shore
 - (1) Boat Belongs to Simon
 - b) Jesus Finishes His Lesson & Says to Simon: **“Put out into deep water and lower your nets for a catch.”** (Luke 5:4)
 - c) Simon Replies: “Master, we have worked hard all night and have caught nothing, but at your command I will lower the nets.” (Luke 5:5)
 - (1) Obeys Jesus & Catches an Abundance of Fish, Tearing His Nets
 - (a) Calls His Partners (James & John) to Help Bring in the Catch Using their Other Boat
 - d) Simon, James & John Fall Before Jesus in Astonishment
 - (1) Simon Confesses: “Depart from me, Lord, for I am a sinful man.” (Luke 5:8)
 - e) Jesus Calls Them as Disciples: **“Do not be afraid; from now on you will be catching men.”** (Luke 5:10b)
 - f) They Leave their Boats (Business) & Follow Jesus
(These 3 Disciples Become Jesus’ Inner Circle – His Executive Staff)
 - 2) Jesus’ 12 Disciples. “.... Simon called Peter, and his brother Andrew; James, the son of Zebedee, and his brother John; Philip and Bartholomew, Thomas and Matthew the tax collector; James, the son of Alphaeus, and Thaddeus; Simon the Cananean, and Judas Iscariot who betrayed him.” Matt. 10:2-4
 - b. Jesus Prepares His Disciples for Ministry
 - 1) Disciples Accompany Jesus throughout His Ministry Acts 1:21-22
 - 2) Disciples Witness How Jesus Lives 1 Pet. 2:21-23; 1 John 1:1-3
(A Daily Example to His Disciples)
 - 3) Disciples Attend Jesus’ Public Sermons & Teachings (What He Says in Public)
Matt. 5:1-2; Matt. 23:1
 - 4) Jesus Privately Teaches His Disciples (What He Says in Private)
 - a) Interpretations of His Parables
 - (1) Jesus Teaches Parable of the Sower to People Luke 8:5-8
 - (2) Disciples Privately Ask Jesus the Meaning of Parable Luke 8:9-15
 - (a) Jesus Answers: **“Knowledge of the mysteries of the kingdom of God has been granted to you; but to the rest, they are made known through parables so that ‘they may look but not see, and hear but not understand (Hearts Must be Open to Spirit of God).”**

- (b) Jesus Then Explains the Meaning of His Parable
- b) Teaching of His Suffering, Death & Resurrection Mark 10:32b-34
- (1) “Taking the Twelve aside again, he began to tell them what was going to happen to him. **‘Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be handed over to the chief priests and the scribes, and they will condemn him to death and hand him over to the Gentiles who will mock him, spit upon him, scourge him, and put him to death, but after three days he will rise.’**”
- c) Teaching Who He Is! Matt. 16:13-20
- (1) Jesus Asks His Disciples: **“... who do you say that I am?”**
- (2) Simon Answers: **“You are the Messiah, the Son of the Living God.”**
- (3) Jesus Accepts & Confirms Simon’s Confession:
- (a) **“Blessed are you, Simon son of Jonah. For flesh and blood has not revealed this to you, but my heavenly Father. And so I say to you, you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church, and the gates of the netherworld shall not prevail against it.**
- (b) **“I will give you the keys to the kingdom of heaven. Whatever you bind on earth shall be bound in heaven; and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.” (Matt. 16:15-19)**
- (4) Jesus Orders Disciples Not to Publicly Disclose that He is Messiah (*Jesus’ Messiahship Must be Revealed by the Spirit of God. After His Resurrection, it will be Publicly Proclaimed by His Church.*)
- 5) Disciples Witness His Miracles – Both Public & Private (*His Good Works*)
- a) Jesus Heals Simon Peter’s Mother-in-Law Luke 4:38-39
- (1) “Simon’s mother-in-law was afflicted with a severe fever, and they interceded with him (*Jesus*) about her.
- (2) “He stood over her, rebuked the fever, and it left her.....”
- b) Jesus Feeds the Hungry Matt. 15:32-38
- (1) Jesus Expresses Compassion to His Disciples: **“My heart is moved with pity for the crowd, for they have been with me now for three days and have nothing to eat. I do not want to send them away hungry, for fear they may collapse on the way.”**
- (2) Disciples Respond: **“Where could we ever get enough bread in this deserted place to satisfy such a crowd?”**
- (3) Jesus Asks: **“How many loaves do you have?”**
- (4) Disciples Answer: **“Seven, and a few fish.” (Matt. 15:32-34)**
- (5) Jesus Multiplies the Loaves & Fish, Feeding Over 4000 People
- (6) Disciples Gather 7 Baskets of Left Over Food
- c) Jesus Raises a Young Girl from the Dead Luke 8:40-56
- (1) Jairus, a Synagogue Official, Approaches Jesus
- (a) Falls at Jesus’ Feet, Begging Him to Come to His House
- His Only Daughter is Sick & Dying – She’s 12 Years Old
- (2) Jesus Proceeds to Jairus’ House – Followed by a Crowd
- (a) Interrupted by Woman Hemorrhaging for 12 Years
- She Touches Tassel of Jesus’ Cloak & Instantly Cured
 - Jesus Says to Her” **“Daughter, your faith has saved you; go in peace.” (Luke 8:48)**
- (3) Jairus’ House Servant Meets Them on the Way

- (a) Reporting: “Your daughter is dead; do not trouble the teacher any longer.” (*Luke 8:49*)
- (b) Jesus Replies: “Do not be afraid; just have faith and she will be saved.” (*Luke 8:50*)
- (4) Jesus Arrives at Jairus’ House
 - (a) Jesus Comforts Weeping Family & Friends: “Do not weep any longer, for she is not dead, but sleeping.” (*Luke 8:52*)
 - People Ridicule Jesus, Knowing She had Died
 - Jesus Puts Them Out of the House
 - (b) Jesus Takes Only Peter, James, John & Her Parents with Him
 - Takes Child’s Hand & Calls Her: “Child, arise!”
 - “Her breath returned and she immediately arose.....” (*Luke 8:54-55*)
- 6) Disciples Sent on Missions to Practice & Experience Ministry (*Jesus Delegates His Authority to His Disciples to Learn by Doing!*)
 - a) Jesus Sends His 12 Disciples on a Mission Matt. 10:5-42
 - (1) Instructs Them to Go to House of Israel
 - (a) Proclaim His Kingdom. “As you go, make this proclamation: ‘The kingdom of heaven is at hand.’” (*Matt. 10:7*)
 - (b) Perform His Works. “Cure the sick, raise the dead, cleanse lepers, drive out demons. Without cost you have received; without cost you are to give.” (*Matt. 10:8*)
 - (c) Rely on the Lord for Sustenance
 - (2) Warns Them of Persecution
 - (a) Trust in the Lord
 - (b) Fear No Man
 - (c) Jesus Divides Humanity – Believer Against Unbeliever
 - (3) Remain Faithful to Jesus
 - (a) Emulate Him. “No disciple is above his teacher, no slave above his master. It is enough for the disciple that he become like his teacher, for the slave that he become like his master. If they have called the master of the house Beelzebul, how much more those of his household!” (*Matt. 10:24-25*)
 - (b) Fearlessly Proclaim His Words. “What I say to you in the darkness (*In Private*) speak in the light (*In Public*); what you hear whispered, proclaim on the housetops.” (*Matt. 10:27*)
 - (c) Jesus’ Promise. “Everyone who acknowledges me before others I will acknowledge before my heavenly Father.” (*Matt. 10:32*)
 - (d) Jesus’ Warning. “But whoever denies me before others, I will deny before my heavenly Father.” (*Matt. 10:33*)
 - (4) Rewards for Receiving His Disciples
 - (a) “Whoever receives you (*Disciples*) receives me, and whoever receives me receives the one who sent me (*Father God*).
 - (b) “Whoever receives a prophet because he is a prophet will receive a prophet’s reward, and whoever receives a righteous man because he is righteous will receive a righteous man’s reward.
 - (c) “And whoever gives only a cup of cold water to one of these little ones to drink because he is a disciple—amen, I say to you, he will

- surely not lose his reward.”** (*Matt. 10:40-42*)
- b) Jesus Sends 72 Disciples on a Mission Luke 10:1-20
(Training 72 Disciples for Service & His 12 Apostles on Leadership)
- (1) “.....the Lord appointed seventy-two others (*Besides the 12 Apostles*) whom he sent ahead of him in pairs to every town and place he intended to visit.” (*Luke 10:1*)
- (a) **“The harvest is abundant but the laborers are few; so ask the master of the harvest to send out laborers for his harvest.”**
(Luke 10:2)
- (b) Trust in the Lord
- (c) Rely on the Lord for Daily Provisions
- (2) 72 Disciples Sent Ahead of Jesus Preparing Towns to Receive Him
- (a) Towns that Accept Them. **“Whatever town you enter and they welcome you, cure the sick in it and say to them, ‘The kingdom of God is at hand for you.’”** (*Luke 10:8-9*)
- (b) Towns that Reject Them. **“Whatever town you enter and they do not receive you, go out into the streets and say, ‘The dust of your town that clings to our feet, even that we shake off against you.’ Yet know this: the kingdom of God is at hand.”** (*Luke 10:10-11*)
- (c) Jesus’ Representatives. **“Whoever listens to you listens to me. Whoever rejects you rejects me. And whoever rejects me rejects the one who sent me (Father God).”** (*Luke 10:16*)
- (3) 72 Disciples Return from their Mission
- (a) Rejoicing. “Lord, even the demons are subject to us because of your name.” (*Luke 10:17*)
- (b) Jesus’ Response:
- **“I have observed Satan fall like lightning from the sky.”**
(Satan’s Dominion is being Destroyed by Christ’s Church)
 - **“Behold, I have given you the power ‘to tread upon serpents’ and scorpions and upon the full force of the enemy and nothing will harm you.** *(Power Over Satan & Forces of Evil)*
 - **“Nevertheless, do not rejoice because the spirits are subject to you, but rejoice because your names are written in heaven.”** *(Rejoice in Your Salvation)* (*Luke 10:18-20*)
- 7) Disciples Witness Jesus’ Transfiguration Matt. 17:1-8
- a) Jesus Takes Peter, James & John to High Mountain
- b) Jesus Transfigured Before their Eyes *(They See Christ Glorified)*
- (1) Face Became Dazzling as Sun
- (2) Clothes Became Radiant as Light
- (3) Moses and Elijah Appeared & Talk with Jesus
(Moses Represent Old Covenant Law & Elijah the Prophets)
- c) Peter’s Exuberant Proposal: “Lord, it is good that we are here. If you wish, I will make three tents here, one for you, one for Moses, and one for Elijah.” (*Matt. 17:4*) *(Making the Three People Equal)*
- d) Bright Cloud Overshadows Them
- (1) Father God Speaks Audibly: **“This is my beloved Son, with whom I am well pleased; listen to him.”** (*Matt. 17:5*)
(Jesus is Superior to Moses & Elijah, the Fulfillment of the Law & the

Prophets. Matt. 5:17-18)

- (2) Peter, James & John Fall to Ground Overcome with Fear
(Realizing the True Identity of Jesus – God the Son)
- (3) Jesus Lays His Hand on Them: **“Rise, and do not be afraid.”**
(Matt. 17:7)

- c. Jesus Reveals His New Covenant to His Disciples John 13 - 16
Having Completed His Public Ministry, Jesus Celebrates His Last (Passover) Supper Privately with His Disciples; Where He: 1) Gives Them Final Instructions, 2) Prepares Them for His Imminent Passion, Death & Resurrection, and 3) Reveals Basic Principles of His New Covenant.

- 1) Jesus Washes His Disciples Feet John 13:1-17
 - a) Jesus Rises During the Meal
 - (1) Takes Off His Outer Garments
(Jesus Removes Ceremonial Robe Worn by Head of Family Presiding Over Passover Supper - Revealing His Humility)
 - (2) Ties a Towel Around Himself *(Representing His Service)*
 - (3) Pours Water in a Basin
 - (4) Washes Disciples' Feet Drying them with the Towel
 - b) Jesus Establishes the Principle of Service of His New Covenant
(People in Authority Serve People Under their Authority)
 - (1) After Washing Disciples Feet, Jesus Puts His Garments Back On & Reclines at Table *(Resuming His Position as Head of Family)*
 - (2) Jesus Asks His Disciples: **“Do you realize what I have done for you?”**
 - (a) **“You call me ‘teacher’ and ‘master,’ and rightly so, for indeed I am.**
 - (b) **“If I, therefore, the master and teacher, have washed your feet, you ought to wash one another's feet. I have given you a model to follow, so that as I have done for you, you should also do.**
(Not as an Annual Ceremony, but as a Life of Daily Service)
 - (c) **“Amen, amen, I say to you, no slave is greater than his master nor any messenger greater than the one who sent him.**
 - (d) **“If you understand this, blessed are you if you do it.”**
(John 13:12b-17)
- 2) Jesus Identifies & Dismisses His Betrayer John 13:18-30
(Jesus Experiences the Betrayal of a Beloved Friend & Confidant.)
 - a) Jesus Reveals His Betrayal. **“I am not speaking of all of you. I know those whom I have chosen. But so that the scripture might be fulfilled, ‘The one who ate my food has raised his heel against me.’”** *(John 13:18)*
(Jesus' Betrayal is Part of God's Redemptive Plan for Mankind. It Starts a Series of Irreversible Events Where Jesus Will Fulfill God's Eternal Covenant.)
 - b) Jesus Confirms that He is Lord
 - (1) **“From now on I am telling you before it happens, so that when it happens you may believe that I AM.”** *(John 13:19)*
(Jesus, Taking the Personal Name of the Lord “I AM” [“Yahweh”], Reveals His Foreknowledge & Control of His Betrayal, and Subsequent Persecution & Death.)
 - (2) **“Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever receives the one I send (His Disciples / Witnesses) receives me, and whoever receives me receives**

the one who sent me (Father God).” (John 13:20)

- c) Jesus Dismisses Judas Iscariot to Betray Him
- 3) Jesus Glorified by His Suffering, Death & Resurrection John 13:31-35
 - a) “Now is the Son of Man glorified, and God is glorified in him. (If God is glorified in him,) God will also glorify him in himself, and he will glorify him at once.”
 - b) “.....I will be with you only a little while longer. You will look for me, and as I told the Jews, ‘Where I go you cannot come,’ so now I say it to you.”
(Disciples Can Not Follow Jesus in Death. They Must Remain on Earth to Build His Church & Spread His New Covenant Gospel.)
 - c) Jesus’ New Covenant Commandment: “I give you a new commandment: love one another. As I have loved you, so you also should love one another. This is how all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.”
- 4) Jesus Predicts Peter's Denial John 13:36-38
 - a) Peter Asks Jesus: “Master, where are you going?”
 - b) Jesus Answers: “Where I am going, you cannot follow me now, though you will follow later.”
(Jesus, the Sinless One, Must Die Alone to Atone for the Sins of Man.)
(Peter [Representing Christ’s New Covenant People] Will Follow Jesus at their Appointed Times, to be with Him Forever.)
 - c) Peter's Pledge: “Master, why can't I follow you now? I will lay down my life for you.”
 - d) Jesus' Prediction: “Will you lay down your life for me? Amen, amen, I say to you, the cock will not crow before you deny me three times.”
(Simon Peter, Designated Leader of Church, Will Deny His Lord)
- 5) Jesus Promises to be United with His Church John 14:1-7
 - a) “Do not let your hearts be troubled (Because He is Leaving Earth). You have faith in God; have faith also in me (Trust Him).”
 - b) “In my Father's house there are many dwelling places. If there were not, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you?”
 - c) “And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back again and take you to myself, so that where I am you also may be.” (Jesus Promises to Return to Earth & Take His People Unto Himself to be with Him Forever)
 - d) “Where (I) am going you know the way.”
 - e) Thomas Asks Jesus: “Master, we do not know where you are going; how can we know the way?”
 - f) Jesus Answers:
 - (1) “I am the way and the truth and the Life. No one comes to the Father except through me.”
(Jesus Is the Only Way into God's Holy Presence)
 - (2) “If you know me, then you will also know my Father. From now on you do know him and have seen him.”
- 6) Jesus Reveals the Triune God to His Church John 14:8-21
 - a) Jesus Reveals His Divinity as God the Son John 14:8-11
 - (1) Philip Asks Jesus: “Master, show us the Father, and that will be enough for us.”
 - (2) Jesus Answers:
 - (a) “Have I been with you for so long a time and you still do not

know me, Philip? Whoever has seen me has seen the Father. How can you say, ‘Show us the Father?’”

(Father God is Revealed through the Person of Jesus Christ)

- (b) “Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in me?” *(Jesus is One with Father God)*
- (c) “The words that I speak to you I do not speak on my own. The Father who dwells in me is doing his works.”
(Jesus Speaks Father God's Words & Performs His Works)
- (d) “Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else, believe because of the works themselves.”
(Jesus Exhorts His Church to Believe that He is God)
- b) Jesus Challenges His Church John 14:12-14
- (1) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes in me will do the works that I do, and will do greater ones than these, because I am going to the Father.”
(We are to Perform the Same Works as Son of God. How?)
- (2) “And whatever you ask in my name, I will do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything of me in my name, I will do it.” *(Jesus Gives Us Power of Attorney to Pray in His Name!)*
- c) Jesus Promises the Holy Spirit to His Church John 14:15-21
(Having Revealed His Unity with Father God [as God the Son – 2nd Person of the Triune God], Jesus then Reveals the Holy Spirit [3rd Person of the Triune God] Promising Him to His New Covenant Church.)
- (1) “If you love me, you will keep my commandments.” *(Jesus Calls His People to Faith & Obedience – Terms of His New Covenant.)*
- (2) “And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth, which the world cannot accept, because it neither sees nor knows it. But you know it, because it remains with you, and will be in you.”
(Jesus Enables His People to Keep His Commandments by Sending “Another” [Divine] “Advocate” [Holy Spirit – 3rd Person of Triune God] to be With Us & Live Within Us.)
- (3) “I will not leave you orphans; I will come to you.”
(Jesus Promises to Come to His People in the Person of the Holy Spirit. Jesus, God the Son, is One with God the Holy Spirit.)
- (4) “In a little while the world will no longer see me, but you will see me, because I live and you will live.”
(Jesus will Die & the World will No Longer See Him.)
(Jesus will Rise from the Dead & Reveal Himself to His People & Give Them Eternal Life.)
- (5) “On that day you will realize that I am in my Father and you are in me and I in you.” *(Jesus Unites His People with the Triune God)*
- (6) “Whoever has my commandments and observes them is the one who loves me. And whoever loves me will be loved by my Father, and I will love him and reveal myself to him.”
(We Prove Our Love for Jesus by Obeying His Commandments – He is Our Lord & Master.)
(We Enter into a Love Relationship with the Triune God through Which Christ Reveals Himself to Us.)

- 7) Jesus' Revelation of Himself John 14:22-31
- a) Jude Asks Jesus: "Master, (then) what happened that you will reveal yourself to us and not to the world?"
 - b) Jesus Answers (*Spiritually Dividing the World*):
 - (1) "Whoever loves me will keep my word (*Believes & Accepts Jesus' Testimony*), and my Father will love him, and we will come to him and make our dwelling with him (*Promise of the Indwelling Spirit*)."
 - (2) "Whoever does not love me does not keep my words (*Rejects/Ignores Christ's Testimony*); yet the word you hear is not mine but that of the Father who sent me."
 - c) The Holy Spirit Will Teach & Reveal Christ to His Church. "I have told you this while I am with you. The Advocate, the Holy Spirit that the Father will send in my name - he will teach you everything and remind you of all that (I) told you." John 14:25-26
 - d) Jesus Imparts His Peace Upon His Church. "Peace I leave with you; my (*Divine*) peace I give to you. Not as the world gives do I give it to you. Do not let your hearts be troubled or afraid." John 14:27
 - e) Jesus Reminds His Disciples of His Imminent Death & Resurrection John 14:28-29
 - (1) "You heard me tell you, 'I am going away (*Christ Will Die*) and I will come back to you (*Christ Will Rise from the Dead*).'"
 - (2) "If you loved me, you would rejoice that I am going to the Father; for the Father is greater than I.
(*Rejoice! Christ Will Return to Father God Victorious, Having Atoned for the Sins of Mankind & Conquered All the Forces of Evil.*)"
 - (3) "And now I have told you this before it happens, so that when it happens you may believe."
(*Jesus Prepares His Disciples for His Upcoming Sacrifice & Death*)
 - f) The Time Has Come for Jesus' Sacrifice John 14:30-31
 - (1) "I will no longer speak much with you, for the ruler of the world (*Satan*) is coming. He has no power over me, but the world must know that I love the Father and that I do just as the Father has commanded me. Get up, let us go." (*Jesus Proves His Love for Father God by Obeying His Salvific Assignment, Effecting a New Covenant & Fulfilling God's Eternal Covenant.*)

Comment. After the Passover Supper, Jesus retires to the Garden of Gethsemane with His Disciples. He gives them this final teaching before separating Himself to endure His Sacrifice and Death alone.

- 8) Jesus the True Vine John 15:1-8
(*Jesus Teaches that He Is the True Vine, the Source of Life & Produce of His New Covenant People.*)
- a) Jesus Declares to be God's True Vine John 15:1-3
 - (1) "I am the true vine, and my Father is the vine grower."
(*Jesus is the Life Source of His Church. Father God Planted His Son on Earth & Cultivated Him to Complete His Mission.*)
 - (2) "He (*Father God*) takes away every branch in me that does not bear fruit, and everyone that does he prunes so that it bears more fruit."
(a) "*Branches*" are God's People

- (b) *“Fruits” are the Works of God Done Through His People*
 (c) *Father God Cuts Off Every Branch Not Bearing Fruit*
(It is Impossible to Have Faith Without Works. James 2:14-17)
 (d) *Father God “Prunes” those People Bearing Good Fruit, Cutting*
Away Sin/Self to Increase their Yields.
- (3) *“You are already pruned because of the word that I spoke to you.”*
(Disciples Received & Accepted the Word of God)
- b) *Remain in Jesus - The Source of Our Salvation & Works John 15:4-8*
- (1) *“Remain (Live) in me, as I remain in you. Just as a branch cannot bear fruit on its own unless it remains on the vine, so neither can you unless you remain in me.” (As a Branch Relies on its Vine's Life Substance to Live & Produce Fruit, So We Must Rely on Jesus to Live & Produce Good Works.)*
- (2) *“I am the vine, you are the branches. Whoever remains in me and I in him will bear much fruit, because without me you can do nothing.” (As We Live, Mature & Grow in Christ Jesus, We will Produce Greater Works. Without Jesus We Can Do Nothing!)*
- (3) *“Anyone who does not remain (live) in me will be thrown out like a branch and wither; people will gather them and throw them into a fire and they will be burned.” (We are Useless Without Christ)*
- (4) *“If you remain in me and my words remain in you, ask for whatever you want and it will be done for you.” (Faith & Prayer are Essential to Performing God's Works. Eph. 2:8-10)*
- (5) *“By this is my Father glorified, that you bear much fruit and become my disciples.” (Father God is Glorified through Our Good Works)*
- 9) *Jesus Repeats His New Covenant Commandment John 15:9-17*
Christ Teaches that His New Covenant is Based Upon Love.
(See “Introduction of New Covenant” Above for a Foundational Study of Christ's New Covenant.)
- a) *Jesus Proclaims God's Love John 15:9-11*
- (1) *“As the Father loves me, so I also love you. Remain in my love.”*
(The Love that Father God has for His Son Jesus Christ is Immeasurable, Intimate, Inseparable & Eternal.)
(The Love that Jesus Christ has for His People is Immeasurable, Intimate, Inseparable & Eternal.) (We are to Live in Christ's Love.)
- (2) *“If you keep my commandments, you will remain in my love, just as I have kept my Father's commandments and remain in his love.”*
(Jesus Remained in Father God's Love by Faith & Obedience.)
(We are to Remain in Christ's Love by Faith & Obedience.)
- (3) *“I have told you this so that my joy may be in you and your joy may be complete.” (Jesus' Joy is in His People.)*
(Our Joy is in Jesus - Our Loving Lord & Savior.)
- b) *Jesus' Commandment: “This is my commandment: love one another as I love you.” John 15:12*
- (1) *Jesus' Commandment is to Love One Another as He Loves Us*
- (2) *Legacy of Jesus' Love:*
- (a) *He Left His Throne in Glory*
- (b) *He Came to this World of Sin to Live the Life of a Man*
- (c) *He Lived a Holy Life in Total Obedience to Father God*

- (d) *He Ministered to the Needs of People*
- (e) *He Uncompromisingly Proclaimed God's Word, in Spite of Rejection, Hatred & Persecution*
- (f) *He was Unjustly Tried as a Blasphemer & Criminal, Without Offering a Defense*
- (g) *He Voluntarily Suffered & Died in Our Place*
- (3) *As Jesus Exhibited His Love Toward Us; So, We are to Exhibit Our Love Toward One Another*
- c) Jesus' Love Relationship John 15:13-16
(Close, Personal, Intimate Love Relationship between Jesus & His People)
- (1) **“No one has greater love than this, to lay down one's life for one's friends.”** *(Jesus Voluntarily Lays Down His Life for Our Salvation)*
- (2) **“You are my friends if you do what I command you.”**
(We Prove Our Love for Christ by Obeying Him)
- (3) **“I no longer call you slaves, because a slave does not know what his master is doing. I have called you friends, because I have told you everything I have heard from my Father.”**
(Jesus Reveals Himself, His Will, His Ways & His Mission to His Church – Both Corporately & Individually.)
- (4) **“It was not you who chose me, but I who chose you and appointed you to go and bear fruit that will remain, so that whatever you ask the Father in my name he may give you.”**
(Jesus Chose Each of Us Individually to be His Friend, Appointing Us to be His Witnesses; thereby, Extending His Love to Others.)
(Father God will Answer Our Prayers as We Represent Christ on Earth by Submitting to His Will & Praying in His Name.)
- d) Jesus Confirms His Commandment: **“This I command you: love one another.”**
- 10) The World's Hate John 15:18-27
(Jesus Warns His Disciples About the World's Hatred & Resulting Persecution. The Sinful World is Submissive to Satan's Authority that's Based on Pride, Sin, Deceit, Hatred & Rebellion Against God; the Antithesis of and in Direct Conflict with Christ's Kingdom.)
- a) Jesus Warns His Followers of World's Hatred John 15:18-21
(As the World Hated Jesus Christ, Our Lord; So, the World Will Hate Us, His New Covenant People.)
- (1) **“If the world hates you, realize that it hated me first.”**
- (2) **“If you (Jesus' New Covenant People) belonged to the world, the world would love its own; but because you do not belong to the world, and I have chosen you out of the world, the world hates you.”**
- (3) **“Remember the word I spoke to you, ‘No slave is greater than his master.’ If they persecuted me, they will also persecute you. If they kept my word, they will also keep yours.”**
- (4) **“And they will do all these things to you on account of my name, because they do not know the one who sent me (Father God).”**
- b) Jesus Indicts the World for their Hatred John 15:22-25
- (1) **“If I had not come and spoken to them, they would have no sin; but as it is they have no excuse for their sin.”** *(Jesus [the Light of the World] Exposes Men's Sins, So They Will Repent & Turn to Him for*

Forgiveness, but They Refuse. John 3:19-21)

- (2) **“Whoever hates me (God the Son) also hates my Father (God the Father).”**
- (3) **“If I had not done works among them that no one else ever did, they would not have sin; but as it is, they have seen and hated both me and my Father.”** *(Jesus Performed the Works of God, Proving He Is God's Holy Anointed One)*
(People Who Witnessed Jesus' Anointing, Rejected His Testimony)
- (4) **“But in order that the word written in their law might be fulfilled, ‘They hated me without cause.’** *(Fulfilling Psa. 69:5)”*
(Jesus Offered Love - The World Returned Hate)

c) Jesus Continues His Testimony by the Holy Spirit John 15:26-27

- (1) **“When the Advocate comes whom I will send you from the Father, the Spirit of truth that proceeds from the Father, he will testify to me.”**
- (2) **“And you also testify, because you have been with me from the beginning.”** *(Jesus' Church Will Testify Inspired by the Holy Spirit)*

11) Jesus Christ's New Covenant

John 16

(Jesus Reveals His New Covenant to His Disciples, that will be Inaugurated in the Holy Spirit. His New Covenant will be Based on an Intimate Love Relationship between God and His People, Not on the Legal Observance of the Law as the Old Covenant. Jesus Christ Obeyed and Fulfilled the Old Covenants; Establishing a New and Better Covenant Founded Upon Himself, His Life, Sacrifice, Resurrection & Glorification.)

a) Jesus Prepares His Disciples for Religious Persecution John 16:1-4

(Jesus Prepares His Disciples for Religious Persecution that will Come from Following the Holy Spirit. Conflict will Occur between Religious Authorities who Require Legal Observances, Regiments and the Like, and His New Covenant Believers Led by the Spirit of God.)

- (1) **“I have told you this so that you may not fall away. They will expel you from the synagogues; in fact, the hour is coming when everyone who kills you will think he is offering worship to God. They will do this because they have not known either the Father or me.”**
- (2) **“I have told you this so that when their hour comes you may remember that I told you. I did not tell you this from the beginning, because I was with you.”**

b) Jesus' Departure & the Coming Holy Spirit John 16:5-16

(Jesus Teaches His Disciples of the Holy Spirit Who He will Send to Earth After He Returns to Father God.)

- (1) Jesus will Leave the Earth. **“But now I am going to the one who sent me (God the Father), and not one of you asks me, ‘Where are you going?’ But because I told you this, grief has filled your hearts.”**
- (2) Jesus Promises to Send the Holy Spirit. **“But I tell you the truth, it is better for you that I go. For if I do not go, the Advocate (God the Holy Spirit) will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you.”**

***Comment.** Jesus must complete His Salvific Mission before sending the Holy Spirit. As the Shekinah Glory of the Lord filled the Tabernacle/Temple (Ex. 40:34-38 & 1 Kings 8:1-12) only after it was completed and consecrated (purified) by Blood; So, Christ sends the Holy Spirit upon Men (Acts 2:1-4) only after He has completed His Salvific Mission, consecrating His New Covenant People to be pure and acceptable*

Tabernacles for God the Holy Spirit (1 Cor. 3:16).

- (3) The Coming Advocate (Holy Spirit)
- (a) “**And when he (Holy Spirit) comes he will convict the world in regard to sin and righteousness and condemnation:**
- “**sin, because they do not believe in me; (Those Who Do Not Accept Jesus as Savior, Remain in their Sins. John 3:18-19)**
 - “**righteousness, because I am going to the Father and you will no longer see me; (Jesus, God's Righteous One, Returns to Heaven. The Holy Spirit will be God's Presence on Earth.)**
 - “**condemnation, because the ruler of this world (Satan) has been condemned.” (Re: John 12:31-32)**
- (4) Holy Spirit's Mission / Work
- (a) “**I have much more to tell you, but you cannot bear it now.”**
(Disciples Not Ready to Receive Full Measure of Christ's Teaching. They still Need to Witness His Suffering, Death & Resurrection, and be Indwelt by the Holy Spirit.)
- (b) “**But when he comes, the Spirit of truth, he will guide you to all truth. He will not speak on his own, but he will speak what he hears, and will declare to you the things that are coming.”**
(Holy Spirit will Reveal God's Word to Christ's Church)
- (c) “**He (Holy Spirit) will glorify me, because he will take from what is mine and declare it to you. Everything that the Father has is mine; for this reason I told you that he will take from what is mine and declare it to you.”**
(Jesus Bequeaths His New Covenant People to the Holy Spirit. The Same Holy Spirit by Whom Jesus was Conceived in Mary and Who Anointed Jesus' Ministry, will Indwell Christ's People Teaching Us of Him & Glorifying Him through Us.)
(Jesus' New Covenant People are God's Anointed Ones on Earth)
- (5) Jesus Reaffirms His Imminent Death & Resurrection: “**A little while and you will no longer see me (Christ's Death), and again a little while later and you will see me (Christ Resurrected from Dead).”**
- c) Jesus - Our Resurrected Lord John 16:17-33
- (1) Disciples Question Jesus' Statement Among Themselves
(Showing They Did Not Understand - Need the Holy Spirit)
- (a) “**What does this mean that he is saying to us, ‘A little while and you will not see me, and again a little while and you will see me,’ and ‘Because I am going to the Father’?”**
- (b) “**What is this ‘little while’? We do not know what he means.”**
- (2) Jesus Answers What His Disciples Wanted to Ask Him:
- (a) “**Are you discussing with one another what I said, ‘A little while and you will not see me, and again a little while and you will see me’?”**
- (b) “**Amen, amen, I say to you, you will weep and mourn (When Jesus is Crucified), while the world rejoices; you will grieve, but your grief will become joy (When Jesus is Resurrected).”**
- (c) Jesus Uses the Analogy of a Woman in Labor. “**When a woman is in labor, she is in anguish because her hour has arrived; but when**

she has given birth to a child, she no longer remembers the pain because of her joy that a child has been born into the world. So you also are now in anguish. But I will see you again (*When He is Resurrected*), and your hearts will rejoice, and no one will take your joy away from you. On that day you will not question me about anything.”

(*Christ's Church is Begotten by His Death & Resurrection*)

- (d) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in my name he will give you. Until now you have not asked anything in my name; ask and you will receive, so that your joy may be complete.” (*Jesus Gives His People Authority to Pray in His Name; i.e. Pray to Father God as though Jesus was Praying*)
 - (e) “I have told you this in figures of speech. The hour is coming when I will no longer speak to you in figures but I will tell you clearly about the Father.” (*Need Holy Spirit to Understand Jesus' Words & Discern the Ways of God. 1 Cor. 2:10-16*)
 - (f) “On that day you will ask in my name, and I do not tell you that I will ask the Father for you.”
(*Jesus Gives Us Personal Access to God's Throne. Heb. 4:14-16*)
 - (g) “For the Father himself loves you, because you have loved me and have come to believe that I came from God.”
(*Father God Loves Us Because We Love & Believe in His Son.*)
- (3) Jesus Reaffirms His Return to Father God: “I came from the Father and have come into the world. Now I am leaving the world and going back to the Father”
- (4) Disciples' Profession of Faith. “Now you are talking plainly, and not in any figure of speech. Now we realize that you know everything (*Jesus is Omniscient*) and that you do not need to have anyone question you. Because of this we believe that you came from God (*Jesus is God the Son*).”
- (5) Jesus' Prediction:
- (a) “Do you believe now? Behold, the hour is coming and has arrived when each of you will be scattered (*At Jesus' Arrest, Trials & Crucifixion*) to his own home and you will leave me alone.”
(*Disciples will Loose their Courage Without the Holy Spirit*)
(*Jesus, God's Holy & Perfect Sacrifice, Must Suffer Alone to Atonement for Man's Sin.*)
 - (b) “But I am not alone, because the Father is with me.”
- (6) Jesus Conquers the World. “I have told you this so that you might have peace in me. In the world you will have trouble, but take courage, I have conquered the world.”

d. A Disciple's Testimony

- 1) “Now Jesus did many other signs in the presence of (his) disciples that are not written in this book (*Gospel of John*). But these are written that you may (come to) believe that Jesus is the Messiah, the Son of God, and that through this belief you may have life in his name.” John 20:30-31
- 2) “It is this disciple (*St. John*) who testifies to these things and has written them, and we know that his testimony is true. There are also many other things that Jesus did, but if these were to be described individually, I do not think the

whole world would contain the books that would be written.” John 21:24-25

7. Jesus Institutes Sacrament of Holy Communion (Eucharist) Luke 22:14-20
Jesus Institutes the New Covenant Sacrament of Holy Communion During His Last (Passover) Supper with His Disciples, as they Eat the Unleavened Bread & Drink the Cup of Redemption (For a More Complete Study of the Passover Feast Ritual See “Our King” or “Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts – Part II”).
 - a. Jesus Initiates Passover Supper
 - (1) **“I have eagerly desired to eat this Passover with you before I suffer, for, I tell you, I shall not eat it (again) until there is fulfillment in the kingdom of God.”** (Luke 22:15-16) *(Jesus will Fulfill the Passover Festival by His Sacrifice, Death, Burial & Resurrection.)*
 - (2) Opens Passover Supper - Serving 1st Cup (*Cup of Sanctification*): **“Take this and share it among yourselves; for I tell you (that) from this time on I shall not drink of the fruit of the vine until the kingdom of God comes.”** (Luke 22:17-18) *(Jesus Sanctifies His Disciples to Receive Holy Communion)*
 - b. Jesus Establishes Sacrament of Holy Communion
 - (1) Jesus Takes the Unleavened Bread
 - (a) Blesses the Bread (*Traditional Jewish Blessing*): *“Blessed are You, Lord our God, King of the Universe, Who brings forth bread from the earth.”*
 - (b) Breaks & Serves Bread to His Disciples: **“This is my body, which will be given for you; do this in memory of me.”** (Luke 22:19) *(Jesus Instructs His Church to Celebrate a New Covenant Passover [Holy Communion] Commemorating Him & His Salvific Work, Not Israel’s Exodus from Egypt Commemorated in the Old Covenant Passover.)*
 - (2) Jesus Takes the Cup of Redemption (3rd Cup of Passover)
 - (a) Blesses the Cup (*Traditional Jewish Blessing*): *“Blessed are You, Lord our God, King of the Universe, Who creates the fruit of the vine.”*
 - (b) Serves Cup to His Disciples: **“This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which will be shed for you.”** (Luke 22:20)

8. Jesus Intercedes for His New Covenant Church John 17
Christ Jesus Enters into Intimate Prayer with Father God Before He Offers Himself as a Holy & Perfect Sacrifice to Fulfill their Eternal Covenant.
 - a. Jesus Affirms the Completion of His Ministry John 17:1-8
 - 1) The Appointed Time has Arrived for God the Son to be Sacrificed
 - a) **“Father, the hour has come. Give glory to your son, so that your son may glorify you,”** *(Jesus Asks Father God to Glorify Him by Accepting His Sacrifice.) (Jesus Will Glorify Father God by Remaining Faithful & Obedient throughout His Suffering & Death.)*
 - b) **“just as you gave him authority over all people, so that he may give eternal life to all you gave him.”** *(Father God Authorized Jesus – God the Son – to Grant Eternal Life to People, Since He Fully Pays the Penalties for their Sins.)*
 - c) **“Now this is eternal life, that they should know you, the only true God, and the one whom you sent, Jesus Christ.”** *(Jesus Establishes the Terms of Eternal Life – To Know [Reconcile with] Father God through a Personal Relationship with His Son Jesus.)*

- 2) Jesus Completed His Work on Earth John 17:4-5
- a) **“I glorified you on earth by accomplishing the work that you gave me to do.”** *(Jesus Accomplished the Ministerial Work Assigned to Him by God the Father in their Eternal Covenant.)*
 - b) **“Now glorify me, Father, with you, with the glory that I had with you before the world began.”** *(Jesus Requests that He be Restored to His Pre-Incarnate Glory as God the Son.)*
- 3) Jesus Entrusted His Disciples with the Gospel John 17:6-8
- a) **“I revealed your name to those whom you gave me out of the world (His Disciples). They belonged to you, and you gave them to me, and they have kept your word.”**
 - b) **“Now they know that everything you gave me is from you, because the words you gave to me I have given to them, and they accepted them and truly understood that I came from you, and they have believed that you sent me.”** *(Jesus Imparted Father God's Words to His Disciples, Building their Faith to Recognize & Accept Him as Messiah & Son of God, Preparing them for their Assignments.)*
- b. Jesus Prays for His Disciples (Church Leaders) John 17:9-19
Jesus Intercedes for His Disciples Who were Entrusted with His Gospel. Jesus' Prayer is Eternal, Continuing to Church Leaders & Lay Witnesses throughout the Church Age.
- 1) Jesus Affirms His Disciples Belong to God John 17:9-10
 - a) **“I pray for them. I do not pray for the world but for the ones you have given me, because they are yours, and everything of mine is yours and everything of yours is mine, and I have been glorified in them.”**
 - 2) Jesus Asks God to Protect His Disciples John 17:11
 - a) **“And now I will no longer be in the world, but they are in the world, while I am coming to you. Holy Father, keep them in your name that you have given me, so that they may be one just as we are.”**
(Jesus is Leaving the World & Returning to Heaven.)
(Jesus Asks Father God to Protect & Preserve His Disciples in His Name.)
(Jesus Prays for Unity Among His Disciples.)
 - 3) Jesus Intercedes as Mediator between Heaven & Earth John 17:12-16
 - a) **“When I was with them I protected them in your name that you gave me, and I guarded them, and none of them was lost except the son of destruction (Judas Iscariot), in order that the scripture might be fulfilled. But now I am coming to you. I speak this in the world so that they may share my joy completely.”** *(Jesus Mediated for His Disciples while on Earth, and will Continue to Mediate for them in Heaven.)*
 - b) **“I gave them your word, and the world hated them, because they do not belong to the world any more than I belong to the world.”**
(Jesus' Disciples Do Not Belong to this World of Sin, any More than He [God's Sinless Son] Belonged to the World.)
 - c) **“I do not ask that you take them out of the world but that you keep them from the evil one. They do not belong to the world any more than I belong to the world.”**
(Jesus Prays His Disciples Remain in the World, as His Witnesses.)
 - 4) Jesus Consecrates His Disciples for Ministry John 17:17-19
 - a) **“Consecrate them in the truth. Your word is truth.”** *(Jesus Consecrates*

- His Disciples [Declares them Sacred & Set Apart for God's Service].)*
- b) **“As you sent me into the world, so I sent them into the world. And I consecrate myself for them, so that they also may be consecrated in truth.”**
(As Father God Sent His Son [Jesus Christ] into the World [Consecrated by the Holy Spirit]; So, Jesus [God the Son] Sends His Disciples into the World [Consecrated by the Holy Spirit].)
(Jesus Consecrates [Devotes] Himself for His Disciples / Church.)
 - c. Jesus Prays for All Believers (His New Covenant People) John 17:20-26
Jesus Intercedes for All People Who Believe Christ's Witnesses. Everyone Who Accepts Jesus Christ as Lord & Savior throughout the Church Age.
 - 1) Jesus Prays for the Unity Among All Believers John 17:20-23
 - a) **“I pray not only for them (Disciples He Just Prayed For), but also for those who will believe in me through their word,”**
(Jesus Prays for All People Who Believe the Testimonies of His Disciples & their Spiritual Descendants.)
(Jesus Applies the Petitions He Prayed for His Disciples to All Believers.)
 - b) **“so that they may all be one, as you, Father, are in me and I in you, that they also may be in us, that the world may believe that you sent me.”**
(Jesus Prays for Unity Among All Believers.)
(Jesus Prays for Unity of All Believers with the Triune God, Testifying that Father God Sent Him [God the Son] into the World.)
 - c) **“And I have given them the glory (Holy Spirit) You gave me, so that they may be one, as we are one, I in them and you in me, that they may be brought to perfection as one, that the world may know that you sent me, and that you loved them even as you loved me.”**
(Jesus Gives the Holy Spirit to All Believers, Uniting them as He is United with Father God & Sanctifying Them as His Witnesses.)
 - 2) Jesus Prays that All Believers will be with Him John 17:24
(Jesus Christ Secures Eternal Life for All Believers)
 - a) **“Father, they are your gift to me. I wish that where I am they also may be with me, that they may see my glory that you gave me, because you loved me before the foundation of the world.”**
(The Sovereign Omnipotent God Gave All Believers to Jesus Christ)
(Jesus Asks that His People be with Him to See & Experience His Glory [Beatific Vision].)
(Jesus Professes Father God's Love for Him – God the Son - that Existed Before Creation of the World, When They Made their Eternal Covenant.)
 - 3) Jesus Prays that Father God's Love for Him will Live In Us. John 17:25-26
 - a) **“Righteous Father, the world also does not know you, but I know you, and they (His New Covenant People) know that you sent me.”**
 - b) **“I made known to them your name and I will make it known, that the love with which you loved me may be in them and I in them.”**
(Jesus Imparts God's Love to His People, Declaring to be One of Us.)
9. Jesus Secures & Executes His New Covenant by Shedding His Blood
All of God's Covenants with Sinful Man were Executed & Put into Effect by Blood Sacrifice. All these Covenants Point to and are Fulfilled by Jesus Christ's Blood Sacrifice, Executing & Effecting His New Covenant. This Section Looks at the Tearing of Jesus' Flesh & the Shedding of His Blood as Revealed in the Gospels.

a. Jesus' Circumcision

(Like All Newborn Jewish Males, Jesus was Circumcised on the 8th Day. Jesus' Flesh was Cut & His Blood Shed in the Rite of Circumcision, Bringing Him Under the Abrahamic & Mosaic Covenants with their Promises, and Obligating Him to Live by the Law.)

- 1) "When eight days were completed for his circumcision, he was named Jesus, the name given him by the angel before he was conceived in the womb."
Luke 2:21

Comment. There is no record of Jesus Shedding any more of His Blood up to the beginning of His Passion in the Garden of Gethsemane. Jesus' Body was then torn for our healing (prefigured in the Old Covenant Cereal Offerings) and His Blood shed for our salvation (prefigured in the Old Covenant Animal Sacrifices). His Body & Blood are both celebrated in the Eucharistic Sacrifice of His New Covenant.

b. Jesus' Intense Prayer in Garden of Gethsemane

Matt. 26:36-46; Mark 14:32-42; Luke 22:39-46

- 1) Jesus, Knowing His Mission, Says to His Disciples: "My soul is sorrowful even to death. Remain here and keep watch." (Mark 14:34)

- 2) Jesus Withdraws from His Disciples to Pray Alone

- 3) Jesus Prostrates Himself & Prays: "Father, if you are willing, take this cup away from me; still, not my will but yours be done." (Luke 22:42)

(Submitting Himself Completely to Father God's Will.)

- a) "And to strengthen him an angel from heaven appeared to him. He was in such agony and he prayed so fervently that his sweat became like drops of blood falling on the ground." (Luke 22:43-44)

{Jesus Knows & Understands that He Must Take the Sins of Mankind Upon Himself, Endure & Overcome All its Effects (Injustice, Injury, Disease, Disabilities, etc.) and its Curse (Death), in Order to Provide Total Redemption for Mankind (Body, Soul/Mind & Spirit).}

c. Jesus' Arrest & Trials

(Having Obeyed the Law His Entire Life - Jesus is Arrested, Tried & Convicted.)

- 1) Jesus Arrested in the Garden of Gethsemane

Matt. 26:47-56; Mark 14:43-52; Luke 22:47-53; John 18:1-14

- a) "So Judas got a band of soldiers and guards from the chief priests and the Pharisees and went there with lanterns, torches, and weapons." (John 18:3)

- b) "So the band of soldiers, the tribune, and the Jewish guards seized Jesus, bound him, and brought him to Annas...." (John 18:12-13)

{Jesus Falsely Arrested & Physically Disabled}

- 2) Jesus Tried Before Jewish (Religious) Authorities

(Jesus Tried as Messiah-Son of God by Authorities Over God's Covenant People – Israel; Since He Would Provide Salvation for the Jews.)

- a) Jesus Brought Before Annas (High Priest Emeritus) John 18:19-24

- (1) Annas Interrogates Jesus Concerning His Disciples & Doctrine
{To Determine What Charges are to be Brought Before Sanhedrin}

- (2) Jesus Answers: "I have spoken publicly to the world. I have always taught in a synagogue or in the temple area where all the Jews gather, and in secret I have said nothing. Why ask me? Ask those who heard me what I said to them. They know what I said." (John 18:20-21)

{Jesus Challenges Annas to Try Him by Mosaic/Jewish Law that Requires Confirming Witnesses.}

- (3) “When he had said this, one of the temple guards standing there struck Jesus {Probably in the Mouth} and said, ‘Is this the way you answer the high priest?’” (John 18:22)
{Jesus Punished for Speaking the Truth.}
- (4) Jesus Responds: “**If I have spoken wrongly, testify to the wrong** {In Accordance with Mosaic Law}; **but if I have spoken rightly, why do you strike me?**” (John 18:23)
- (5) “Then Annas sent him bound to Caiaphas the high priest.” (John 18:24) {Jesus Remains Physically Disabled}
- b) Jesus Tried Before the Sanhedrin (Council of Chief Priests & Lawyers)
Matt. 26:57-68; Mark 14:53-65; Luke 22:63-71
- (1) Jesus Brought Before Jewish Sanhedrin
- (a) Presided Over by High Priest Caiaphas
- (2) Prosecutors Attempt to Obtain Testimonies Against Jesus
- (a) Many Witnesses Falsely Testify {Violating Mosaic Law.}
- (b) No Two Witnesses Agreed {As Required by Mosaic Law.}
- (3) High Priest Questions Jesus Directly: “Are you the Messiah, the son of the Blessed One?” (Mark 14:61c)
- (4) Jesus Truthfully Answers {In Obedience to the Law}: “**I am; and ‘you will see the Son of Man seated at the right hand of the Power and coming with the clouds of heaven.’**” (Mark 14:62)
- (5) High Priest Tears His Robes (Sign of Blasphemy), Charging the Court: “What further need have we of witnesses? You have heard the blasphemy. What do you think?” (Mark 14:63b-64b)
{Falsely Accusing Jesus}
- (6) Sanhedrin Condemns Jesus to Death {Falsely Condemning Jesus}
- (a) “Some began to spit on him {Insulting Jesus}. They blindfolded him {Blinding Jesus} and struck him and said to him, ‘Prophesy!’ {Mocking Jesus} And the guards greeted him with blows {Beating Jesus}.” (Mark 14:65)
{Jesus – Messiah & Son of God – Undergoes Abuse Without Complaint, Retort, Threats or Defense; Humbly Taking their Self-Righteous Rage with Dignity, to Fulfill God’s Eternal Covenant.}
- 3) Jesus Tried Before the Civil Authorities
Matt. 27:1-31; Mark 15:1-20; Luke 23:1-25; John 18:28 – 19:16
{Jesus Tried as Messiah-King by Earthly Authorities; Since He Would Provide Salvation for the Gentile Peoples.}
- a) Jesus Taken to Roman Governor for Execution Luke 23:2-7
{Gentile Authority Not Under Lord’s Covenant with Israel.}
- (1) “When it was morning, all the chief priests and the elders of the people took counsel against Jesus to put him to death. They bound him, led him away, and handed him over to Pilate, the governor. (Matt. 27:1-2)
- (2) Chief Priests Bring Charges Against Jesus. “We found this man misleading our people; he opposes the payment of taxes to Caesar and maintains that he is the Messiah, a king.”
- (3) Pilate Asks Jesus: “Are you the king of the Jews?”
- (4) Jesus Replies: “**You say so.**”
- (5) Pilate Addresses Chief Priests & Crowds: “I find this man not guilty.”

- (6) Priests Adamantly Reply: “He is inciting the people with his teaching throughout all Judea, from Galilee where he began even to here.”
- (7) “On hearing this Pilate asked if the man was a Galilean; and upon learning that he was under Herod’s jurisdiction, he sent him to Herod who was in Jerusalem at that time.”
- b) Jesus Taken to Herod Antipas - Tetrarch of Galilee Luke 23:8-11
(Herod a Descendant of Abraham from a Non-Chosen Line [e.g. Ishmael, Esau, etc.], Not Under Lord’s Covenant with Israel.)
- (1) Herod Questions Jesus at Length
 - (2) Jesus Does Not Answer
 - (3) Chief Priests & Scribes (Lawyers) Intensify their Accusations
 - (4) Jesus Abused & Sent Back to Pilate. “Herod and his soldiers treated him contemptuously and mocked him, and after clothing him in resplendent garb, he sent him back to Pilate.”
- c) Pilate Brings Jesus into Praetorium & Questions Him John 18:33-38a
{Jews Consider Any Gentile Dwelling, Such as Roman Praetorium with its Pagan Idols, etc., as Unclean & Would Not Enter During Passover.}
- (1) Pilate Asks Jesus: “Are you the King of the Jews?”
 - (2) Jesus Answers: **“Do you say this on your own or have others told you about me?”** *{Jesus Asks for Confirmed Witnesses to Accuse Him in Keeping with Mosaic Law}*
 - (3) Pilate Retorts: “I am not a Jew, am I? Your own nation and the chief priests handed you over to me. What have you done?”
 - (4) Jesus Answers (*Professing to Being a King*): **“My kingdom does not belong to this world. If my kingdom did belong to this world, my attendants (would) be fighting to keep me from being handed over to the Jews. But as it is, my kingdom is not here.”**
 - (5) Pilate Says: “Then you are a king?”
 - (6) Jesus Answers (*Confirming that He is a King*): **“You say I am a king. For this I was born and for this I came into the world, to testify to the truth (Jesus is the Word of God - Eternal Truth). Everyone who belongs to the truth listens to my voice.”**
 - (7) Pilate's Response: “What is truth?” (*Man's Cynical Response*)
(Sinful Men Lie So Much they are Unable to Discern Truth from Lies, and So it is with Pilate.)
- d) Pilate Goes Outside Praetorium to Meet Jews Again John 18:38b-40
- (1) Pilate Gives His Verdict: “I find no guilt in him.”
 - (2) Pilate Offers Compromise: “But you have a custom that I release one prisoner to you at Passover. Do you want me to release to you the King of the Jews?”
 - (3) Jews Shout Back: “Not this one but Barabbas!”
 - (a) Barabbas Imprisoned for Insurrection Against Rome
{Jesus Takes the Place [Death Sentence] of a Sinner!}
- e) Pilate Orders Jesus to be Scourged John 19:1-3
{Jesus Tortured to Extract a Confession!}
- (1) Roman Soldiers Scourge Jesus
 - (a) Jesus Securely Tied Exposing His Entire Body
 - (b) Soldiers Systematically Whip Every Surface of Jesus' Body
{Roman Scourge Referred to as “½ Death”. They Use a Multi-Thong

Instrument [Flagrum] of Torture that Tears Flesh.

{Jesus Takes All Man's Infirmities Upon Himself! As the Roman Scourge Injures Every Surface of Jesus' Body; So, Jesus' Wounds Provide Healing from Every Disability & Disease.}

- (2) Soldiers Further Abuse & Mock Jesus as King of the Jews
- (a) “Then the soldiers of the governor . . . gathered the whole cohort (300 – 600 Soldiers) around him. They stripped off his clothes and threw a scarlet military cloak about him. Weaving a crown out of thorns, they placed it on his head, and a reed in his right hand. And kneeling before him, they mocked him, saying, ‘Hail, King of the Jews!’ They spat upon him and took the reed and kept striking him on the head.” (Matt. 27:27-30)
- Soldiers Strip Jesus *{Humiliating Him}* & Throw a Scarlet Cloak on Him *{Mocking His Authority}*
 - Soldiers Crown Jesus with Thorns
{“Thorns” Symbolize the Land Curse Resulting from Adam’s Original Sin (Re: Gen. 3:17-19), When He Abdicated His God Given Dominion of Earth to Satan. Jesus Takes that Curse Upon Himself, Regaining Dominion of Earth.}
{Jesus Takes All Mental/Emotional Illnesses Upon Himself.}
{Jesus Takes All Man's Addictions & Dependencies Upon Himself.}
{Jesus Renews Man's Mind that is Corrupted by Sin.}
 - Soldiers Put a Reed in Jesus’ Right Hand *{Mocking Jesus’ Authority with a Weak Scepter}*.
 - Soldiers Kneel Before Jesus Proclaiming: “Hail, King of the Jews!” *{Ridiculing & Mocking His Kingship}*
 - Soldiers Repeatedly Spit on Jesus *{Insulting Him}*.
 - Soldiers Repeatedly Strike Jesus on the Head with the Reed *{Pushing the Thorns Deeper into His Scalp}*.
- (3) Jesus Remains Silent During Entire Ordeal
- (a) *He Does Not Confess to Any Crime (He is Sinless)!*
- (b) *He Does Not Cry for Mercy, Subjecting Himself to Man’s Will!*
- (c) *He is Carrying the Full Measure of His Sacrificial Mission!*
- f) Pilate Exposes Jesus to the Crowd John 19:4-8
- (1) Pilate Announces to the Crowd: “Look, I am bringing him out to you, so that you may know that I find no guilt in him.”
{Jesus Fully Interrogated Without Confessing Any Crime/Sin.}
- (2) Jesus Brought Out of the Praetorium & Presented to the Crowd
- (a) *Revealing His Torn Flesh*
- (b) *Revealing His Bruised Face*
- (c) *Wearing a Crown of Thorns and a Blood Soaked Cloak*
- (3) Pilate Proclaims: “Behold, the man!”
- (a) Proving Jesus has been Thoroughly Tested *{“Even as many were amazed at him - so marred was his look beyond that of man, and his appearance beyond that of mortals” Isa. 52:14}*
- (4) Chief Priests & Temple Guards Shout: “Crucify him, crucify him!”
- (5) Pilate Replies: “Take him yourselves and crucify him. I find no guilt

(Crime/Sin) in him.”

(6) Jewish Authorities Answer: “We have a law, and according to that law he ought to die, because he made himself the Son of God.”

(7) Pilate Becomes Afraid because of their Charges

(a) Is Jesus the Son of God?

(8) Pilate Takes Jesus Back into the Praetorium

g) Pilate Further Interrogates Jesus John 19:9-11

(1) Pilate Asks Jesus: “Where are you from?”

(2) Jesus Does Not Answer

{Jesus Does Not Defend Himself - Relying on His Superior Intellect!}

{Jesus Does Not Ask for Mercy - Relying on Man's Mercy!}

{Jesus Does Not Cop a Plea - Relying on Man's Justice!}

(3) Pilate Responds: “Do you not speak to me? Do you not know that I have power to release you and I have power to crucify you?”

(4) Jesus Replies: **“You would have no power over me if it had not been given to you from above. For this reason the one (Chief Priests) who handed me over to you has the greater sin.”**

{Jesus Voluntarily Lays Down His Life.}

h) Pilate Returns to Crowd John 19:12-16

(1) Pilate Tries to Release Jesus

(2) Jews Shout: “If you release him, you are not a Friend of Caesar. Everyone who makes himself a king opposes Caesar.”

(3) Pilate Sits on Judge's Bench (Called “Stone Pavement”)

(a) Orders Jesus Brought Before Him to be Judged

(4) Pilate Addresses the Jews: “Behold, your king!”

(a) Pilate Presents Jesus to Crowd. *{Thoroughly Scourged & Interrogated Without Confessing to Any Crime.}*

(b) Jesus Stands Before them as a King - Crowned with Thorns, Wearing a Scarlet Robe with a Reed Scepter in His Hand

(5) Jews Shout Back: “Take him away, take him away! Crucify him!”

(6) Pilate Exclaims: “Shall I crucify your king?”

(7) Chief Priests’ Confession: “We have no king but Caesar.”

(Under Mosaic Law, the Lord God Rules His Chosen Nation Israel, Selecting & Anointing its Judges & Kings as His Representatives.)

(They Swear Allegiance to a Pagan Emperor Over God’s Anointed.)

(8) Pilate Succumbs to Chief Priests’ Pressure

(a) “When Pilate saw that he was not succeeding at all, but that a riot was breaking out instead, he took water and washed his hands in the sight of the crowd, saying, ‘I am innocent of this man’s blood. Look to it yourselves.’ And the whole people said in reply, ‘His blood be upon us and upon our children.’” *(Matt. 27:24-25)*

(b) Pilate Orders Jesus Crucified *{Convicting an Innocent Man}*

(c) Roman Soldiers. “..... stripped him of the cloak *{Reopening Wounds}*, dressed him in his own clothes, and led him off to crucify him.” *(Matt. 27:31)*

d. Jesus’ Crucifixion & Death

Matt. 27:32-66; Mark 15:21-47; Luke 23:26-56; John 19:17-42

1) Jesus Goes to the Cross

a) Soldiers Order Simon of Cyrene to Carry Jesus’ Cross

(Represents Man Carrying the Burden of Sin & Death.)

- (1) *Jesus Physically Weakened from Brutal Beating & Scourging*
- (2) *Soldiers Want to Make Sure that Jesus had Enough Strength to Undergo Crucifixion*

b) **Large Crowd Follows Jesus to the Place of Execution**

- (1) **Women Mourning Over Jesus**
- (2) **Jesus Tells Women to Mourn Over Next Generation of Jews**
(God's Covenanted People Who Reject their Messiah & His Gospel.)

- (a) **“Daughters of Jerusalem, do not weep for me; weep instead for yourselves and for your children, for indeed, the days are coming when people will say, ‘Blessed are the barren, the wombs that never bore and the breasts that never nursed.’ At that time people will say to the mountains, ‘Fall upon us!’ and to the hills, ‘Cover us!’ for if these things are done when the wood is green what will happen when it is dry?”**
Luke 23:28-31

Jesus' Prophecy. *Jesus will fulfill the Old Covenant by His Sacrificial Death. The Lord their God will give His Chosen People (Israel) a generation (40 years) to transition from the Old Covenant of Temple Worship with its Priesthood and Sacrifices, to His New Covenant. After that, the Lord will lift His Covenant Protection from Israel; Jerusalem and its Temple will be destroyed, Priesthood and Sacrifices will cease, and the people will be dispersed. This prophecy was fulfilled in 70 AD (a generation following Jesus' Sacrifice and Death) by Roman Troops when those Jews (who rejected their Messiah and His Gospel) rebelled against Rome.*

c) **Jesus Arrives at Place of Execution – Golgotha (“Skull Place”)**

- (1) **Soldiers Offer Jesus Wine Drugged with Myrrh**
(To Lessen the Pain & Extend Dying)
- (2) **Jesus Refuses to Drink**
{He Will Not Compromise the Full Measure of His Sacrifice!}
{He Will Not Yield Control Over His Life!}

2) **Jesus Suffers on the Cross**

- a) **Jesus Crucified.** *“Then they (Roman Soldiers) crucified him and divided his garments by casting lots for them to see what each should take. It was nine o'clock in the morning when they crucified him.” Mark 15:24-25*
 - (1) **Roman Crucifixion**
 - a) **Victim Nailed to a Cross by their Hands & Feet**
{Jesus' Hands were Pierced Incapacitating them. Jesus Takes the Curse of Man's Toil for Sustenance (Re: Gen. 3:19) Upon Himself, Becoming Our Source & Enabling His People to Perform the Works of God.}
{Jesus' Feet were Pierced Incapacitating them. Jesus Enables His People to Walk a Life of Faith & Obedience through Him.}
 - b) **Victim Usually Naked**
{Jesus Took the Shame of Sin (Re: Gen. 3:7) Upon Himself, So that His People Might Become Righteous Before God in Him.}
 - c) **Victim Dies of Slow Suffocation from His Own Body Weight**
{In Order to Take a Breath or Speak While Suffocating on a Cross, the Victim had to Straighten His Legs Causing Severe Pain, Especially in His Hands & Feet; So it was with Jesus.}
- b) **Jesus Hangs & Suffers on the Cross**
 - (1) **Jesus Forgives His Tormentors: “Father, forgive them, they know not**

what they do.” (Luke 23:34)

{While Most Victims Spew Forth Profanities & Curses as they Suffer on a Cross, Jesus Forgives His Persecutors.}

- (2) Jesus Undergoes Mocking as He Suffers on the Cross to Provide Salvation for Mankind. *{Jesus, as God the Son, had the Authority & Ability to Come Down Off the Cross and Return to Heaven at Any Time. Had He Done So, All Mankind Would be Lost Forever.}*
 - (a) Plaque Placed Over Jesus’ Head “King of the Jews”
{Mocking His Anointed Office}
 - (b) Mocked by the People: “Aha! You who would destroy the temple and rebuild it in three days, save yourself by coming down from the cross.” (Mark 15:29-30)
 - (c) Mocked by Religious Leaders: “He saved others; he cannot save himself. Let the Messiah, the King of Israel, come down now from the cross that we may see and believe.” (Mark 15:31-32)
 - (c) Mocked by the Soldiers: “If you are King of the Jews, save yourself.” (Luke 23:37)
- (3) Jesus Crucified Between Two Criminals Luke 23:39-42
 - (a) The First Criminal Reviles Jesus: “Are you not the Messiah? Save yourself and us.” (Unrepentant)
 - (b) The Second Criminal Repents
 - Rebukes the Other Criminal: “Have you no fear of God, for you are subject to the same condemnation? And indeed, we have been condemned justly, for the sentence we received corresponds to our crimes, but this man has done nothing criminal.”
 - Says to Jesus: “Jesus, remember me when you come into your kingdom.”
 - Jesus Replies: **“Amen, I say to you, today you will be with me in Paradise.”** (Promise of Salvation to Repentant Sinner)
- (4) Jesus’ Followers at the Cross John 19:25-27
 - (a) Jesus’ Mother (Virgin) Mary
 - (b) Mary Wife of Clopas – Virgin Mary’s Sister
 - (c) Mary Magdalene
 - (d) His Disciple John
 - (e) Jesus Addresses His Mother & John:
{Assuring His Mother is Taken Care of After He Departs Earth.}
 - To His Mother: **“Woman, behold, your son.”**
- Releasing Her into John’s Care
 - To John: **“Behold, your mother.”**
- John Takes Mary into His Home
- (5) Darkness Covers the Whole Area from Noon to 3:00pm
 - (a) Eclipse of the Sun
- (6) Jesus Loudly Cries Out: **“Eli, Eli, lema sabachthani?”** which means, **“My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?”** (Quoting Scripture Psa. 22:1) (Matt. 27:4-6; Mark 15:34)
{Jesus Christ Became Our Sin on the Cross. Father God, Who Can Not Look Upon Sin, Turns Away from Jesus; So He Will Not Turn

Away from Us Sinners When We Repent and Come to Him Accepting Jesus' Sacrifice.}

- (7) Jesus Says: **“I am thirsty”** *{Jesus Thirsts for Sinners}* John 19:28
 (a) Soldiers Soak Sponge in “Common Wine” (Vinegar)
 • Place it on Hyssop & Raise it to Jesus' Lips
- (8) Jesus Proclaims: **“It is finished”** John 19:30
{Jesus has Fully Completed His Earthly Life, Ministry & Sacrifice!}
{Jesus has Fulfilled All the Law [Including its Sacrificial Offerings] and the Prophets!}
{Jesus Christ has Experienced & Conquered Every Human Temptation, Emotion, Disease & Spiritual Onslaught!}
- 3) Jesus Dies on the Cross
- a) Jesus Releases His Spirit & Dies Luke 23:46-47
 (1) “Jesus cried out in a loud voice, **‘Father, into your hands I commend my spirit’** *(Quoting Scripture Psa. 31:6)*; and when he had said this he breathed his last.”
{Having Finished His Mission, Fulfilling His Part of God's Eternal Covenant, Jesus Voluntarily Releases His Spirit!}
 (2) A Soldier's Testimony: “The centurion who witnessed what had happened glorified God and said, ‘This man was innocent beyond doubt.’”
- b) Immediate Effects/Manifestations at Jesus' Death
{God the Son in Human Flesh Dies.}
 (1) Temple Veil Torn from Top (*Heaven*) to Bottom (*Earth*)
 (a) *Veil that Isolated the Holy of Holies (God's Dwelling Place on Earth) from the Rest of the Temple*
 (b) *God's Presence (Holy Spirit) Available to All Believers through Jesus' Death*
 (2) Physical Earthly Manifestations (*Creation Groans – Its Creator Dies*)
 (a) Earth Quakes & Rocks Split
 (3) Tombs Open (*Jesus Christ Died for their Sins*)
 (a) Righteous Dead Raised & Set Free (*Released from Curse of Sin*)
 (4) Roman Soldier Declares: “Truly this man was the Son of God!”
(Mark 15:39)
 (5) Jews Returned Home from Golgotha Beating their Breasts
 (6) Jesus' Acquaintances Stood at a Distance Witnessing these Events
- c) Jesus' Side Pierced with a Lance John 19:31-37
 (1) Jewish Officials Ask Pilate to Break Legs of the Men Being Crucified (*Hastening Death*) & Remove their Bodies from Crosses
 (a) Do Not Want Bodies Hanging on Crosses on Passover Sabbath (*Sabbath is Feast of Unleavened Bread that Starts at Sundown*)
 (b) Soldiers Break Legs of Two Criminals
 (c) Soldiers Go to Break Jesus' Legs. “But when they came to Jesus and saw that he was already dead, they did not break his legs”
(John 19:33) {No One Took Jesus' Life! He Voluntarily Dies after Fully Completing His Work of Salvation!}
 (2) Soldier Thrusts a Lance into Jesus' Side *{Proving He is Dead}*
 (a) “... one soldier thrust his lance into his side, and immediately

blood and water flowed out.” (John 19:34)
{As Adam Fell into a Deep Sleep for His Bride (Eve) to be Created from His Rib (Re: Gen. 2:21-24); So, Jesus’ Side was Pierced After He Died, Gushing Forth Water & Blood [Representing Sacraments of Baptism & Eucharist] Creating His Bride – His New Covenant Church.}

- 4) Jesus’ Body Entombed
 - a) Pilate Gives Joseph of Arimathea Permission to Take Jesus’ Body
 - b) Joseph & Nicodemus Take Jesus’ Body Off the Cross
 - (1) Wrapped Body in Linen Shroud
 - (2) Buried Jesus’ Body in a New Tomb Hewn in Rock
 - (3) Rolled Large Stone at Entrance of Tomb
 - c) Soldiers Dispatched to Seal & Guard Jesus’ Tomb

Perspective of Jesus’ Suffering & Death.

Jesus’ suffering and death were extreme and horrific. It was Satan’s opportunity to unleash the forces of Hell and the full measure of Man’s cruelty against Jesus to break His will (e.g. confessing to crimes He didn’t commit, cry for mercy, loosing faith in Father God, etc.) and/or cause Him to sin (e.g. becoming unforgiving or bitter against His tormentors, complaining, cursing, etc.), truncating and negating His Holy and Perfect Sacrifice. Had Jesus succumb to any of the physical or emotional strains He endured, Mankind would be lost forever remaining in their sinful condition under Satan’s authority.

It must also be understood, that in addition to His physical and emotional suffering, Jesus underwent severe spiritual attacks beyond anything we can imagine.

Jesus endured and overcame all of these horrific forces, gaining decisive victory over Satan, Sin and all the Forces of Evil, successfully fulfilling God’s Eternal Covenant. Father God’s evidences His acceptance of Jesus’ sacrifice by raising Him from the dead.

10. Jesus Seals New Covenant by His Resurrection Matt. 28; Mark 16; Luke 24; John 20
 - a. Jesus’ Resurrection Day (*First Day of Week – Sunday - Following Passover Sabbath When Israel Celebrated Feast of First Fruits.*)
 - 1) Jesus’ Empty Tomb Matt. 28:1-8; Mark 16:1-9; Luke 24:1-12; John 20:1-10
 - a) Women Go to Jesus’ Tomb & Find it Empty
 - (1) See an Angel of the Lord
 - (a) Angel Proclaims Jesus’ Resurrection.: “Do not be afraid! I know that you are seeking Jesus the crucified. He is not here, for he has been raised just as he said. Come and see the place where he lay.” (Matt. 28:5-6)
 - (b) Angel Instructs Women to Tell Jesus’ Disciples
 - (2) Ran and Told Jesus’ Disciples
 - b) Peter & John Run to Jesus’ Tomb
 - (1) Peter Enters & Sees Jesus’ Burial Clothes by Themselves
 - (2) John Enters, Sees Empty Tomb & Believes (Faith)
 - 2) Jesus Appears to Mary Magdalene at Tomb Site John 20:11-18
 - a) Instructs Mary to Testify of His Resurrection to His Disciples
 - b) Mary Tells Disciples: “I have seen the Lord” (*John 20:18b*)
 - 3) Jesus Appears to Two Disciples on Road to Emmaus Luke 24:13-35
 - a) Jesus Joins them Without being Recognized
 - b) Disciples Discussing Jesus’ Crucifixion & Death
 - (1) People Hoping He was the Messiah Who Would Redeem Israel
 - (2) “Some women from our group, however, have astounded us: they

- were at the tomb early in the morning and did not find his body; they came back and reported that they had indeed seen a vision of angels who announced that he was alive.”
- (3) “Then some of those with us went to the tomb and found things just as the women had described, but him they did not see.” (*Luke 24:22-24*)
- c) Jesus Replies: **“Oh, how foolish you are! How slow of heart to believe all that the prophets spoke! Was it not necessary that the Messiah should suffer these things and enter into his glory?”** (*Luke 24:25-26*)
- (1) “Then beginning with Moses and all the prophets, he interpreted to them what referred to him in all the scriptures.” (*Luke 24:27*)
(*His Fulfillment of the Old Covenant!*)
- d) Disciples Invite Jesus to Stay for Supper
- (1) Disciples Recognize Jesus as He Blesses & Breaks the Bread
(*Traditional Blessing: “Blessed are You, Lord our God, King of the Universe, Who brings forth bread [Jesus the Bread of Life] from the earth [Grave].”*)
- (2) Jesus Vanishes from their Sight
- (3) Disciples’ Testify: “Were not our hearts burning (within us) while he spoke to us on the way and opened the scriptures to us?” (*Luke 24:32*)
- (a) Return to Jerusalem to Tell the Other Disciples of Jesus’
Resurrection
- 4) Jesus Appears to His Disciples in Jerusalem *Luke 24:36-53; John 20:19-31*
- a) Jesus Appears that Sunday Evening
- (1) Disciples Behind Locked Doors
- (2) Jesus Stands Among His Disciples & Greets Them: **“Peace be with you”** (*Luke 24:36*)
- (3) Disciples Startled – Thinking They See a Ghost
- b) Jesus Reveals that He is Bodily Risen from the Dead
- (1) Says to Them: **“Why are you troubled? And why do questions arise in your hearts?”** (*Luke 24:38*) (*Have Faith in God & His Predictions*)
- (2) Shows Them His Pierced Hands & Feet: **“Look at my hands and my feet, that it is I myself. Touch me and see, because a ghost does not have flesh and bones as you can see I have.”** (*Luke 24:39*)
- (a) Disciples Amazed & Joyful
- (3) Asks Them: **“Have you anything here to eat?”** (*Luke 24:41*)
- (a) Disciples Give Him a Piece of Fish
- (b) Jesus Eats Fish in Front of Them
(*A Ghost/Disembodied Spirit Does Not Consume Food*)
- (4) Reminds Them of His Teachings: **“These are my words that I spoke to you while I was still with you, (Predicting His Death & Resurrection) that everything written about me in the law of Moses and in the prophets and psalms must be fulfilled.”** (*Opening Their Minds to Understand Scriptures & His Fulfillment of Them.*)
- c) Jesus Commissions His Disciples
- (1) **“Thus it is written that the Messiah would suffer and rise from the dead on the third day and that repentance, for the forgiveness of sins, would be preached in his name to all the nations, beginning from Jerusalem. You are witnesses of these things. And (behold) I am sending the promise of my Father upon you (Anointing by the Holy**

Spirit); but stay in the city until you are clothed with power from on high.” (Luke 24:46-49)

- (2) “Peace be with you. As the Father has sent me, so I send you (To Spread His New Covenant Gospel).” (John 20:21)
 - d) Jesus Breathes on His Disciples (*Imparting the Holy Spirit*): “Receive the holy Spirit. Whose sins you forgive are forgiven them, and whose sins you retain are retained.” (John 20:22-23) (*Giving Them Ministerial Authority*)
 - e) Thomas Absent when Jesus Appeared to Other Disciples John 20:24-25
 - (1) Disciples Witness to Thomas: “We have seen the Lord.”
 - (2) Thomas Rejects their Testimonies: “Unless I see the mark of the nails in his hands and put my finger into the nailmarks and put my hand into his side, I will not believe.”
- b. Jesus’ Subsequent Appearances on Earth After His Resurrection
- 1) Jesus Appears to Disciples a Week After His Resurrection John 20:26-29
 - a) Disciples Behind Locked Doors
 - b) Thomas with Other Disciples
 - c) Jesus Stands Among His Disciples & Greets Them: “Peace be with you”
 - d) Jesus Addresses Thomas: “Put your finger here and see my hands, and bring your hand and put it into my side, and do not be unbelieving, but believe.”
 - e) Thomas’ Declaration of Faith: “My Lord and my God!” (*Confession of Christ’s New Covenant Church*)
 - f) Jesus’ Response: “Have you come to believe because you have seen me? Blessed are those who have not seen and have believed.”
 - 2) Jesus Appears to Disciples in Galilee John 21
 - a) Certain Disciples Fishing on Sea of Tiberias John 21:1-14 (*Returning to Their Occupation / Livelihood*)
 - (1) Out on Sea All Night Without Catching Any Fish
 - (2) Jesus Stands on Shore at Dawn
 - (a) Yells to Disciples: “Children, have you caught anything to eat?”
 - (b) Disciples Answer: “No”
 - (c) Jesus Says: “Cast the net over the right side of the boat and you will find something.” (John 21:5-6)
 - (d) Disciples Obey & Catch an Abundance of Fish
 - (3) John Recognizes Jesus: “It is the Lord” (*Probably Recalling their Call to Ministry: “Come after me, and I will make you fishers of men.” Matt. 4:19*)
 - (4) Disciples Bring Boat Ashore & Eat Breakfast with Jesus
 - b) Jesus Charters His New Covenant Church John 21:15-23
 - (1) Jesus Questions Peter: “Simon, son of John, do you love me more than these?” (*Asks Peter if He Loves Him More than His Livelihood*)
 - (a) Peter Answers: “Yes, Lord, you know that I love you.”
 - (b) Jesus Instructs Him: “Feed my lambs.” (*Teach & Serve Christ’s People*)
 - (2) Jesus Questions Peter Again: “Simon, son of John, do you love me?”
 - (a) Peter Answers: “Yes, Lord, you know that I love you.”
 - (b) Jesus Instructs Him: “Tend my sheep.” (*Become a Shepherd – Pastor - to Christ’s Church*)
 - (3) Jesus Questions Peter Again: “Simon, son of John, do you love me?”

- (a) Peter Hurt that Jesus Asked him 3 Times if He Loved Him, Says: “Lord, you know everything; you know that I love you.”
 - (b) Jesus Instructs Him: **“Feed my sheep.”** (*Teach & Serve Clergy, Religious & Lay Workers of Christ’s Church*)
 - (4) Jesus Tells Peter the Consequences of Following & Serving Him Will be Crucifixion. (*Fulfilled About 30 Years Later*)
 - (a) Jesus Instructs Peter: **“Follow me.”** (*Despite the Consequences*)
 - 3) Jesus Appeared on Earth 40 Days After His Resurrection
 - (a) “..... He (*Jesus*) presented himself alive to them (*Disciples*) by many proofs after he had suffered (*and Died*), appearing to them during forty days and speaking about the kingdom of God.” Acts 1:1-3
 - 4) Jesus Appeared to Over 500 People After His Resurrection
 - (a) “.....Christ died for our sins in accordance with the scriptures; that he was buried; that he was raised on the third day in accordance with the scriptures; that he appeared to Kephaz, then to the Twelve. After that, he appeared to more than five hundred brothers at once, most of whom are still living, though some have fallen asleep. After that he appeared to James, then to all the apostles. Last of all, he appeared to me.”
1 Cor. 15:1-8
- c. Jesus the First Person of the New Covenant Resurrected from the Dead
 - 1) Jesus’ New Covenant Promise. **“I am the resurrection and the life; whoever believes in me, even if he dies, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”** John 11:25-26
 - 2) Jesus the First Fruits. “But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep (*Died Trusting in Christ*). For since death came through a human being, the resurrection of the dead came also through a human being. For just as in Adam all die, so too in Christ shall all be brought to life, but each one in proper order: Christ the firstfruits; then, at his coming, those who belong to Christ; then comes the end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed every sovereignty and every authority and power. For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death (*The Curse of Sin*)....”
1 Cor. 15:11:20-28

11. Jesus Commissions His Church to Proclaim His New Covenant to the World

- a. **“All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.”** Matt. 28:18-20
- b. **“Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature. Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned. These signs will accompany those who believe: in my name they will drive out demons, they will speak new languages. They will pick up serpents (with their hands), and if they drink any deadly thing, it will not harm them. They will lay hands on the sick, and they will recover.”** Mark 16:15-18
- c. **“...you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.”** Acts 1:8

12. Jesus Returns to Heaven (*Having Accomplished His Earthly Mission, Jesus Returns to Heaven to Rule & Lead His New Covenant Church!*)
- a. Jesus Ascends into Heaven
 - 1) “So then the Lord Jesus, after he spoke to them, was taken up into heaven and took his seat at the right hand of God.” Mark 16:19-20
 - 2) “Then he led them (out) as far as Bethany, raised his hands, and blessed them. As he blessed them he parted from them and was taken up to heaven” Luke 24:50-51
 - 3) “When he had said this, as they were looking on, he was lifted up, and a cloud took him from their sight” Acts 1:9
 - b. Jesus Exalted / Glorified in Heaven
 - 1) Jesus Enthroned in Heaven. “In times past (*Under the Old Covenant*), God spoke in partial and various ways to our ancestors through the prophets; in these last days, he spoke to us through a son (*Jesus – Son of God*), whom he made heir of all things and through whom he created the universe, who is the refulgence (*Reflection*) of his glory, the very imprint of his being, and who sustains all things by his mighty word. When he had accomplished purification from sins (*Jesus’ Sacrifice, Death & Resurrection*), he took his seat at the right hand of the Majesty on high (*Glorified & Enthroned at Father God’s Right Hand*), as far superior to the angels as the name he has inherited is more excellent than theirs” Heb. 1:1-4
 - 2) Jesus Ordained & Installed as Eternal High Priest
 - a) Accessible to His New Covenant People. “....we have a great high priest who has passed through the heavens, Jesus, the Son of God, let us hold fast to our confession. For we do not have a high priest who is unable to sympathize with our weaknesses, but one who has similarly been tested in every way, yet without sin. So let us confidently approach the throne of grace to receive mercy and to find grace for timely help” Heb. 4:14-16
 - b) Sacred Before God. “It was fitting that we should have such a high priest: holy, innocent, undefiled, separated from sinners, higher than the heavens. He has no need, as did the high priests, to offer sacrifice day after day, first for his own sins and then for those of the people; he did that once for all when he offered himself.” Heb. 7:26-27
 - c) Ministering at Right Hand of God Almighty. “....we have such a high priest, who has taken his seat at the right hand of the throne of the Majesty in heaven, a minister of the sanctuary and of the true tabernacle that the Lord, not man, set up.” Heb. 8:1-2
 - c) Mediator of a New Covenant. “For there is one God. There is also one mediator between God and the human race, Christ Jesus, himself human, who gave himself as ransom for all....” 1 Tim. 2:5-6
 - 3) Jesus Appointed as Head of His Church. “He is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. For in him were created all things in heaven and on earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers; all things were created through him and for him. He is before all things, and in him all things hold together. He is the head of the body, the church. He is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead, that in all things he himself might be preeminent. For in him all the fullness was pleased to dwell, and through him to reconcile all things for him, making peace by the blood of his cross (through him), whether those on earth or those in heaven.”

Col. 1:15-20

- 4) Jesus Exalted as Lord of All Creation. “.....Christ Jesus, Who, though he was in the form of God, did not regard equality with God something to be grasped. Rather, he emptied himself, taking the form of a slave, coming in human likeness; and found human in appearance, he humbled himself, becoming obedient to death, even death on a cross. Because of this, God greatly exalted him and bestowed on him the name that is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bend, of those in heaven and on earth and under the earth, and every tongue confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father”

Phil. 2:5-11

C. Christ’s New Covenant Church

Jesus Christ’s New Covenant is Infinite & Too Extensive to be Adequately Presented in this Study. This Study Highlights the Basic Covenant Elements: 1) Promise, 2) Terms (Faith & Obedience), 3) Sacrifice and 4) Signs/Sealing, of Jesus’ New Covenant in the Church Age.

1. Vision of Christ & His New Covenant Church

Rev. 1:9-20

- a. John’s Vision of Glorified Christ: “..... I saw seven gold lampstands and in the midst of the lampstands one like a son of man (*Jesus Christ Stands at the Center of His Church*)
- 1) “wearing an ankle-length robe (*Christ is High Priest*) with a gold sash around his chest (*Christ is King*).
 - 2) “The hair of his head was as white as white wool or as snow (*Christ is Eternal*), and his eyes were like a fiery flame (*Christ is Omniscient - All Seeing & All Knowing God*).
 - 3) “His feet were like polished brass refined in a furnace (*Christ is Immutable – Never Changing – He is Perfect!*), and his voice was like the sound of rushing water (*Christ Speaks with Divine Authority*).
 - 4) “In his right hand he held seven stars (*Jesus is Lord of His Church*).”
 - 5) “A sharp two-edged sword came out of his mouth (*Word of God – The Creative Force*), and his face shone like the sun at its brightest (*Christ’s Divine Majesty*).”
- b. John Prostrates Himself Before Jesus Christ. “When I caught sight of him, I fell down at his feet as though dead. He (*Jesus Christ*) touched me with his right hand and said, ‘**Do not be afraid. I am the first and the last (Creator & Sustainer), the one who lives (Eternal Living God). Once I was dead (Crucified & Died), but now I am alive forever and ever (Resurrected, Living & Eternal Christ). I hold the keys to death and the netherworld (Christ is Righteous & Final Judge).....**’
- c. Christ the Center of His Church. “**This is the secret meaning of the seven stars you saw in my right hand, and of the seven gold lampstands: the seven stars are the angels of the seven churches, and the seven lampstands are the seven churches.**”
- 1) *Seven is the Number of Perfect Completion.*
 - 2) *Seven Stars in Christ’s Hand (Christ Controls the Presiding Spirits His Churches)*
 - 3) *Seven Golden (Belonging to God) Lampstands (Holders of Light/Spirit) Represent Christ’s Entire New Covenant Church (All Denominations, Nations & Generations) throughout this Age.*

2. Birth of Christ's Church Acts 2
- a. The Holy Spirit Descends Upon Christ's Church Acts 2:1-13
God the Holy Spirit Descends Upon Christ's People, as Jesus Promised, on the Feast of Pentecost. The Feast of Pentecost is Celebrated on the 50th Day Following Feast of First Fruits (Re: Lev. 23:15-22) & Commemorates God Giving the Old Covenant Law to Moses. The Holy Spirit Baptizes Christ's People with Fire on the 50th Day Following Jesus' Resurrection, Instilling His New Covenant Laws into their Innermost Beings and Anointing them to Effectively Proclaim His Gospel.
- 1) "When the time for Pentecost was fulfilled, they were all in one place together (120 Believers Who Remained in Jerusalem as Jesus Instructed. Acts 1:4-5 & 15). And suddenly there came from the sky a noise like a strong driving wind, and it filled the entire house in which they were. Then there appeared to them tongues as of fire, which parted and came to rest on each one of them. And they were all filled with the holy Spirit and began to speak in different tongues, as the Spirit enabled them to proclaim." (Acts 2:1-4)
 - 2) Jews Visiting from the Nations Heard Them Speaking in their Native Tongues
 - a) Some Astonished: "What does this mean?" (Acts 2:12)
 - b) Others Scoff: "They have had too much new wine." (Acts 2:13)
- b. Peter Proclaims the Gospel Acts 2:14-41
(Peter, Who Only a Few Weeks Before Denied Knowing Jesus & Hid from the Authorities in Fear, Boldly Proclaims the Gospel of Jesus Christ After being Filled with the Holy Spirit.)
- 1) Explains the Manifestation of the Holy Spirit Acts 2:14-21
 - a) "You who are Jews, indeed all of you staying in Jerusalem. Let this be known to you, and listen to my words.
 - b) "These people are not drunk, as you suppose, for it is only nine o'clock in the morning.
 - c) "No, this is what was spoken through the prophet Joel: 'It will come to pass in the last days,' God says, 'that I will pour out a portion of my spirit upon all flesh. Your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your young men shall see visions, your old men shall dream dreams. Indeed, upon my servants and my handmaids I will pour out a portion of my spirit in those days, and they shall prophesy. And I will work wonders in the heavens above and signs on the earth below: blood, fire, and a cloud of smoke. The sun shall be turned to darkness, and the moon to blood, before the coming of the great and splendid day of the Lord, and it shall be that everyone shall be saved who calls on the name of the Lord.'" (Quoting Joel 3:1-5) (*"Last Days" Prophesied by Joel, Refer to the New Covenant [Church] Age, Beginning with the Descent of the Holy Spirit on the Day of Pentecost & Ending with Messiah's Second Coming.*)
 - 2) Preaches Jesus is Israel's Promised Messiah Acts 2:22-36
 - a) Jesus Proved His Anointing by Performed the Works of God
 - (1) "You who are Israelites, hear these words. Jesus the Nazorean was a man commended to you by God with mighty deeds, wonders, and signs, which God worked through him in your midst, as you yourselves know."
 - b) Charges Those Jews of Killing their Messiah
 - (1) "This man, delivered up by the set plan and foreknowledge of God, you killed, using lawless men to crucify him."

- c) Declares Jesus Resurrected from the Dead
- (1) “But God raised him up, releasing him from the throes of death, because it was impossible for him to be held by it.
 - (2) Fulfilling David’s Prophecy. “For David says of him: ‘I saw the Lord ever before me, with him at my right hand I shall not be disturbed. Therefore my heart has been glad and my tongue has exulted; my flesh, too, will dwell in hope, because you will not abandon my soul to the netherworld, nor will you suffer your holy one to see corruption. You have made known to me the paths of life; you will fill me with joy in your presence.’ (Quoting Psa. 16:8-11)
 - (a) David Died & His Body Corrupting in His Tomb
 - (b) David’s Descendant (Jesus) was Resurrected. “But since he was a prophet and knew that God had sworn an oath to him that he would set one of his descendants upon his throne, he foresaw and spoke of the resurrection of the Messiah, that neither was he abandoned to the netherworld nor did his flesh see corruption.” (Messiah Jesus *Fulfills the Davidic Covenant by Being David’s Promised Son, Enthroned & Ruling Forever.* 2 Sam. 7:8-17)
 - (3) Testifies as Witnesses of Jesus’ Resurrection. “God raised this Jesus; of this we are all witnesses.”
 - (4) Jesus Exalted at God’s Right Hand. “Exalted at the right hand of God, he received the promise of the holy Spirit from the Father and poured it forth, as you (both) see and hear.”
 - (a) Pouring Out the Holy Spirit Upon His People
 - (b) Fulfilling David’s Prophecy: “For David did not go up into heaven, but he himself said: ‘The Lord (*Yahweh*) said to my Lord (*Messiah Jesus – Son of God*), Sit at my right hand until I make your enemies your footstool.’” (Quoting Psa. 110:1)
 - (5) Declares Jesus as Lord & Messiah. “Therefore let the whole house of Israel know for certain that God has made him both Lord and Messiah, this Jesus whom you crucified.”
 - (a) Accusing Them of Crucifying their Messiah
- 3) Calls the Jews to Repent & Believe in Jesus Acts 2:37-41
- a) Jews, Convicted by the Holy Spirit, Cry Out: “What are we to do, my brothers?”
 - b) Peter Replies (*Giving the Terms of the New Covenant*). “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the holy Spirit. For the promise is made to you and to your children and to all those far off, whomever the Lord our God will call.”
 - (1) *Repent of Your Sins*
 - (2) *Faith: Accept & Believe in Jesus as Messiah – Lord & Savior*
 - (3) *Obedience: Be Baptized into Messiah’s New Covenant*
 - (4) *Receive the New Covenant Promise of the Holy Spirit into Your Life*
 - c) 3,000 Jews Accepted Jesus & Baptized that Day
 - (1) “Those who accepted his message were baptized, and about three thousand persons were added that day.”
- c. The First Church Community Acts 2:42-47
- 1) “They devoted themselves to the teaching of the apostles and to the communal

- life, to the breaking of the bread (*Holy Communion*) and to the prayers”
- 2) “Awe came upon everyone, and many wonders and signs were done through the apostles.....”
 - 3) “And every day the Lord added to their number those who were being saved.”
3. Early Life of Christ’s Church (Church in Jerusalem) Acts 3 – 15
“But you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth.”
 Acts 1:8
- a. Christ’s Church Starts as a Jewish Sect
 - 1) Initial Growth of Christ’s Church Acts 3
 - a) Peter & John Go to the Temple to Pray Acts 3:1-10
 - (1) Confront a Man Crippled from Birth Begging for Alms
 - (2) Peter Says to Man: “I have neither silver nor gold, but what I do have I give you: in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazorean, (rise and) walk.”
 (Acts 3:6) (See “*Perspective*” Footnote Below.)
 - (a) Takes Man’s Hand & Lifts Him Up
 - (b) Man Immediately Healed – Leaping & Praising God
 - b) Peter Preaches in Temple Precincts Acts 3:11-26
 - (1) Identifies Source of Man’s Healing
 - (a) Peter Does Not Take Credit for the Healing. “You Israelites, why are you amazed at this, and why do you look so intently at us as if we had made him walk by our own power or piety?”
 - (b) Points to Lord God of Israel – Who They Rejected. “The God of Abraham, (the God) of Isaac, and (the God) of Jacob, the God of our ancestors, has glorified his servant Jesus whom you handed over and denied in Pilate’s presence, when he had decided to release him.
 - (c) Accuses Jews of Rejecting Lord’s Holy One – Jesus. “You denied the Holy and Righteous One and asked that a murderer be released to you.
 - (d) Accuses Jews of Murdering Jesus. “The author of life you put to death,
 - (e) Declares Jesus was Resurrected from Dead. “but God raised him from the dead; of this we are witnesses.
 - (f) Proclaims Jesus as the Source of Man’s Healing. “And by faith in his (Jesus’) name, this man, whom you see and know, his name has made strong, and the faith that comes through it has given him this perfect health, in the presence of all of you.”
 (*Proof that Jesus is Alive - Since a Dead Man Can Not Heal!*)
 - (2) Invites People to Receive Forgiveness in Jesus’ Name
 - (a) Many Jews Acted Out of Ignorance. “Now I know, brothers, that you acted out of ignorance, just as your leaders did; but God has thus brought to fulfillment what he had announced beforehand through the mouth of all the prophets, that his Messiah would suffer.
 - (b) Calls Jews to Repent of their Sins & Accept Jesus. “Repent, therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be wiped away, and that the Lord may grant you times of refreshment and send

you the Messiah already appointed for you, Jesus, whom heaven must receive until the times of universal restoration (*Fulfillment of Adamic Covenant*) of which God spoke through the mouth of his holy prophets from of old.

- (c) Jesus is the Prophet Spoken of by Moses. “For Moses said: ‘A prophet like me will the Lord, your God, raise up for you from among your own kinsmen; to him you shall listen in all that he may say to you. Everyone who does not listen to that prophet will be cut off from the people.’ (Quoting *Deut. 18:15, 18-19*) (*Jesus is the Fulfillment of God’s Covenant Promise to Moses!*)
 - (d) Jesus Fulfills the Words of All the Prophets. “Moreover, all the prophets who spoke, from Samuel and those afterwards, also announced these days.
 - (e) Messiah Jesus is Their Inheritance as God’s Covenant People. “You are the children of the prophets and of the covenant that God made with your ancestors when he said to Abraham, ‘In your offspring all the families of the earth shall be blessed.’ (Quoting *Gen. 22:18*) (*Jesus is the Fulfillment of God’s Covenant Promise to Abraham!*)
 - (f) Jesus Offers Salvation to His Kinsmen. “For you first, God raised up his servant (*Jesus*) and sent him to bless you by turning each of you from your evil ways.”
- c) The Church Grows. “... many of those who heard the word came to believe and (the) number of men grew to (about) five thousand.” Acts 4:4

Perspective. We see a change in the dynamic (a paradyne shift) that takes place in proclaiming the Word of the Lord from the Old Covenant to the New Covenant.

In the Old Covenant, the Prophets proclaim the Word they received from the Lord by saying: “*Thus says the Lord*’ or ‘*Hear the Word of the Lord*’ or other phases identifying that they were was speaking for the Lord God to His Chosen People.

When Jesus wanted to emphasize what He was about to say, He did not say: ‘*Thus says the Lord*’ (speaking for the Lord), He said: ‘*Amen [So be it] I [Messiah – Son of God] say to you ...*’ (other translations ‘*Verify [Truly] I say unto thee...*’, ‘*I tell you the solemn truth ...*’, etc.) since He *Is* the Lord!

Jesus’ New Covenant People pray and speak ‘*In the Name of Jesus*’ as directed by the Holy Spirit, applying Jesus’ Holy Name and invoking His Authority.

- 2) Initial Attempt by Jewish Authorities to Stop Christ’s Church Acts 4
 - a) Peter & John Arrested & Brought Before the Sanhedrin Acts 4:1-22
 - (1) Chief Priests Question Them. “By what power or by what name have you done this?” (i.e. *Heal the Man Born Cripple.*) (Acts 4:7)
 - (2) Peter Answers:
 - (a) “Leaders of the people and elders: If we are being examined today about a good deed done to a cripple, namely, by what means he was saved, then all of you and all the people of Israel should know that it was in the name of Jesus Christ the Nazorean whom you crucified, whom God raised from the dead; in his name this man stands before you healed.” (Acts 4:8-10)
(*Testifying that the Same Jesus Who they Crucified, was Raised from the Dead, and by Invoking His Name – Proving He is Living & Vital – the Man was Healed.*)

- (b) “He (*Jesus*) is ‘the stone rejected by you, the builders (*Jewish Authorities*), which has become the cornerstone (*Quoting Psa. 118:22*).’ There is no salvation through anyone else, nor is there any other name under heaven given to the human race by which we are to be saved.” (*Acts 4:11-12*) (*Only Jesus, Who Conquered Death, Can Save Mankind from the Curse of Sin & Death.*)
 - (3) Chief Priests Order Peter & John to Stop Preaching in Jesus’ Name
 - (4) Peter & John Refuse. “Whether it is right in the sight of God for us to obey you rather than God, you be the judges. It is impossible for us not to speak about what we have seen and heard.” (*Acts 4:19-20*)
 - b) Peter & John Released & Sent Home (*Church*) Acts 4:23-31
 - (1) People Praise & Give Thanks to the Lord. “And now, Lord, take note of their threats, and enable your servants to speak your word with all boldness, as you stretch forth (your) hand to heal, and signs and wonders are done through the name of your holy servant Jesus.” (*Acts 4:29-30*)
 - (2) Intensification of the Spirit, “As they prayed, the place where they were gathered shook, and they were all filled with the holy Spirit and continued to speak the word of God with boldness.” (*Acts 4:29-31*)
 - c) Gospel Boldly Proclaimed. “With great power the apostles bore witness to the resurrection of the Lord Jesus, and great favor was accorded them all.” Acts 4:33
- 3) Conflict Between New Emerging Church & Old Religious Order Acts 5 - 9
 - a) Holy Spirit Cleanses Church of Deception Acts 5:1-10
 - b) Holy Spirit Intensifies the Anointing on Apostles Acts 5:12-16
 - (1) “Many signs and wonders were done among the people at the hands of the apostles.....” (*Acts 5:12*)
 - (2) “.... more than ever, believers in the Lord, great numbers of men and women, were added to them.” (*Acts 5:14*)
 - (3) “...they even carried the sick out into the streets and laid them on cots and mats so that when Peter came by, at least his shadow might fall on one or another of them. A large number of people from the towns in the vicinity of Jerusalem also gathered, bringing the sick and those disturbed by unclean spirits, and they were all cured.” (*Acts 5:15-16*)
 - c) Apostles Arrested & Imprisoned Acts 5:17-23
 - (1) Visited by an Angel Who Sets Them Free
 - (a) Angel Encourages Them. “Go and take your place in the temple area, and tell the people everything about this life.” (*Acts 5:20*)
 - (2) Apostles. “.... went to the temple early in the morning and taught.” (*Acts 5:21a*)
 - d) Apostles Arrested Again & Tried Before Sanhedrin Acts 5:24-42
 - (1) Charges Against Apostles. “We gave you strict orders (did we not?) to stop teaching in that name. Yet you have filled Jerusalem with your teaching and want to bring this man’s blood upon us.” (*Acts 5:28*)
 - (2) Peter Testifies: “We must obey God rather than men. The God of our ancestors raised Jesus, though you had him killed by hanging him on a tree (*i.e. Wooden Cross*). God exalted him at his right hand as leader and savior to grant Israel repentance and forgiveness of sins. We are witnesses of these things, as is the holy Spirit that God has given to

- those who obey him.” (*Acts 5:29-32*)
- (3) Sanhedrin Infuriated – Wanting to Kill Apostles
 - (a) Gamaliel’s Advice: “Fellow Israelites, be careful what you are about to do to these men. . . . I tell you, have nothing to do with these men, and let them go. For if this endeavor or this activity is of human origin, it will destroy itself. But if it comes from God, you will not be able to destroy them; you may even find yourselves fighting against God.” (*Acts 5:35-39*)
 - (4) Apostles Flogged, Warned & Released
 - (a) Ordered to Stop Speaking in the Name of Jesus
 - (5) Apostles Rejoice & Continue to Proclaim Jesus as Lord. “So they left the presence of the Sanhedrin, rejoicing that they had been found worthy to suffer dishonor for the sake of the name. And all day long, both at the temple and in their homes, they did not stop teaching and proclaiming the Messiah, Jesus.” (*Acts 5:41-42*)
- e) Apostles Appoint Assistants to Minister to a Growing Church *Acts 6:1-7*
- (1) Seven Men Filled with Holy Spirit were Selected
 - (2) Apostles’ Lay Hands on Assistants Ordaining Them
 - (a) One Assistant was Stephen
 - (3) Gospel Continues to be Proclaimed & Church Grows
 - (a) Large Group of Jewish Priests Join Christ’s Church
- f) Persecution of Stephen (*First Martyr*) *Acts 6:8 – 7:60*
- (1) Stephen Performs Signs & Wonders
 - (a) Reveals Extraordinary Wisdom in Debating Jewish Scholars (*Evidence of His Anointing*)
 - (2) Scholars Conspire Against Stephen
 - (3) Stephen Seized & Brought Before the Sanhedrin
 - (a) False Charges Leveled Against Him
 - (b) High Priest Asks Him: “Is this so?” (*Acts 7:1*)
 - (4) Stephen Speaks Before Sanhedrin
 - (a) Recounts His Faith in the Scriptural Accounts & Lord’s Covenants with Abraham, Moses & David
 - Interjecting Times When the Israelites were Unfaithful
 - (b) Convicts Jewish Authorities of Rejecting God & His Messengers. “You stiff-necked people, uncircumcised in heart and ears, you always oppose the holy Spirit; you are just like your ancestors. Which of the prophets did your ancestors not persecute? They put to death those who foretold the coming of the righteous one (*Messiah*), whose betrayers and murderers you have now become. You received the law as transmitted by angels, but you did not observe it.” (*Acts 7:51-53*)
(*Failed to Keep Terms of Old Covenant – Faith & Obedience*)
 - (5) Sanhedrin & Jews Become Infuriated
 - (6) Stephen’s Vision: “But he, filled with the holy Spirit, looked up intently to heaven and saw the glory of God and Jesus standing at the right hand of God, and he said, ‘Behold, I see the heavens opened and the Son of Man standing at the right hand of God.’” (*Acts 7:55-56*)

- (7) Jews Become Enraged
- (a) Take Stephen Outside the City & Stone Him to Death
 - (b) Stephen's Last Words:
 - "Lord Jesus, receive my spirit."
 - "Lord, do not hold this sin against them" (*Acts 7:59-60*)
- g) Church Expands to Jews Living Beyond Jerusalem Acts 8
- (1) Severe Persecution of Church in Jerusalem Acts 8:1-3
 - (a) Church Scatters throughout Judea & Samaria
 - Proclaiming Gospel Wherever They Went
 - (b) Saul Zealous for Jewish Law & Traditions
 - Enters Believers Houses & Drags Them Off to Prison
 - (2) Gospel Proclaimed in Samaria Acts 8:24-25
 - (a) Philip Preaches Gospel, Performing Miracles. "... the crowds paid attention to what was said by Philip when they heard it and saw the signs he was doing. For unclean spirits, crying out in a loud voice, came out of many possessed people, and many paralyzed and crippled people were cured. There was great joy in that city." (*Acts 8:6-8*)
 - Delivers People Under Influence of Sorcerer, Named Simon - Simon Believes & Baptized
 - (b) Peter & John Join Philip in Samaria
 - Lay Hands on New Believers – Imparting the Holy Spirit
 - Rebuke Simon for Wanting to Purchase the Anointing
 - (3) Gospel Spreads to Ethiopia Acts 8:26-40
 - (a) Philip Journeys Toward Gaza
 - Encounters Ethiopian Official Returning Home from Worshiping in Jerusalem (*An Ethiopian Jew*)
 - Ethiopian Reading Prophecy. "Like a sheep he was led to the slaughter, and as a lamb before its shearer is silent, so he opened not his mouth. In (his) humiliation justice was denied him. Who will tell of his posterity? For his life is taken from the earth. (*Re: Isa. 53:7-8*)" (*Acts 8:32-33*)
 - Asks Philip Who Prophecy was About
 - Philip Reveals Prophecy Fulfilled by Messiah Jesus
 - Ethiopian Believes & Baptized
(*Beginning of the Church in Africa*)
 - (b) Spirit of Lord Transports Philip to Azotus in Judea
- h) Conversion of Saul Acts 9:1-19a
- (1) Saul Pursues the Church to Damascus Acts 9:1-9
 - (a) Carrying Letters from High Priest to Synagogues
 - Authorizing Him to Apprehend Followers of Jesus & Bring Them Back to Jerusalem in Chains
 - (b) As Saul Nears Damascus, "... a light from the sky suddenly flashed around him.
 - "He fell to the ground and heard a voice saying to him, 'Saul, Saul, why are you persecuting me?' (*To Persecute Christ's People/Church, is to Personally Persecute Him.*)
 - Saul Asks: "Who are you, sir?"

- Voice Answers: **“I am Jesus, whom you are persecuting.”**
 - Jesus Instructs Saul. **“Now get up and go into the city and you will be told what you must do.”** (*Acts 9:3-6*)
 - Saul Gets Up, But Finds Himself Blind
- (2) Saul Taken into Damascus Acts 9:10-19a
- (a) Saul Remains Blind & Doesn’t Eat or Drink 3 Days
- (b) Lord Appears to Ananias (*Disciple in Damascus*) in a Vision
- Instructs Him to Lay Hands on Saul & Heal Him
 - Ananias Objects – Saul is Persecuting the Church
 - Lord Replies: **“Go, for this man is a chosen instrument of mine to carry my name before Gentiles, kings, and Israelites, and I will show him what he will have to suffer for my name.”** (*Acts 9:15-16*)
- (c) Ananias Obeys Lord
- Lays Hands on Saul. “Saul, my brother, the Lord has sent me, Jesus who appeared to you on the way by which you came, that you may regain your sight and be filled with the holy Spirit.” (*Acts 9:17*)
 - Saul Recovers His Sight & is Baptized
(*Eyes Physically & Spiritually Opened*)
- i) Saul Begins His Ministry in Damascus Acts 9:19b-25
- (1) Proclaims Jesus as Son of God in Synagogues
(*Same Synagogues He was Going to Apprehend Believers*)
- (2) Saul Escapes a Conspiracy to Kill Him
- j) Saul Returns to Jerusalem Acts 9:26-30
- (1) Seat of Jewish Authorities Who Sent Him to Persecute Church
- (2) Seat of Christ’s Church on Earth
- (a) Many Disciples Mistrust Saul
- (b) Barnabas Defends Saul & Apostles Accept Him
- (3) Saul Boldly Proclaims Gospel of Jesus Christ
- (4) Saul Escapes Attempts to Kill Him
- k) Church at Peace in Judea, Galilee & Samaria Acts 9:31
- l) Peter Ministers in Lydda Acts 9:32-35
- (1) Travels throughout Region Proclaiming Gospel
- (2) Heals a Man Paralyzed for 8 Years in Jesus’ Name
- (3) Many Inhabitants in Lydda & Sharon Turn to Jesus
- m) Peter Ministers in Joppa Acts 9:36-43
- (1) Disciples Send Urgent Request for Peter to Come to Joppa
- (2) Peter Arrives Finding a Faithful Disciple, Tabitha, had Died
- (a) She Lay in Upper Room Surrounded by Mourners
- (3) Peter Dismisses Mourners
- (a) Prays (*Determining God’s Will*)
- (b) Turns to Her Body Says: “Tabitha, rise up.” (*Acts 9:40c*)
(*Acting on God’s Will*)
- (c) Tabitha Opens Her Eyes & Rises from Dead
- (4) Many Inhabitants in Joppa Turn to Jesus
- b. Christ’s Universal Church (*Fulfilling the Noahic Covenant*)
- 1) Gospel Spread to Gentiles Acts 10 – 11

- a) Cornelius' Vision Acts 10:1-8
- (1) Cornelius, a Roman Centurion, Stationed in Caesarea
 - (a) A God-Fearing Gentile, Who Prays & Gives Generous Alms to Jews (*God's Chosen People*)
 - (b) Receives Vision of an Angel Instructing Him: "Your prayers and almsgiving have ascended as a memorial offering before God. Now send some men to Joppa and summon one Simon who is called Peter....". (*Acts 10:4-6*)
 - (2) Cornelius Obeys & Sends 2 Servants & Soldier to Fetch Peter
- b) Peter's Vision Acts 10:9-23a
- (1) Peter Sees a Vision While Praying
 - (a) Sheet Full of Unclean Animals Descends from Heaven
 - (b) Voice Says: "Get up, Peter. Slaughter and eat."
 - (c) Peter Replies: "Certainly not, sir. For never have I eaten anything profane and unclean."
(*Peter Observes Dietary Laws of Mosaic Covenant. Re: Lev. 11*)
 - (d) Voice Responds: "What God has made clean, you are not to call profane." (*Acts 10:13-15*)
 - (e) Vision Repeated 3 Times
 - (2) Men Sent by Cornelius Arrive Where Peter is Staying
 - (a) Report that Cornelius: ".....directed by a holy angel to summon you to his house and to hear what you have to say." (*Acts 10:22*)
 - (3) Peter Invites Men to Stay the Night
- c) Peter Travels to Caesarea to Meet Cornelius Acts 10:23b-33
- (1) Cornelius Invites His Relatives & Close Friends to Meet Peter
 - (2) Cornelius, a Centurion, Falls at Peter's Feet in Homage
 - (a) Peter Says: "Get up. I myself am also a human being."
(*Acts 10:26*)
 - (3) Peter Addresses People Gathered in Cornelius' House
 - (a) "You know that it is unlawful for a Jewish man to associate with, or visit, a Gentile, but God has shown me that I should not call any person profane or unclean. And that is why I came without objection when sent for.
 - (b) "May I ask, then, why you summoned me?" (*Acts 10:28-29*)
 - (4) Cornelius Answers Peter
 - (a) Relating the Vision He Received, Instructing Him to Fetch Peter
 - (b) ".....Now therefore we are all here in the presence of God to listen to all that you have been commanded by the Lord."
(*Acts 10:33*)
- d) Peter Proclaims Gospel of Jesus Christ to Gentiles Acts 10:34-43
(*Complying with Jesus' Commission: "Go into the whole world and proclaim the gospel to every creature [Implying Gentiles]."* Mark 16:15)
- (1) "In truth, I see that God shows no partiality. Rather, in every nation whoever fears him and acts uprightly is acceptable to him.
 - (2) "You know the word (that) he sent to the Israelites as he proclaimed peace through Jesus Christ, who is Lord of all, what has happened all over Judea, beginning in Galilee after the baptism that John preached, how God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the holy Spirit and power. He went about doing good and healing all those oppressed by the

devil, for God was with him. We are witnesses of all that he did both in the country of the Jews and (in) Jerusalem.

- (3) “They put him to death by hanging him on a tree (*Wooden Cross*).
 - (4) “This man God raised (on) the third day and granted that he be visible, not to all the people, but to us, the witnesses chosen by God in advance, who ate and drank with him after he rose from the dead.
 - (5) “He commissioned us to preach to the people and testify that he is the one appointed by God as judge of the living and the dead. To him all the prophets bear witness, that everyone who believes in him will receive forgiveness of sins through his name.”
- e) Effects of Peter’s Words Acts 10:44-48
- (1) Holy Spirit Fell Upon People as Peter was Speaking
 - (a) Gentiles Began Speaking in Tongues & Glorifying God
(*Same Manifestations as on Day of Pentecost. Acts 2:1-4*)
 - (b) Jewish Believers Accompanying Peter Astonished that the Holy Spirit was Poured Out Upon Gentiles
 - (2) Peter’s Response
 - (a) “Can anyone withhold the water for baptizing these people, who have received the holy Spirit even as we have?”
 - (b) “He ordered them to be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ.”
(*Acts 10:47-48*) (*Entering into Christ’s New Covenant*)
(*“Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned.” Mark 16:16*)
- f) Question of Gentile Inclusion into Church (*A Jewish Sect*) Acts 11:1-18
- (1) Church Leaders in Jerusalem Confront Peter. “You entered the house of uncircumcised people and ate with them.” (*Acts 11:3*)
(*Forbidden by Jewish Tradition*)
 - (2) Peter Testifies of His Vision & Preaching in Cornelius’ House
 - (a) “As I began to speak, the holy Spirit fell upon them as it had upon us at the beginning, and I remembered the word of the Lord, how he had said, ‘**John baptized with water but you will be baptized with the holy Spirit.**’ (Re: *Acts 1:4-5*)
 - (b) “If then God gave them the same gift he gave to us when we came to believe in the Lord Jesus Christ, who was I to be able to hinder God?” (*Acts 11:15-17*)
 - (3) Church Joyfully Accepts Peter’s Testimony
 - (a) “When they heard this, they stopped objecting and glorified God, saying, ‘God has then granted life-giving repentance to the Gentiles too.’” (*Acts 11:18*) (*The Way is Open for the Gospel of Jesus Christ to be Proclaimed to the Gentile World*)
- g) The Church at Antioch in Syria Acts 11:19-26
(*Confirms Inclusion of Gentiles into Messiah’s Church*)
- (1) Some Jewish Believers Came to Antioch During the Persecution that Followed Stephen’s Death
 - (a) Proclaimed the Gospel Solely to Jews
 - (b) Some Converts Began Proclaiming Gospel to Greeks (*Gentiles*)
 - Great Number Believed & Turned to Lord
 - (2) Church in Jerusalem Sends Barnabas to Investigate

- (a) Finds a Viable Church. “When he arrived and saw the grace of God, he rejoiced and encouraged them all to remain faithful to the Lord in firmness of heart,” (*Acts 11:23*)
 - The Church Continues to Grow
- (b) Barnabas Fetches Saul to Minister with Him
 - Remains in Antioch a Year, Building & Training the Church
- (c) “...it was in Antioch that the disciples were first called Christians.” (*Acts 11:26c*)

Comment. The Hebrew word for Messiah is “*Mashiyach*” or “*Mashicah*” meaning the Lord’s Holy Anointed One, which is translated into Greek (a Gentile Language) as “*Christos*” (which we translate as “Christ”). The term “Christian” means “Anointed Ones” and applies to Christ’s New Covenant People.

- c. Church Confronts Gentile (*Pagan*) World with Christ’s Gospel Acts 12 - 14
 - 1) Herod Agrippa’s Persecution of Christ’s Church Acts 12:1-24
 - a) Arrests Members of the Church
 - (1) Kills James “The Great” (*Son of Zebedee & Brother of John. One of Jesus’ Inter-circle of Disciples Along with Peter & John*)
 - b) Embolden by Unbelieving Jews He Arrests Peter
 - (1) Imprisons Peter Awaiting Trial
 - (a) Chained Between 2 Guards
 - (2) Church Prays for Peter
 - (3) Angel of Lord Visits Peter
 - (a) Unlocks Chains & Rescues Him from Prison
 - (4) Herod Conducts a Search but Unable to Find Peter
 - (a) Executes Peter’s Guards
 - c) Herod’s Destiny
 - (1) Herod Addresses People After Subsequent Victory
 - (2) People Declare: “This is the voice of a god, not of a man.” (*Acts 12:22*)
 - (3) Herod Pridefully Accepts Peoples’ Praise (*Blasphemy*)
 - (4) Angel of Lord Immediately Strikes Herod with a Horrific Death
 - d) Church’s Destiny
 - (1) “But the word of God continued to spread and grow.” (*Acts 12:24*)
 - 2) Barnabas & Saul Return to Jerusalem Acts 12:25
 - 3) Barnabas & Saul Lead the Church’s First Major Missionary Campaign
 - a) Lord Anoints Barnabas & Saul for Missions Acts 13:1-3
 - (1) Church in Antioch (Syria) Worshiping the Lord
 - (a) Holy Spirit Speaks through Gift of Prophecy: “Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul for the work to which I have called them.” (*Acts 13:2*)
 - (2) Barnabas & Saul Anointed by the Laying on of Hands (*Special Anointing for a Particular Service*)
 - (a) Sent Off to Accomplish their Mission
 - b) Mission to Cyprus Acts 13:4-12
 - (1) Proclaimed Word of God in Jewish Synagogues
 - (2) Saul was Also Know as Paul (*Roman Version of His Name*)
 - (3) Proconsul Summons Barnabas & Saul to Hear the Word of God
 - (a) Opposed by an Influential Magician (*Jewish False Prophet*)

- (b) Paul Rebukes Magician: “You son of the devil, you enemy of all that is right, full of every sort of deceit and fraud. Will you not stop twisting the straight paths of (the) Lord? Even now the hand of the Lord is upon you. You will be blind, and unable to see the sun for a time.” (*Acts 13:10-11*)
 - Magician Immediately Struck Blind
- (c) Proconsul Accepts Jesus Christ as Lord
- c) Mission to Antioch in Pisidia (Asia Minor) Acts 13:13-52
 - (1) Paul Preaches in Jewish Synagogue on Sabbath
 - (a) Proclaiming Jesus, Son of David, as Lord & Savior
 - Crucified & Resurrected in Fulfillment of Scriptures
 - Offering Salvation to All Who Believe
 - (b) Jews Invite Paul & Barnabas Back to Speak on Next Sabbath
 - (c) Some Converts to Judaism Accept Word of God
 - (2) Paul Preaches to Gentiles on Next Sabbath
 - (a) Many Gentiles Accept Word of God
 - (b) Unbelieving Jews Jealous & Violent
 - Contradict Paul’s Message
 - (c) Both Paul & Barnabas Rebuke Jews: “It was necessary that the word of God be spoken to you first, but since you reject it and condemn yourselves as unworthy of eternal life, we now turn to the Gentiles.” (*Acts 13:46*)
 - (3) Unbelieving Jews Incite Persecution Against of Paul & Barnabas
 - (a) Expelling Them from the Territory
 - (b) Paul & Barnabas “....shook the dust from their feet in protest against them and went to Iconium.” (*Acts 13:51*)
- d) Mission to Iconium Acts 14:1-7
 - (1) Proclaim Gospel in Jewish Synagogue
 - (a) Great Number of Jews & Gentiles Believe
 - (b) Disbelieving Jews Cause Dissention
 - (2) Stayed for Some Time Spreading the Gospel
 - (a) Word of God Confirmed by Signs & Wonders (Miracles)
 - (b) People Divided: Believers & Unbelievers
 - (3) Paul & Barnabas Escape an Attempt by Unbelievers to Stone Them
- e) Mission to Lystra Acts 14:8-20a
 - (1) Paul Heals a Man Lame from Birth
 - (2) People Respond by Declaring Paul & Barnabas Gods
(*Recognizing the Power but Not its Source - Jesus Christ*)
 - (a) Paul & Barnabas Rent their Clothes (Sign of Blasphemy)
 - Give Credit for Healing to Lord God
 - Implore People to Turn from Pagan God’s to Living God
 - (b) People Persist in their Adoration of Men (*Humanism*)
 - (3) Unbelieving Jews Arrive from Antioch & Iconium
 - (a) Incite People Against Paul & Barnabas
 - Drag Paul Outside City & Stone Him, Leaving Him for Dead
 - (b) Disciples Gather Around Paul & Pray
 - Paul Healed & Returns to City
 - (4) Leave for Derbe the Next Day

- f) Mission to Derbe Acts 14:20b-21a
 - (1) Proclaim the Gospel, Gathering Many Believers
- g) Paul & Barnabas Return to Lystra, Iconium & Antioch (Asia Minor) Acts 14:21b-23
 - (1) Appointing & Preparing Church Leaders in Each City
- h) Paul & Barnabas End their First Mission Acts 14:24-28
 - (1) Return to Church in Antioch in Syria
 - (a) Proclaiming Gospel on their Way
 - (2) Testify to Church. “..... reported what God had done with them and how he had opened the door of faith to the Gentiles. (*Acts 14:27*)
 - (3) Spend Time Edifying & Building Up the Church
- d. First Church Council Acts 15:1-35
 - 1) Controversy Arises Within the Church
 - a) Some Jewish Believers Contend that Gentile Believers Must Undergo Circumcision, as Required by Mosaic Law
 - b) Paul & Barnabas Sent to Church in Jerusalem to Address Controversy
 - 2) Church Convenes in Jerusalem – Apostles, Presbyters & Other Leaders
 - a) Paul & Barnabas Arrive in Jerusalem
 - b) Some Jewish Christians Claim: “It is necessary to circumcise them and direct them to observe the Mosaic law.” (*Acts 15:5*) (*Asserting that Salvation is Predicated upon Man’s Legal Observance of the Law*)
 - c) Council Debates the Issue
 - d) Peter Addresses the Council
 - (1) “My brothers, you are well aware that from early days God made his choice among you that through my mouth the Gentiles would hear the word of the gospel and believe.
 - (2) “And God, who knows the heart, bore witness by granting them the holy Spirit just as he did us. He made no distinction between us (*Jews*) and them (*Gentiles*), for by faith he purified their hearts.
 - (3) “Why, then, are you now putting God to the test by placing on the shoulders of the disciples a yoke that neither our ancestors nor we have been able to bear? (*The Israelites were Unable to Keep the Lord’s Laws*) On the contrary, we believe that we are saved through the grace of the Lord Jesus, in the same way as they.” (*Acts 15:7-11*) (*Man is Saved by Grace [Unearned Favor] of the Lord Jesus Christ, Which is Received by Faith*)
 - e) Paul & Barnabas Testify to Signs & Wonders God Performed Among Gentiles (*Giving Credence to Peter’s Position*)
 - f) Whole Council Silent (*Waiting on the Holy Spirit*)
 - g) James “The Less” (*Bishop of Jerusalem*) then Speaks:
 - (1) Confirms & Supports Peter’s Position
 - (2) Renders His Decision: “It is my judgment, therefore, that we ought to stop troubling the Gentiles who turn to God, but tell them by letter to avoid pollution from idols, unlawful marriage (*Sexual Immorality*), the meat of strangled animals, and blood.” (*Acts 15:19-20*)
 - h) Council Agrees & Prepares the Letter
 - (1) Appoint Representatives to Deliver Council’s Decision to Churches
 - (a) Both by Letter & Word of Mouth

e. Expansion of Church in Gentile Nations

- 1) Gospel of Jesus Christ Spreads into Europe (*Heart of Roman Empire*)
Acts 16:6-10
 - a) Paul Prevented by Holy Spirit from Preaching in Asia Minor
 - b) Paul Receives a Vision from the Lord. “During (the) night Paul had a vision. A Macedonian stood before him and implored him with these words, ‘Come over to Macedonia and help us.’” (*Acts 16:9*)
 - c) Paul Immediately Embarks for Europe to Spread Gospel of Jesus Christ
- 2) Christ’s New Covenant Church Grows

Comment. According to extra-Biblical sources, the Gospel was also proclaimed by Jesus’ 12 Apostles (*Matthias replacing Judas Iscariot Acts 1:15-26*) throughout the Roman Empire and to other areas of the World, including the Caucasus, Armenia and Persia as far as India, etc.

- 3) The Gospel of Jesus Christ Continues to be Spread to the Nations throughout the Centuries to this Day. “**And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached throughout the world as a witness to all nations, and then the end will come.**”
Matt. 24:14

4. Promises & Terms of Christ’s New Covenanta. Terms of Christ’s New Covenant

- 1) We Enter into Christ’s New Covenant by Faith & Obedience. “**Amen, amen, I say to you, no one can enter the kingdom of God without being born of water and Spirit. What is born of flesh is flesh and what is born of spirit is spirit. Do not be amazed that I told you, ‘You must be born from above.’**” John 3:5-7
 - a) Acknowledge that You are a Sinner in Need of Forgiveness, Accepting Full Responsibility for Your Sins (*Do Not Blame Anyone Else*)
 - (1) “For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God.” Rom. 3:22b-23
 - (2) “If we say, ‘We are without sin,’ we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.” 1 John 1:8
 - b) Recognize Jesus Christ as God’s Only Begotten Son
 - (1) “And the Word became flesh (*Jesus of Nazareth*) and made his dwelling among us, and we saw his glory, the glory as of the Father’s only Son, full of grace and truth.” John 1:14
 - (2) “He (*Jesus Christ*) is the image of the invisible God, the firstborn of all creation. For in him were created all things in heaven and on earth, the visible and the invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or powers; all things were created through him and for him.” Col. 1:15-16
 - c) Believe that Jesus Christ Gave His Life to Save Sinners
 - (1) “But God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us. How much more then, since we are now justified by his blood, will we be saved through him from the wrath.” Rom. 5:8-9
 - (2) “He (*Jesus Christ*) himself bore our sins in his body upon the cross, so that, free from sin, we might live for righteousness....” 1 Pet. 2:24
 - d) Personally Repent of Your Sins & Ask the Lord to Forgive Your Sins
 - (1) Jesus’ Lesson on True Repentance Luke 18:10-14
 - (a) “**Two people went up to the temple area to pray; one was a**

- Pharisee and the other was a tax collector.
- (b) “The Pharisee took up his position and spoke this prayer to himself, ‘O God, I thank you that I am not like the rest of humanity—greedy, dishonest, adulterous—or even like this tax collector. I fast twice a week, and I pay tithes on my whole income.’
- (c) “But the tax collector stood off at a distance and would not even raise his eyes to heaven but beat his breast and prayed, ‘O God, be merciful to me a sinner.’
- (d) “I tell you, the latter went home justified, not the former;....”
- (2) “If we acknowledge our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive our sins and cleanse us from every wrongdoing.” 1 John 1:9
- e) Personally Accept Jesus Christ as Lord & Savior, Giving Him Your Life (*Place Your Faith in, Trust in & Rely on Jesus to Provide, Sustain & Secure Your Salvation*)
- (1) “...You belong to this world, but I do not belong to this world. That is why I told you that you will die in your sins. For if you do not believe that I AM, you will die in your sins.” John 8:23-24
- (2) “‘Sirs, what must I do to be saved?’ And they said, ‘Believe in the Lord Jesus and you and your household will be saved.’” Acts 16:30-31
- f) Personally Invite & Receive Holy Spirit into Your Heart (*Innermost Being*)
- (1) “If you then, who are wicked, know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will the Father in heaven give the holy Spirit to those who ask him?” Luke 11:13
- (2) “‘Let anyone who thirsts come to me and drink. Whoever believes in me, as scripture says: ‘Rivers of living water will flow from within him.’ He said this in reference to the Spirit that those who came to believe in him were to receive.....” John 7:37-39
- g) Confess Jesus Christ as Your Personal Lord & Savior
- (1) “Everyone who acknowledges me before others I will acknowledge before my heavenly Father.” Matt. 10:32
- (2) “...if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For one believes with the heart and so is justified, and one confesses with the mouth and so is saved.” Rom. 10:9-10
- h) Be Baptized into Christ’s New Covenant
- (1) “Whoever believes and is baptized will be saved; whoever does not believe will be condemned” Mark 16:16
- (2) “Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the holy Spirit” Acts 2:38
- 2) We Live & Grow in Christ’s New Covenant by Faith & Obedience
- a) Jesus is the Focus & Source of Our Faith
- (1) “.....let us rid ourselves of every burden and sin that clings to us and persevere in running the race that lies before us while keeping our eyes fixed on Jesus, the leader and perfecter of faith....” Heb. 12:1-2
- (2) “You were buried with him in baptism, in which you were also raised with him through faith in the power of God, who raised him from the

dead. And even when you were dead (in) transgressions..., he brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions”
Col. 2:12-13

- (3) “In him we live and move and have our being...” Acts 17:28
- b) Live by Faith in the Promises of God by the Holy Spirit
- (1) “So we are always courageous, although we know that while we are at home in the body we are away from the Lord, for we walk by faith, not by sight.” 2 Cor. 5:6-7
- (2) “... there is no condemnation for those who are in Christ Jesus. For the law of the spirit of life in Christ Jesus has freed you from the law of sin and death.... For those who live according to the flesh are concerned with the things of the flesh, but those who live according to the spirit with the things of the spirit.” Rom. 8:1-5
- (3) “I urge you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to offer your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and pleasing to God, your spiritual worship. Do not conform yourselves to this age but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and pleasing and perfect.” Rom. 12:1-2
- (4) “So submit yourselves to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you. Draw near to God, and he will draw near to you....” James 4:7-8
- (5) “... live by the Spirit and you will certainly not gratify the desire of the flesh.” Gal. 5:16
- (6) “My children, I am writing this to you so that you may not commit sin. But if anyone does sin, we have an Advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous one. He is expiation for our sins, and not for our sins only but for those of the whole world.” 1 John 2:1-2
- c) Perform the Works of God as Led by the Holy Spirit
- (1) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes in me will do the works that I do, and will do greater ones than these, because I am going to the Father. And whatever you ask in my name, I will do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son.” John 14:12-13
- (a) *What Can Each of Us Do That Jesus Could Not Do? We Can Testify that We, Sinners, have been Saved by the Grace of God through the Sacrifice of His Righteous One!* Eph. 2:6-10
- (b) *The Same Holy Spirit Who Performed the Works of God through Jesus of Nazareth, Lives in Us, Anointing Us to Perform the Works of God in Jesus’ Name.*
- (2) Share Your Faith with Unbelievers Mark 16:15-18
- (a) By the Way We Live Our Lives. “You are the salt of the earth. But if salt loses its taste, with what can it be seasoned? It is no longer good for anything but to be thrown out and trampled underfoot.” Matt. 5:13
(Salt is Used to Heal, Preserve & Flavor – Remain Salty!)
- (b) By Sharing Our Personal Testimonies, Proclaiming Jesus as Lord. “Everyone who acknowledges me before others I will acknowledge before my heavenly Father” Matt. 10:32
- *If They are Receptive, Lead Them in Prayer to Receive Jesus as Lord & Savior*

- (c) By Our Good Works. “You are the light of the world. A city set on a mountain cannot be hidden. Nor do they light a lamp and then put it under a bushel basket; it is set on a lampstand, where it gives light to all in the house. Just so, your light must shine before others, that they may see your good deeds and glorify your heavenly Father.” Matt. 5:14-16
- (3) Encourage, Build Up & Support Other Believers
- (a) “This is my commandment: love one another as I love you.” John 15:12
- (b) “Religion that is pure and undefiled before God and the Father is this: to care for orphans and widows in their affliction and to keep oneself unstained by the world.” James 1:27
- (c) “What good is it, my brothers, if someone says he has faith but does not have works? Can that faith save him? If a brother or sister has nothing to wear and has no food for the day, and one of you says to them, ‘Go in peace, keep warm, and eat well,’ but you do not give them the necessities of the body, what good is it? So also faith of itself, if it does not have works, is dead” (*Good Works are the Natural Result of Faith*) James 2:14-17
- (d) “Is anyone among you suffering? He should pray. Is anyone in good spirits? He should sing praise. Is anyone among you sick? He should summon the presbyters of the church, and they should pray over him and anoint (him) with oil in the name of the Lord, and the prayer of faith will save the sick person, and the Lord will raise him up. If he has committed any sins, he will be forgiven.” James 5:13-15
- (e) “Give and gifts will be given to you; a good measure, packed together, shaken down, and overflowing, will be poured into your lap. For the measure with which you measure will in return be measured out to you.” Luke 6:38
(*The Lord Promises that as We Invest in the Furtherance of His Gospel, He Will Prosper Us So We Can Give Even More Generously into His Work. Phil. 4:14-20*)
- b. Sampling of New Covenant Promises
- 1) Selected Promises by Our Loving & All Powerful Savior
- a) “For God so loved the world that he gave his only Son, so that everyone who believes in him might not perish but might have eternal life. For God did not send his Son into the world to condemn the world, but that the world might be saved through him. Whoever believes in him will not be condemned (*Forgiven of their Sins*), but whoever does not believe has already been condemned (*Remaining in their Sins*), because he has not believed in the name of the only Son of God (*To Redeem them of their Sins*).” John 3:16-18
(*Jesus Promises Eternal Salvation to Those Who Place their Trust in Him*)
- b) “No one has greater love than this, to lay down one’s life for one’s friends. You are my friends if you do what I command you.” John 15:13-14
(*Jesus Promises a Close Personal Relationship with His People*)
- c) “For the Son of Man did not come to be served but to serve and to give his life as a ransom for many.” Mark 10:45

- (*Jesus Promises to Pay the Ransom for Our Eternal Souls*)
- d) “Come to me, all you who labor and are burdened, and I will give you rest. Take my yoke upon you and learn from me, for I am meek and humble of heart; and you will find rest for your selves. For my yoke is easy, and my burden light (*and Delightful*).” Matt. 11:28-30
(*Jesus Promises to Relieve Us from Burdens of Sin if We Follow Him*)
- e) “Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever hears my word and believes in the one who sent me has eternal life and will not come to condemnation, but has passed from death to life. John 5:24
(*Jesus Promises Eternal Life to Those Who Believe His Words*)
- f) “Everyone who acknowledges me before others I will acknowledge before my heavenly Father. Matt. 10:32
(*Jesus Promises to Personally Acknowledge Us Before Father God*)
- g) “Therefore I tell you, all that you ask for in prayer, believe that you will receive it and it shall be yours.” Mark 11:24
(*Jesus Promises to Answer Our Prayers of Faith*)
- h) “Again, (amen,) I say to you, if two of you agree on earth about anything for which they are to pray, it shall be granted to them by my heavenly Father. For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.” Matt. 18:19-20
(*Jesus Promises to Join Us in Prayers of Agreement*)
- i) “..... Amen, amen, I say to you, whatever you ask the Father in my name he will give you. Until now you have not asked anything in my name; ask and you will receive, so that your joy may be complete.” John 16:23-24
(*Jesus Promises Us Power of Attorney to Use His Name*)
- j) “Everything that the Father gives me will come to me, and I will not reject anyone who comes to me, because I came down from heaven not to do my own will but the will of the one who sent me. And this is the will of the one who sent me, that I should not lose anything of what he gave me, but that I should raise it (on) the last day. For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him may have eternal life, and I shall raise him (on) the last day.” John 6:37-40
(*Jesus Promises to Accept Us, Secure Our Salvation & Resurrect Us Unto Eternal Life*)
- k) “My sheep (*Jesus’ New Covenant People*) hear my voice; I know them, and they follow me. I give them eternal life, and they shall never perish. No one can take them out of my hand. My Father, who has given them to me, is greater than all, and no one can take them out of the Father’s hand. The Father and I are one.” John 10:27-30
(*Jesus Promises to Give, Secure & Sustain Our Eternal Salvation*)
- l) “All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age.” Matt. 28:18 & 20b
(*Our Omnipotent Lord Promises to be with Us Always*)
- m) “I am the resurrection and the life; whoever believes in me, even if he dies, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?” John 11:25-26
(*Jesus – God the Son – Personally Guarantees to Resurrect & Give Eternal Life to His New Covenant People*)
- n) “Do not let your hearts be troubled. You have faith in God; have faith also

in me. In my Father's house there are many dwelling places. If there were not, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back again and take you to myself, so that where I am you also may be." John 14:1-3

(Jesus Promises to Return from Heaven & Take Us to be With Him)

2) Selected Promises of the Holy Spirit

a) "If you love me, you will keep my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth, which the world cannot accept, because it neither sees nor knows it. But you know it, because it remains with you, and will be in you." John 14:15-17

(Jesus Promises that God the Holy Spirit Will Indwell His People)

b) "The Advocate, the holy Spirit that the Father will send in my name—he will teach you everything and remind you of all that (I) told you."

John 14:26 *(The Holy Spirit Will Reveal Jesus to Us, Instructing Us in His Ways & His Will for Our Lives)*

c) "But I tell you the truth, it is better for you that I go (Back to Heaven). For if I do not go, the Advocate will not come to you. But if I go, I will send him to you. And when he comes he will convict the world in regard to sin and righteousness and condemnation:" John 16:7-8

(Everyone Who Yields to the Conviction of the Holy Spirit, Repents of their Sins, Seeks God's Forgiveness Trusting in Jesus, the Holy Spirit Will Lead into Righteousness.)

d) Jesus Promises the Holy Spirit. "... he (*Jesus*) enjoined them not to depart from Jerusalem, but to wait for 'the promise of the Father about which you have heard me speak; for John baptized with water, but in a few days you will be baptized with the holy Spirit.' you will receive power when the holy Spirit comes upon you, and you will be my witnesses in Jerusalem, throughout Judea and Samaria, and to the ends of the earth'" Acts 1:4-5 & 8

e) Jesus' Promise Fulfilled. "When the time for Pentecost was fulfilled, they were all in one place together. And suddenly there came from the sky a noise like a strong driving wind, and it filled the entire house in which they were. Then there appeared to them tongues as of fire, which parted and came to rest on each one of them. And they were all filled with the holy Spirit and began to speak in different tongues, as the Spirit enabled them to proclaim" Acts 2:1-4

f) Peter, Filled with the Holy Spirit, Proclaims: "Repent and be baptized, every one of you, in the name of Jesus Christ for the forgiveness of your sins; and you will receive the gift of the holy Spirit. For the promise is made to you and to your children and to all those far off, whomever the Lord our God will call." Acts 2:38-39

g) "... the Spirit too comes to the aid of our weakness; for we do not know how to pray as we ought, but the Spirit itself intercedes with inexpressible groanings. And the one who searches hearts knows what is the intention of the Spirit, because it intercedes for the holy ones (*Christ's New Covenant People*) according to God's will." Rom. 8:26-27

3) Selection of God's Promises of Redemption & Restoration - Fulfilling God's Eternal Covenant through Jesus Christ's Salvific Work

- a) Forgiveness of Sins
- (1) “If we say, ‘We are without sin,’ we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. If we acknowledge our sins, he is faithful and just and will forgive our sins and cleanse us from every wrongdoing.”
1 John 1:8-9
 - (2) “And even when you were dead (in) transgressions and the uncircumcision of your flesh, he brought you to life along with him, having forgiven us all our transgressions; obliterating the bond against us (*Curse of Sin*), with its legal claims, which was opposed to us, he also removed it from our midst, nailing it to the cross; despoiling the principalities and the powers, he made a public spectacle of them, leading them away in triumph by it.” Col. 2:13-15
- b) Salvation / Redemption
- (1) “..., if you confess with your mouth that Jesus is Lord and believe in your heart that God raised him from the dead, you will be saved. For one believes with the heart and so is justified, and one confesses with the mouth and so is saved.” Rom. 10:9-10
 - (2) “For by grace (Unearned Favor) you have been saved through faith, and this is not from you; it is the gift of God; it is not from works, so no one may boast. For we are his handiwork, created in Christ Jesus for the good works that God has prepared in advance, that we should live in them.” Eph. 2:8-10
- c) Justification (Satisfying God’s Holy & Righteous Justice)
- (1) “For there is no distinction; all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God. They are justified freely by his grace through the redemption in Christ Jesus, whom God set forth as an expiation (*Paying the Penalty for Sin in Full*), through faith, by his blood, to prove his righteousness (*Justice*) because of the forgiveness of sins previously committed, through the forbearance of God—to prove his righteousness in the present time, that he might be righteous and justify the one who has faith in Jesus.” Rom. 3:22b-26
 - (2) “Therefore, since we have been justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have gained access (by faith) to this grace in which we stand, and we boast in hope of the glory of God.” Rom. 5:1-2
- d) Reconciliation / Restoration with a Holy God
- (1) “But God proves his love for us in that while we were still sinners Christ died for us. How much more then, since we are now justified by his blood, will we be saved through him from the wrath (*Eternal Damnation*). Indeed, if, while we were enemies, we were reconciled to God through the death of his Son, how much more, once reconciled, will we be saved by his life. Not only that, but we also boast of God through our Lord Jesus Christ, through whom we have now received reconciliation.” Rom. 5:8-11
 - (2) “So whoever is in Christ is a new creation: the old things have passed away; behold, new things have come. And all this is from God, who has reconciled us to himself through Christ and given us the ministry of reconciliation, namely, God was reconciling the world to himself in Christ, not counting their trespasses against them and entrusting to us

- the message of reconciliation.” 2 Cor. 5:17-19
- e) Sanctification (Sacred Before a Holy God)
- (1) “But now that you have been freed from sin and have become slaves of God, the benefit that you have leads to sanctification, and its end is eternal life.” Rom. 6:22
- (2) “That is what some of you used to be (*Vile Sinners*); but now you have had yourselves washed, you were sanctified, you were justified in the name of the Lord Jesus Christ and in the Spirit of our God.” 1 Cor. 6:11
- f) Consecration (Set Apart as God’s Holy People)
- (1) “... we have been consecrated through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. Every priest stands daily at his ministry, offering frequently those same sacrifices that can never take away sins. But this one (*Jesus – High Priest*) offered one sacrifice for sins, and took his seat forever at the right hand of God; now he waits until his enemies are made his footstool. For by one offering he has made perfect forever those who are being consecrated.” Heb. 10:10-14
- (2) “But you are ‘a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people of his own, so that you may announce the praises’ of him who called you out of darkness into his wonderful light. Once you were ‘no people’ but now you are God’s people; you ‘had not received mercy’ but now you have received mercy.” 1 Pet. 2:9-10
- g) Perseverance / Assurance
- (1) “What will separate us from the love of Christ? Will anguish, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or the sword? No, in all these things we conquer overwhelmingly through him who loved us. For I am convinced that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor present things, nor future things, nor powers, nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature will be able to separate us from the love of God in Christ Jesus our Lord.” Rom. 8:35-39
- (2) “Whoever acknowledges that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in him and he in God. We have come to know and to believe in the love God has for us. God is love, and whoever remains in love remains in God and God in him. In this is love brought to perfection among us, that we have confidence on the day of judgment because as he is, so are we in this world.” 1 John 4:15-17
- h) Promise of Eternal Life
- (1) “For the wages of sin is death, but the gift of God is eternal life in Christ Jesus our Lord.” Rom. 6:23
- (2) “But now Christ has been raised from the dead, the firstfruits of those who have fallen asleep. For since death came through a human being, the resurrection of the dead came also through a human being. For just as in Adam all die, so too in Christ shall all (*Believers*) be brought to life, but each one in proper order: Christ the firstfruits; then, at his coming, those who belong to Christ; then comes the end, when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed every sovereignty and every authority and power. For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be

destroyed is death”

1 Cor. 15:20-26

4) Plus Many Others - Filling Our Lives with His Promises Unto Eternal Life

5. Sacrifice of Christ’s New Covenant

a. Jesus – God the Son – Offered Himself as a Holy, Perfect & Eternal Sacrifice
(*Christ Jesus Fulfills the Salvific Precepts of God’s Eternal Covenant; Which God Revealed to Mankind through His Covenants.*)

1) Christ Jesus’ Holy & Perfect Sacrifice Heb. 9:11-28

a) Christ is High Priest of His New Covenant

(1) “But when Christ came as high priest of the good things that have come to be (*i.e. His New Covenant*), passing through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made by hands, that is, not belonging to this creation, he entered once for all into the (Heavenly) sanctuary, not with the blood of goats and calves but with his own blood, thus obtaining eternal redemption.”

(a) *Jesus Entered God’s Heavenly Sanctuary (God’s Throne Room)*

- “Once For All” (*God’s Eternal Sacrifice*)
- “With His Own Blood” (*God’s Holy & Perfect Sacrifice*)
- *Achieving Eternal Redemption for Mankind*

(2) “For if the blood of goats and bulls (*Sacrifices of Old Covenant*) and the sprinkling of a heifer’s ashes (*Cleansing Under Old Covenant*) can sanctify those who are defiled so that their flesh is cleansed, how much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal spirit offered himself unblemished to God, cleanse our consciences from dead works to worship the living God.”

b) Christ is Mediator of His New Covenant

(1) “For this reason he is mediator of a new covenant: since a death has taken place for deliverance from transgressions under the first covenant, those who are called may receive the promised eternal inheritance.” (*Christ Fulfilled Promises of Old Covenant by His Death, Achieving Eternal Redemption for His People.*)

c) God’s Covenants Inaugurated by Blood

(1) “Now where there is a will (*Covenant*), the death of the testator must be established. For a will takes effect only at death; it has no force while the testator is alive.”

(*A Will Does Not Go Into Effect Until Owner/Testator Dies*)

(2) “Thus not even the first covenant was inaugurated without blood. When every commandment had been proclaimed by Moses to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves (and goats), together with water and crimson wool and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book itself and all the people, saying, ‘This is the blood of the covenant which God has enjoined upon you.’ In the same way, he sprinkled also the tabernacle and all the vessels of worship with blood.”

(3) “According to the law almost everything is purified by blood, and without the shedding of blood there is no forgiveness.”

Comment. *Why Blood Sacrifices?*

The curse of sin is death (complete and eternal separation from a Holy God) (Gen. 2:15-17, Gen. 3:17-

19), which is transmitted to every human being through the sin tainted blood of Adam (“Original Sin”) (Rom. 5:12-14). All humans not only inherited a sinful nature, but have also committed personal sins (Rom. 1:18-32, Rom. 3:23), and are accountable before a Holy God.

Blood is the essence of life (Lev. 17:8-14). Under the Old Covenants the Lord requires man to sacrifice the blood of innocent animals to make atonement (i.e. cover their sins) for a particular period of time. These blood sacrifices prefigured the Lord’s Eternal Sacrifice established by the Godhead in His Eternal Covenant.

Jesus (God the Son) was conceived as a human male (Son of Man) within the Virgin Mary by God the Holy Spirit (Luke 1:26-38), transmitting Holy/Divine Blood into Him. Jesus never committed any personal sin throughout His entire life of Earth (1 Pet. 2:22-24). Jesus then offered Himself as a Holy and Perfect Blood Sacrifice, not to cover man’s sins for a period of time, but to take away sin forever from everyone who would personally accept Him and His Sacrifice (Heb. 7:26-28, Rom. 10:8-13).

- (a) Jesus’ Blood Cleanses Us. “But if we walk in the light as he is in the light, then we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of his Son Jesus cleanses us from all sin.” 1 John 1:7
- (b) Jesus’ Blood Redeems Us. “In him we have redemption by his blood, the forgiveness of transgressions, in accord with the riches of his grace that he lavished upon us.” Eph. 1:7-8a
- (c) Jesus’ Blood Reconciles Us to God. “For in him all the fullness was pleased to dwell, and through him to reconcile all things for him, making peace by the blood of his cross (through him), whether those on earth or those in heaven.” Col. 1:19-20
- d) Jesus Christ’s Superior Sacrifice
 - (1) “Therefore, it was necessary for the copies of the heavenly things to be purified by these rites (i.e. *The Old Covenant*), but the heavenly things themselves by better sacrifices than these.”
 - (2) “For Christ did not enter into a sanctuary made by hands, a copy of the true one, but heaven itself, that he might now appear before God on our behalf.”
 - (3) “Not that he might offer himself repeatedly, as the high priest enters each year into the sanctuary with blood that is not his own; if that were so, he would have had to suffer repeatedly from the foundation of the world. But now once for all he has appeared at the end of the ages to take away sin by his sacrifice.”
 - (4) “Just as it is appointed that human beings die once, and after this the judgment, so also Christ, offered once to take away the sins of many, will appear a second time, not to take away sin but to bring salvation to those who eagerly await him.”
- 2) Jesus Christ’s One Eternal Sacrifice Heb. 10:1-18
 - a) Sacrifices Under Mosaic Covenant Heb. 10:1-4
 - (1) “Since the law has only a shadow of the good things to come, and not the very image of them, it can never make perfect those who come to worship by the same sacrifices that they offer continually each year. Otherwise, would not the sacrifices have ceased to be offered, since the worshipers, once cleansed, would no longer have had any consciousness of sins? But in those sacrifices there is only a yearly remembrance of sins, for it is impossible that the blood of bulls and goats take away sins.”
 - (a) *Sacrifices Offered Continually Under Old Covenant*
 - *Unable to Perfect Salvation*

- *Unable to Cleanse from Sin*
 - *Only an Annual Recalling of Sins (Day of Atonement)*
 - *When Israelites Examine Themselves for Sins, Repent & Seek Forgiveness*
 - *Impossible for Blood of Animals to Take Away Sin*
(Animals are Temporal Beings, Subject to Sinful Man, this World of Sin & Death. They Can Not Provide Salvation & Eternal Life to Man!)
- b) God the Son's Testimony Heb. 10:5-18
- (1) "For this reason, when he (*God the Son*) came into the world, he said: 'Sacrifice and offering you did not desire, but a body you prepared for me; holocausts and sin offerings you took no delight in' (Re: *Psa. 40:7*)."
- (a) *Why Didn't God Delight in Animal Sacrifices, when He Prescribed Them Under the Law?*
- *Law Revealed the Seriousness & Detestability of Sin*
 - *Law Confirmed the Penalty of Sin – Death*
 - *Law Prescribed the Means of Atonement – Death of Innocent Sacrifices*
 - *Law Points to God's Promised Holy & Perfect Sacrifice, His Son Jesus; So that People would Recognize & Accept Him*
- (b) Father God Prepared a Sacrificial Body for His Son - Jesus
- (2) "Then I (*God the Son*) said, 'As is written of me in the scroll, Behold, I come to do your will, O God' (Re: *Psa. 40:8-9*)."
(God the Son Accepts Father God's Means of Salvation for Mankind, as Prescribed in God's Eternal Covenant & Revealed in the Law.)
- (3) "First he says, 'Sacrifices and offerings, holocausts and sin offerings, you neither desired nor delighted in.' These are offered according to the law. Then he says, 'Behold, I (*God the Son*) come to do your will.' He takes away the first to establish the second."
- (a) *Jesus (Son of Man) Offers Himself According to the Prescription & Letter of the Law (i.e. Blood Sacrifice. Lev. 1 - 7)*
- *Fulfilling All the Precepts of the Law (Old Covenant)*
 - *Taking Away the Old Covenant to Establish His New Covenant*
- (4) "By this 'will,' we have been consecrated through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all."
- (5) "Every priest stands daily at his ministry, offering frequently those same sacrifices that can never take away sins. But this one (Jesus) offered one sacrifice for sins, and took his seat forever at the right hand of God; now he waits until his enemies are made his footstool."
- (a) *Jesus Christ Offered One Eternal Sacrifice for Sins of World*
- (b) *Jesus Christ Reigns with God Almighty*
- *Expanding His Kingdom through His New Covenant People Until its Victorious Fruition*
- (6) "For by one offering he has made perfect forever those who are being consecrated." (*Sanctifying & Setting Apart His People for God*)
- (7) God the Holy Spirit's Testimony

- (a) “The holy Spirit also testifies to us, for after saying: ‘This is the covenant I will establish with them after those days, says the Lord: I will put my laws in their hearts, and I will write them upon their minds,’ he also says: ‘Their sins and their evildoing I will remember no more.’ (Re: Jer. 31:33-34)”
- *Holy Spirit Indwells Us Instilling God’s Laws in Our Hearts*
 - *Christ’s One Eternal Salvation Cleanses Us from All Sin*
 - *God Forgives & Forgets All Our Sins*
- (b) Jesus Christ Bore All Our Sins on the Cross
- “He himself bore our sins in his body upon the cross, so that, free from sin, we might live for righteousness. By his wounds you have been healed.” 1 Pet. 2:24
 - “For Christ also suffered for sins once, the righteous for the sake of the unrighteous, that he might lead you to God. Put to death in the flesh, he was brought to life in the spirit.” 1 Pet. 3:18
- (8) “Where there is forgiveness of these, there is no longer offering for sin.” (*Jesus Christ’s One Sacrifice is All Sufficient to Eternally Redeem Us from All Our Sins.*)
- b. Christ’s New Covenant Church Celebrates His Sacrifice
- 1) Church Celebrates Sacrament of Holy Communion Inaugurated by Jesus Christ
Matt. 26:26-30; Mark 14:22-26; Luke 22:14-20
 - a) “They devoted themselves to the teaching of the apostles and to the communal life, to the breaking of the bread and to the prayers.” Acts 2:42
 - b) “On the first day of the week when we gathered to break bread”
Acts 20:7a
 - 2) Church’s Sacrament of Holy Communion
 - a) The Prayer of Agreement in Communion: “**Again, (amen,) I say to you, if two of you agree on earth about anything for which they are to pray, it shall be granted to them by my heavenly Father. For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.**”
Matt. 18:19-20
 - (1) *Communion Presented by Faith: “The Body/Blood of Christ”*
 - (2) *Communion Received by Faith: “Amen!” (Yes! I Agree! So be it!)*
 - b) Instruction on Celebrating Holy Communion 1 Cor. 11:17-34
 - (1) “The cup of blessing that we bless, is it not a participation in the blood of Christ? The bread that we break, is it not a participation in the body of Christ?” 1 Cor. 10:16
 - (2) “For I received from the Lord what I also handed on to you, that the Lord Jesus, on the night he was handed over, took bread, and, after he had given thanks, broke it and said, **‘This is my body that is for you. Do this in remembrance of me.’** In the same way also the cup, after supper, saying, **‘This cup is the new covenant in my blood. Do this, as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.’** For as often as you eat this bread and drink the cup, you proclaim the death of the Lord until he comes.” (1 Cor. 11:23-26)
- c. Personalization of Christ’s Sacrifice in Our Daily Lives
- 1) “We know that our old self was crucified with him, so that our sinful body

might be done away with, that we might no longer be in slavery to sin.”
Rom. 6:6

- 2) “I urge you therefore, brothers, by the mercies of God, to offer your bodies as a living sacrifice, holy and pleasing to God, your spiritual worship. Do not conform yourselves to this age but be transformed by the renewal of your mind, that you may discern what is the will of God, what is good and pleasing and perfect.” Rom. 12:1-2
- 3) “... I have been crucified with Christ; yet I live, no longer I, but Christ lives in me; insofar as I now live in the flesh, I live by faith in the Son of God who has loved me and given himself up for me.” Gal. 2:19-20

6. Signs & Sealing of Christ’s People into His New Covenant

a. Believers Born Anew into Family of God

- 1) Born as Children of God. “But to those who did accept him (*Jesus of Nazareth as the Word of God*) he gave power to become children of God, to those who believe in his name, who were born not by natural generation nor by human choice nor by a man’s decision but of God.” John 1:12-13
- 2) Jesus’ Revelation of the New Birth John 3:1-8
 - a) Nicodemus (*Religious Leader & Member of Sanhedrin*) Says to Jesus: “Rabbi, we know that you are a teacher who has come from God, for no one can do these signs that you are doing unless God is with him.”
 - b) Jesus Replies: “**Amen, amen, I say to you, no one can see the kingdom of God without being born from above.**”
 - c) Nicodemus Questions Jesus: “How can a person once grown old be born again? Surely he cannot reenter his mother’s womb and be born again, can he?”
 - d) Jesus Answers: “**Amen, amen, I say to you, no one can enter the kingdom of God without being born of water (*Baptism of Repentance*) and Spirit (*Receiving the Holy Spirit by Faith*). **What is born of flesh** (*Natural / Physical Birth*) **is flesh and what is born of spirit** (*Spiritual Birth*) **is spirit. Do not be amazed that I told you, ‘You must be born from above.’ The wind blows where it wills, and you can hear the sound it makes, but you do not know where it comes from or where it goes; so it is with everyone who is born of the Spirit.**”**
- 3) Adopted as Sons & Daughters of God. “For those who are led by the Spirit of God are children of God. For you did not receive a spirit of slavery to fall back into fear, but you received a spirit of adoption, through which we cry, ‘Abba, Father!’ The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit that we are children of God, and if children, then heirs, heirs of God and joint heirs with Christ....” Rom. 8:14-17
- 4) Brothers with Christ Jesus – Son of God. “For it was fitting that he (*Jesus - Son of God*), for whom and through whom all things exist, in bringing many children to glory, should make the leader (*Jesus – Son of Man*) to their salvation perfect through suffering (*Blood Sacrifice*). He who consecrates and those who are being consecrated (*His New Covenant People*) all have one origin. Therefore, he is not ashamed to call them ‘brothers’” Heb. 2:10-11
- 5) Believing We are Children of God. “See what love the Father has bestowed on us that we may be called the children of God. Yet so we are. The reason the world does not know us is that it did not know him. Beloved, we are God’s

children now; what we shall be has not yet been revealed. We do know that when it is revealed we shall be like him, for we shall see him as he is.”

1 John 3:1-2

- 6) Living as Children of God. “Everyone who believes that Jesus is the Christ is begotten by God, and everyone who loves the father loves (also) the one begotten by him. In this way we know that we love the children of God when we love God and obey his commandments. For the love of God is this, that we keep his commandments. And his commandments are not burdensome, for whoever is begotten by God conquers the world.” 1 John 5:1-4a

b. Spiritual Descendants of Abraham

(Inheriting All the Covenant Promises the Lord God Made with Abraham, Isaac, Jacob (Israel), Moses, David, their Kinsmen & Descendants.)

- 1) “For through faith you are all children of God in Christ Jesus. For all of you who were baptized into Christ have clothed yourselves with Christ. There is neither Jew nor Greek, there is neither slave nor free person, there is not male and female; for you are all one in Christ Jesus. And if you belong to Christ, then you are Abraham’s descendant, heirs according to the promise.”

Gal. 3:26-29

c. Christ’s New Covenant People Sealed by the Holy Spirit

- 1) Holy Spirit Indwells God’s New Covenant People as Living Temples

(As the Spirit of God Filled & Indwelt the Tabernacle/Temple Under the Mosaic Covenant; So, God the Holy Spirit Fills & Indwells His People Under Christ’s New Covenant.)

- a) Corporately as the Body of Christ *(Mystical Body of Christ: All Born Again Christians from the First Century Until the End of the Age.)*

- (1) “As a body is one though it has many parts, and all the parts of the body, though many, are one body, so also Christ. For in one Spirit we were all baptized into one body, whether Jews or Greeks, slaves or free persons, and we were all given to drink of one Spirit.”

1 Cor. 12:12-13

- (2) “So then you are no longer strangers and sojourners, but you are fellow citizens with the holy ones and members of the household of God, built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, with Christ Jesus himself as the capstone. Through him the whole structure is held together and grows into a temple sacred in the Lord; in him you also are being built together into a dwelling place of God in the Spirit.”

Eph. 2:19-22

- (3) “And he gave some as apostles, others as prophets, others as evangelists, others as pastors and teachers, to equip the holy ones for the work of ministry, for building up the body of Christ, until we all attain to the unity of faith and knowledge of the Son of God, to mature manhood, to the extent of the full stature of Christ,, living the truth in love, we should grow in every way into him who is the head, Christ, from whom the whole body, joined and held together by every supporting ligament, with the proper functioning of each part, brings about the body’s growth and builds itself up in love.” Eph. 4:11-16

- b) Individually as Sons of God & Brothers with Christ

- (1) “Do you not know that you are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwells in you? If anyone destroys God’s temple, God will

destroy that person; for the temple of God, which you are, is holy.”

1 Cor. 3:16-17

- (2) “Do you not know that your body is a temple of the holy Spirit within you, whom you have from God, and that you are not your own? For you have been purchased at a price. Therefore, glorify God in your body.” 1 Cor. 6:19-20

c) Eternally – Holy Spirit Remaining Within Us Forever

- (1) “**And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate to be with you always, the Spirit of truth, which the world cannot accept, because it neither sees nor knows it. But you know it, because it remains with you, and will be in you.**” John 14:16-17

- (2) “Whoever acknowledges that Jesus is the Son of God, God remains in him and he in God.” 1 John 4:15

2) Holy Spirit Seals God’s Covenant People

- a) “But the one who gives us security with you in Christ and who anointed us is God; he has also put his seal upon us and given the Spirit in our hearts as a first installment.” 2 Cor. 1:21-22

- b) “In him you also, who have heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation, and have believed in him, were sealed with the promised holy Spirit, which is the first installment of our inheritance toward redemption as God’s possession, to the praise of his glory.” Eph. 1:13-14

- c) “And do not grieve the holy Spirit of God, with which you were sealed for the day of redemption.” Eph. 4:30

Comment. Under the Old Covenant the Spirit of God rested upon certain chosen people (particular Patriarchs, Judges, Priests, Kings, Prophets, etc.) for a season to perform/proclaim the works/words of the Lord. Under the New Covenant the Holy Spirit indwells all New Covenant People to live the life of Christ, baptizing them in the Holy Spirit to perform the works of Christ.

d. Signs of Christ’s New Covenant People

- 1) Sign of Love. “**I give you a new commandment: love one another. As I have loved you, so you also should love one another. This is how all will know that you are my disciples, if you have love for one another.**” John 13:34-35

- a) Manifesting Fruits of the Holy Spirit. “... the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, generosity, faithfulness, gentleness, self-control. Against such there is no law.” Gal. 5:22-23

- 2) Sign of Faith & Works, “**Believe me that I am in the Father and the Father is in me, or else, believe because of the works themselves. Amen, amen, I say to you, whoever believes in me will do the works that I do, and will do greater ones than these, because I am going to the Father. And whatever you ask in my name, I will do, so that the Father may be glorified in the Son.**” John 14:11-13

- a) Manifesting Gifts of the Holy Spirit. “There are different kinds of spiritual gifts but the same Spirit; there are different forms of service but the same Lord; there are different workings but the same God who produces all of them in everyone. To each individual the manifestation of the Spirit is given for some benefit. To one is given through the Spirit the expression of wisdom; to another the expression of knowledge according to the same Spirit; to another faith by the same Spirit; to another gifts of healing by the one Spirit; to another mighty deeds; to another prophecy; to another discernment of spirits; to another varieties of tongues; to another

interpretation of tongues. But one and the same Spirit produces all of these, distributing them individually to each person as he wishes."

1 Cor. 12:4-11

- e. We are Citizens of Heaven. "But our citizenship is in heaven, and from it we also await a savior, the Lord Jesus Christ. Phil. 3:20
- f. We are Christ's Ambassadors on Earth. "So we are ambassadors for Christ, as if God were appealing through us. We implore you on behalf of Christ, be reconciled to God." 2 Cor. 5:20
- g. We are Royal Priests. "But you are 'a chosen race, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a people of his own, so that you may announce the praises' of him who called you out of darkness (*Sin*) into his wonderful light (*Salvation*). Once you were 'no people' (*i.e. Gentiles / Pagan / Sinners*) but now you are God's (*New Covenant*) people; you 'had not received mercy' but now you have received mercy." 1 Pet. 2:9-10

7. Mission of Christ's Church (Obedience)

(Jesus Christ Commissions His New Covenant People (Clergy, Religious & Laity) to Share His Gospel of Salvation to the World Until the End of this Age.)

a. Jesus' Great Commission

- 1) "All power in heaven and on earth has been given to me. Go, therefore, and make disciples of all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the holy Spirit, teaching them to observe all that I have commanded you. And behold, I am with you always, until the end of the age." Matt. 28:18-20
- 2) "And this gospel of the kingdom will be preached throughout the world as a witness to all nations, and then the end will come." Matt. 24:14

8. Jesus Christ Returns at the End of the Church Age

(As the Holy Spirit Descended Upon those People Jesus Gathered During His Ministry on Earth, Giving Birth to His Church; So, the Holy Spirit Will Ascend Back to Heaven Taking All Believers with Him, Uniting them with Our Lord Jesus Forever.)

a. Promise of Jesus' Return for His Church

- 1) Sampling of Jesus' Promises
 - a) "And then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in heaven, and all the tribes of the earth will mourn, and they will see the Son of Man coming upon the clouds of heaven with power and great glory. And he will send out his angels with a trumpet blast, and they will gather his elect from the four winds, from one end of the heavens to the other." Matt. 24:30-31
 - b) "In my Father's house there are many dwelling places. If there were not, would I have told you that I am going to prepare a place for you? And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come back again and take you to myself, so that where I am you also may be." John 14:2-3
 - c) "But of that day or hour (*Of Jesus' Return*), no one knows, neither the angels in heaven, nor the Son, but only the Father. Be watchful! Be alert! You do not know when the time will come." Mark 13:32-33
- 2) Angelic Announcement at Jesus' Ascension. "While they were looking intently at the sky as he was going, suddenly two men dressed in white garments stood beside them. They said, 'Men of Galilee, why are you standing there looking at the sky? This Jesus who has been taken up from you into heaven will return in

the same way as you have seen him going into heaven.” Acts 1:10-11

- b. Jesus’ Return is the Blessed Hope of His Church
- 1) “For the grace of God has appeared, saving all and training us to reject godless ways and worldly desires and to live temperately, justly, and devoutly in this age, as we await the blessed hope, the appearance of the glory of the great God and of our savior Jesus Christ” Titus 2:11-13
 - 2) *Excerpt for Catholic Mass: “In your mercy keep us free from sin and protect us from all anxiety as we wait in joyful hope for the coming of our Savior, Jesus Christ.”*
- c. Jesus is Coming for His Church – His New Covenant People
- 1) Jesus is Coming to Gather His People Unto Himself Matt. 24:36-42
 - a) Jesus’ Prophetic Declaration: **“I am the resurrection and the life; whoever believes in me, even if he dies, will live, and everyone who lives and believes in me will never die. Do you believe this?”** John 11:25-26
 - b) St. Paul’s Prophecy 1 Thess. 4:13-17
 - (1) “We do not want you to be unaware, brothers, about those who have fallen asleep (*i.e. Died*), so that you may not grieve like the rest, who have no hope. For if we believe that Jesus died and rose, so too will God, through Jesus, bring with him (*From Heaven*) those who have fallen asleep (*Souls of Believers Who Died in Jesus*).”
 - (2) “Indeed, we tell you this, on the word of the Lord, that we who are alive, who are left until the coming of the Lord, will surely not precede those who have fallen asleep. For the Lord himself, with a word of command, with the voice of an archangel and with the trumpet of God, will come down from heaven, and the dead in Christ will rise first. Then we who are alive, who are left, will be caught up together with them in the clouds to meet the Lord in the air. Thus we shall always be with the Lord.”
(All Believers Who Died will be Bodily Resurrected When He Returns.)
(All Believers Who Remain Alive When He Returns will be Translated.)
(Together They Will Live with the Lord Forever.)
 - c) Jesus Gives His People Glorified Bodies 1 Cor. 15:35-58
 - (1) “This I declare, brothers: flesh and blood cannot inherit the kingdom of God, nor does corruption inherit incorruption. Behold, I tell you a mystery. We shall not all fall asleep, but we will all be changed, in an instant, in the blink of an eye, at the last trumpet. For the trumpet will sound, the dead will be raised incorruptible, and we shall be changed. For that which is corruptible (*Dead Decaying Body*) must clothe itself with incorruptibility, and that which is mortal (*Living Mortal Body*) must clothe itself with immortality. And when this which is corruptible clothes itself with incorruptibility and this which is mortal clothes itself with immortality, then the word that is written shall come about: ‘Death is swallowed up in victory. Where, O death, is your victory? Where, O death, is your sting?’ The sting of death is sin, and the power of sin is the law. But thanks be to God who gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.” (*1 Cor. 15:50-57*)
- 2) Jesus is Coming to Judge and Reward His People 2 Cor. 5:6-10; 2 Tim. 4:7-8
 - a) “..... no one can lay a foundation other than the one that is there, namely, Jesus Christ. If anyone builds on this foundation with gold, silver, precious

- stones, wood, hay, or straw, the work of each will come to light, for the (*Judgment*) Day will disclose it. It will be revealed with fire, and the fire (itself) will test the quality of each one's work. If the work stands that someone built upon the foundation, that person will receive a wage. But if someone's work is burned up, that one will suffer loss; the person will be saved, but only as through fire." 1 Cor. 3:10-15
- b) "For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ, so that each one may receive recompense, according to what he did in the body, whether good or evil." (2 Cor. 5:10)
- 3) Jesus is Coming to Give His People Eternal Life
- a) "Everything that the Father gives me will come to me, and I will not reject anyone who comes to me, because I came down from heaven not to do my own will but the will of the one who sent me. And this is the will of the one who sent me, that I should not lose anything of what he gave me, but that I should raise it (on) the last day. For this is the will of my Father, that everyone who sees the Son and believes in him may have eternal life, and I shall raise him (on) the last day." John 6:37-40
- 4) Jesus is Coming to Unite Us with Himself Forever
- a) The Wedding Feast Rev. 19:1-10
(*Heavenly Matrimony - Eternally Uniting Christ with His Church*)
- (1) "Then I heard something like the sound of a great multitude or the sound of rushing water or mighty peals of thunder (*Christian Saints from All the Nations & Eras*), as they said: 'Alleluia (*Praise the Lord!*)! The Lord has established his reign (*Jesus is Eternal King*), (our) God, the almighty (*Jesus is Our God & Omnipotent Lord*).'"
- (2) "Let us rejoice and be glad and give him glory. For the wedding day of the Lamb (*Jesus Christ – Our Savior & Bridegroom*) has come, his bride (*Christ's Church*) has made herself ready. She was allowed to wear a bright, clean linen garment.' (The linen represents the righteous deeds of the holy ones.)"
- (3) "Then the angel said to me, 'Write this: Blessed are those who have been called to the wedding feast of the Lamb.'" (Rev. 19:6-9)

Concluding Remarks on Christ's Church Age.

The Church Age is a period of conflict where Christ's New Covenant Peoples struggle against temptation, sin, evil people/organizations/philosophies, etc., Satan and his demonic powers; as we live in Christ and fulfill His commission (Rom. 12:1-2, Eph 6:12).

Jesus Christ defeated Satan and all the forces of evil on the cross (Col. 2:9-15), commissioning His Church to spread His Gospel to the entire world offering salvation and deliverance to peoples bound by evil, sin and/or Satan. Satan and his forces, although defeated by Christ, continue to subjugate mankind by deceit, influence, seduction, oppression, etc; so that man will reject or ignore Christ's Gospel, which he rallies and inflames against Christ and His Church (Heb. 2:15).

In this world of sin, Nature itself is in rebellion against its created order, resulting in famine, pestilence, disease, extreme weather, earthquakes, etc., awaiting its deliverance (Rom. 8:19-22).

But, things are about to change, when Messiah returns to Earth, claims His Deed as rightful Heir and Redeemer, overthrows & exiles Satan and all his forces of evil from Earth, judges all the Nations, and establishes His Kingdom on Earth, initiating "Messiah's Kingdom Covenant" (See the following Section of this Study).

THIRD & FUTURE COVENANT BOOK

Messiah's Kingdom Covenant

Having fulfilled the Old & New Covenants, Messiah Jesus returns from Heaven to Earth to establish and rule His Kingdom, securing the authority and dominion God originally gave to Adam. This is a brief overview of Messiah Jesus' Reign on Earth (also referred to as the "Messianic Kingdom", "Golden Age", "Millennial Kingdom" or "Millennium"), using selected Prophecies from both the Old and New Testaments. (See the "Messianic Kingdom" Study for a more in-depth study of Jesus' Reign & Millennial Kingdom.)

Introduction to Messiah's Kingdom Covenant

A Preview of Messiah's Millennial Kingdom on Earth:

1. Messiah's Rule. *Messiah will establish His Kingdom and rule over the entire Earth. His form of government will be, what I call, a "Theocratic Monarchy". Messiah's Capital City is Jerusalem (where He was sacrificed and resurrected). He will be enthroned in the New Temple's Holy of Holies as God's Presence on Earth. Apparently, Messiah (King of kings) will organize His worldwide government into districts, each with a presiding throne under His authority. He will rule Earth with a "rod of iron" (Psa. 2:7-9; Rev. 19:15) (uncompromising justice, peace, honesty, truth, power and authority). He will also be Earth's Supreme Judge, as was the king's prerogative in ancient Israel/Judah. Worship will be mandated and prescribed by Divine Authority.*
 - a. *It appears that resurrected/translated people will accompany Jesus as He returns from Heaven at His Second Coming (Zech. 14:5c; Rev. 19:14). They will rule/judge and hold other offices throughout Earth under Messiah's authority (Matt. 19:28; Jude 14-15; Rev. 20:4a)*
2. Messiah's Kingdom Covenant. *I believe Scriptures reveal three governing Covenants that the Lord God made with Man:*
 - a. *The "Old Covenant" consists of several incremental covenants where the Lord God progressively reveals Himself and His Plan of Salvation to Mankind (See "Adamic", "Noahic", "Abrahamic", "Mosaic", "Promise Land" and "Davidic" Covenants above). All of these Covenants point to the coming Messiah.*
 - b. *The "New Covenant" was established by Messiah (Christ Jesus) coming to Earth, where He fulfilled all the Old Covenants' laws and prophets. Christ became our atoning sacrifice for sin and is our High Priest. He victoriously rose from the dead and ascended into Heaven where He is enthroned as both King of kings and Head of His New Covenant Church (Eph. 1:22-23). He sent the Holy Spirit empowering us to live godly lives and continue His work of furthering His Kingdom on Earth. Jesus will return to Earth at the end of the Church Age to resurrect/translate, receive and eternally unite with all His New Covenant People.*
 - c. *The third governing covenant, I call "Messiah's Kingdom Covenant". This future Covenant will be established by Messiah at His Second Coming. Having fulfilled both the Old Covenants and the New Covenant, Messiah establishes a New Temple, a New Priesthood and a New Law. This New Law will commemorate His fulfillment of the Old and New Covenants and celebrate His Universal Reign. Earth is restored to the condition originally created by God in the Garden of Eden, with Messiah (Son of Man) enthroned as supreme authority (without Satan to tempt, oppress and enslave Mankind), completing the cycle back to the Lord's first Covenant ("Edenic") with Mankind.*

3. *Earth's Population.* After Jesus returns to Earth, He will Judge Israel and all the Nations/Peoples living on Earth at that time (Matt. 25:31-46). Those judged worthy to inherit His Kingdom will remain alive in the natural, marry reproducing children, grandchildren, great-grandchildren, etc. for generations throughout this 1,000 year period. These people and their descendants will be born with Adam's sinful nature, as we are today, but will live in an idyllic world without Satan's influence, temptations, bondages of disease, poverty, etc. They will have free will to accept Messiah and His Salvation or to reject Him, the same as we do today. I personally believe that many more people will be saved during the Millennial Kingdom than were saved from Adam's fall until Jesus' Second Coming. The Millennial Kingdom will also prove that even with idyllic conditions, people will still reject and rebel against the Lord God Almighty and His Messiah.
4. *The Basic Provisions/Elements of Messiah's Kingdom Covenant:*
 - a. *Promises.* Salvation/Redemption from Sin, Reconciliation with a Holy God and Eternal Life.
 - b. *Terms.* Faith in & Obedience to Messiah-King.
 - c. *Sacrifice.* Jesus' Sacrifice is Eternal and Prevails throughout the Millennial Kingdom unto Eternity. It is Commemorated and Celebrated throughout the Millennial Kingdom.
 - c. *Sign.* Presence of Messiah Jesus Living and Ruling on Earth.

A. **Messiah Jesus' Second Coming**

Zech. 14:1-5 & 12-15; Matt. 24:29-35; Mark 13:24-31; Luke 21:25-28; Rev. 19:11 – 20:3
 Messiah Jesus Comes Back to Earth to: 1) Destroy Evil, Satan and Sinful / Rebellious Men [1 Cor. 15:20-28], 2) Judge the World [Matt. 25:31-46], 3) Cleanse the World from the Curse of Sin [Rom. 8:18-23], and 4) Establish His Rule of Righteousness [Zech. 14:1-11].
 Messiah Jesus is Coming as Lord, Righteous Judge, High Priest and King of Kings.

1. Messiah Jesus' Descent to Earth
 - a. Universal Nature of Messiah's Second Coming: "Behold, he is coming amid the clouds, and every eye will see him, even those who pierced him. All the peoples of the earth will lament him. Yes. Amen." Rev. 1:7
 - b. Revelation of Messiah Jesus: "Then I saw the heavens opened (*Christ Returns from His Heavenly Throne*), and there was a white horse (*Christ the Conqueror*); its rider was (called) 'Faithful and True.' He judges and wages war in righteousness (*Executes God's Perfect Judgment*)." Rev. 19:11-16
 - 1) "His eyes were (like) a fiery flame (*Christ is Omniscient*), and on his head were many diadems (*Crowned with Full Authority*)."
 - 2) "He had a name inscribed that no one knows except himself (*Mystery: Unrevealed Dimension of Christ*)."
 - 3) "He wore a cloak that had been dipped in blood (*Christ Our Sacrificial Redeemer*), and his name was called the Word of God (*Creative Force*)."
 - 4) "The armies of heaven followed him (*Christ Commands the Forces of Heaven*), mounted on white horses (*Conquerors with Christ*) and wearing clean white linen (*Saved & Purified by Christ Jesus*)."
 - 5) "Out of his mouth came a sharp sword to strike the nations (*Christ Judges the Nations by His Word*)."
 - 6) "He will rule them with an iron rod (*Christ Rules with Supreme Authority*), and he himself will tread out in the wine press the wine of the fury and wrath of

God the almighty (*Christ - Omnipotent Warrior - Executes God's Judgments*).”

- 7) “He has a name written on his cloak and on his thigh (*Sign of the Lord's Covenants Fulfilled by Christ*), ‘King of kings and Lord of lords.’”
- c. Messiah’s Conquest of Earth: “Then I saw an angel standing on the sun.”
Rev. 19:17-21
 - 1) “He cried out (in) a loud voice to all the birds flying high overhead, ‘Come here. Gather for God’s great feast, to eat the flesh of kings, the flesh of military officers, and the flesh of warriors, the flesh of horses and of their riders (*Mankind’s Authorities & Might*), and the flesh of all, free and slave, small and great (*Unrepentant Mankind*).’”
 - 2) “Then I saw the beast (*Antichrist – Satan’s Ruler/Emperor*) and the kings of the earth and their armies (*Antichrist’s Allies*) gathered to fight against the one riding the horse and against his army (*Final Confrontation between Mankind & God – The Battle of Armageddon*).”
 - 3) “The beast (*Antichrist*) was caught and with it the false prophet (*Satan’s High Priest*) who had performed in its sight the signs by which he led astray those who had accepted the mark of the beast (*Sworn Allegiance to Antichrist/Satan*) and those who had worshiped its image. The two were thrown alive into the fiery pool burning with sulfur (*Eternal Damnation*).”
 - 4) “The rest (*Mankind’s Armies*) were killed by the sword that came out of the mouth of the one riding the horse (*Christ Pronounces Judgment*), and all the birds gorged themselves on their flesh (*Mankind’s Rebellion Completely Devoured – Purging the Earth*).”
2. Messiah’s Expulsion of Satan from Earth Rev. 20:1-3
 - a. “Then I saw an angel come down from heaven, holding in his hand the key to the abyss (*Bottomless Pit – Place of No Escape*) and a heavy chain. He seized the dragon, the ancient serpent, which is the Devil or Satan, and tied it up for a thousand years and threw it into the abyss, which he locked over it and sealed, so that it could no longer lead the nations astray until the thousand years are completed. After this, it is to be released for a short time.”

B. Messiah Jesus Judges the Nations of Earth

1. Messiah’s Judgment & Restoration of Israel as the Lord’s Chosen Nation
 - a. Israel Recognizes Yeshua (Jesus) as Messiah at His Coming Zech. 12:10
 - 1) “I will pour out on the house of David and on the inhabitants of Jerusalem (*Israelites*) a spirit of grace and petition; and they shall look on him whom they have thrust through (*Jesus Christ Crucified*), and they shall mourn for him as one mourns for an only son (*Jesus - Israelite of Tribe of Judah & Son of David*), and they shall grieve over him as one grieves over a first-born”
 - b. Israel’s Repentance Zech. 12:11-14; Rom. 11:25-29
 - 1) “On that day the mourning in Jerusalem shall be as great as the mourning of Hadadrimmon in the plain of Megiddo (*Referring to Battle of Armageddon*).” (*Zech. 12:11*)
 - 2) “..... a hardening (*Spiritual Blindness*) has come upon Israel in part, until the full number of the Gentiles comes in (*i.e. Completion of Church Age*), and thus all Israel will be saved, as it is written: ‘The deliverer (*Messiah*) will come out of Zion, he will turn away godlessness from Jacob (*Israel*); and this is my covenant with them when I take away their sins.” (*Rom. 11:25-27*)

- c. Judgment of Israel Isa. 22:1-14; Jer. 50:4-7 & 20; Amos 2:3-16
- 1) Israel Chastised, Refined & Purified. “Zion shall be redeemed by judgment, and her repentant ones by justice.” Isa. 1:27
 - 2) Surviving Israelites Enter Messiah’s Kingdom. “Then all nations will call you (*Israel*) blessed, for you will be a delightful land, says the LORD of hosts.”
(Israel’s Inheritance Guaranteed by Covenant!) Mal. 3:12
2. Messiah’s Judgment of the Nations Matt. 25:31-46
- a. “When the Son of Man comes in his glory, and all the angels with him, he will sit upon his glorious throne, and all the nations will be assembled before him. And he will separate them one from another, as a shepherd separates the sheep from the goats. He will place the sheep on his right and the goats on his left.
 - 1) “Then the king will say to those on his right, ‘Come, you who are blessed by my Father. Inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world. For I was hungry and you gave me food, I was thirsty and you gave me drink, a stranger and you welcomed me, naked and you clothed me, ill and you cared for me, in prison and you visited me.’ Then the righteous will answer him and say, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry and feed you, or thirsty and give you drink? When did we see you a stranger and welcome you, or naked and clothe you? When did we see you ill or in prison, and visit you?’ And the king will say to them in reply, ‘Amen, I say to you, whatever you did for one of these least brothers of mine, you did for me.’
 - 2) “Then he will say to those on his left, ‘Depart from me, you accursed, into the eternal fire prepared for the devil and his angels. For I was hungry and you gave me no food, I was thirsty and you gave me no drink, a stranger and you gave me no welcome, naked and you gave me no clothing, ill and in prison, and you did not care for me.’ Then they will answer and say, ‘Lord, when did we see you hungry or thirsty or a stranger or naked or ill or in prison, and not minister to your needs?’ He will answer them, ‘Amen, I say to you, what you did not do for one of these least ones, you did not do for me.’ And these will go off to eternal punishment, but the righteous to eternal life.”

Comment. Who are Messiah’s Brothers?

Messiah’s Natural Heritage. Messiah is from the House of David, Tribe of Judah who is one of the 12 Sons of Jacob (Israel), Son of Isaac, Son of Abraham (Matt. 1:1-16; Luke 3:23-34); therefore, all Israelites/Jews are His brothers. Yeshua (Jesus) Judges the Nations/Peoples of the World on how they treated His brothers, whether they blessed them, ignored / neglected or persecuted them. The Lord’s Covenant Promise to Abraham: “I will make of you a great nation (Israel), and I will bless you;....I will bless those who bless you and curse those who curse you. All the communities of the earth shall find blessing in you (Gen. 12:2-3).”

Messiah’s Spiritual Heritage. Jesus Christ’s brothers are His New Covenant People (Born Again Christians - His Church) adopted into the family of God. Jesus judges the Nations/Peoples of the World on how they treated His brothers, whether they blessed them furthering His Gospel on Earth, or ignored / neglected, insulted or persecuted them. Jesus’ Promise: *“Whoever receives a prophet because he is a prophet will receive a prophet’s reward, and whoever receives a righteous man because he is righteous will receive a righteous man’s reward. And whoever gives only a cup of cold water to one of these little ones to drink because he is a disciple—amen, I say to you, he will surely not lose his reward.”* (Matt. 10:41-42).

C. Messiah Jesus Establishes & Rules His Kingdom on Earth

1. Messiah's Triumphant Entry into Jerusalem – Claiming & Seizing His Kingdom
 Zech. 14:1-5; Psa. 68:25-36; Psa. 100; Rev. 19:11 – 20:3
Having Conquered & Vanquished Satan and the Forces of Evil, Christ Jesus Triumphantly Enters Jerusalem as King of Kings & Lord of Lords.
 - a. Messiah Enters Jerusalem's East Gate Mounted on a White Horse
 - 1) “Then I saw the heavens opened, and there was a white horse; its rider was (called) ‘Faithful and True.’” (*Rev. 19:11*)
 - 2) “That day his feet shall rest upon the Mount of Olives, which is opposite Jerusalem to the east. The Mount of Olives shall be cleft in two from east to west by a very deep valley, and half of the mountain shall move to the north and half of it to the south.” (*Zech. 14:4*)
(Christ Enters Jerusalem, Not Meek & Riding a Beast of Burden as He did in His 1st Coming on Palm Sunday [Matt 21:1-11, Mark 11:1-11, Luke 19:28-44, John 12:12-19]; But Riding a White Horse as Conquering King.)
 - b. Messiah the Conquering King of Glory Psa. 24
 - 1) “Lift up your heads, O gates (*i.e. Jerusalem's Eastern Gate*); rise up, you ancient portals, that the king of glory may enter. Who is this king of glory? The LORD, a mighty warrior, the LORD, mighty in battle (*i.e. Messiah - Victor of Battle of Armageddon*). Lift up your heads, O gates; rise up, you ancient portals, that the king of glory may enter. Who is this king of glory? The LORD of hosts is the king of glory. Selah” (*Psa. 24:7-10*)
2. Messiah's 1,000 Year Reign on Earth Rev. 20:4-6
 - a. Thrones Established to Administer Universal Justice. “Then I saw thrones; those who sat on them were entrusted with judgment.”
 - b. First Resurrection in Messiah's Kingdom
 - 1) “I also saw the souls of those who had been beheaded for their witness to Jesus and for the word of God, and who had not worshiped the beast or its image nor had accepted its mark on their foreheads or hands. They came to life and they reigned with Christ for a thousand years.” (*The Context of this Scripture Implies that People Who were Martyred During the Reign of Antichrist will be Resurrected to Serve Messiah in His Kingdom.*)
 - a) “The rest of the dead did not come to life until the thousand years were over.” (*Awaiting God's Final Judgment at the Conclusion of the Millennial Kingdom Age. See 'Great White Throne Judgment' Below.*)
 - 2) “This is the first resurrection. Blessed and holy is the one who shares in the first resurrection. The second death has no power over these; they will be priests of God and of Christ, and they will reign with him for (the) thousand years.”
3. Spiritual / Religious Life & Worship in Messiah's Kingdom
 - a. Messiah's New Temple
(The New Temple will be Earth's Central Place of Worship & Messiah's Throne.)
(See Messiah's New Temple in “Tabernacle & Temple – Part II” Study.)
 - 1) Prophet Ezekiel's Vision of the New Temple
 - a) Complex of Structures within Messiah's Sacred Tract of Land
 Ezek. 45:1-8; Ezek. 47:13 - 48:35
 (1) Sacred Tract Centrally Located in Land Apportioned to Israel

- (2) City of Jerusalem at Center of Sacred Tract
 (3) Temple at Center of Jerusalem
- b) Basic Configuration of Temple Structure Ezek. 40 - 42
- (1) The Outer Court
- (a) Walled Courtyard with 3 Gates
- East Gate – Main Entrance
 - North & South Gates for Priests
- (b) Altar in Front of Temple Building
- (2) Temple Building
- (a) The Inner Court (“Nave”)
- East Gate with Vestibule to Outer Court
 - Main Entrance
 - North Gate with Vestibule to Outer Court
 - Chamber for Priests in Charge of Altar
 - Chamber for Preparing Sacrifices
 - South Gate with Vestibule to Outer Court
 - Chamber for Priest in Charge of Temple
 - Wooden Altar in Front of Holy of Holies: “..... This is the table which is before the LORD.” (Ezek. 41:22)
- (b) Space Beyond the Nave: “This is the Holy of Holies” (Ezek. 41:4)
- Double Door Entrance into the Holy of Holies

Observations & Comments. *There are major differences between the Old Covenant Tabernacle/Temple and Messiah’s New Temple:*

1. Overall Configuration. *The Old Covenant Tabernacle has One Entrance from the East into the Outer Court and the Inner Court. The New Temple has 3 Gates into the Outer Court with corresponding Gates into the Inner Court. These 3 Entrances form a Crucifix with the Feet at the East Gate, the Hands at the North and South Gates, and the Head in the Holy of Holies, symbolizing Messiah’s fulfillment of both the Old & New Covenants by His Crucifixion.*
2. Outer Court
 - *Both the Old and New Temples have an Altar of Sacrifice. The Old Covenant Sacrifices were fulfilled by Messiah’s Sacrifice inaugurating His New Covenant. Both are commemorated and celebrated in Messiah’s Kingdom Covenant.*
 - *There is no Laver, revealing that the Priests in Messiah’s Kingdom have already been cleansed by His Blood.*
3. Inner Court (‘Nave’)
 - *There is no Table of Showbread. Messiah ‘The Bread of Life’ is Enthroned in the Temple.*
 - *There is no Lampstand. Messiah ‘The Light of the World’ is Enthroned in the Temple.*
 - *In the New Temple Priests prepare Sacrifices, perform other duties and reside at the North & South Entrances. These gates correspond to gates in the Outer Court. These Kingdom Priests minister at Messiah’s Right and Left Hands, since He has fulfilled both the Old and New Covenants.*
 - *There is no Incense Altar in the New Temple for the Priests to intercede before the Lord for the people. Instead there is a Wooden Table before the Holy of Holies, representing Messiah’s fulfillment of the Old Covenant’s Sacred Feasts and the New Covenant’s Holy Communion. Messiah as High Priest continues to make constant intercession for His people.*
4. Holy of Holies (‘Space Beyond the Nave’)
 - *Instead of the Veil separating the Inner Court from the Holy of Holies, there is a Double Door symbolizing Messiah’s fulfillment of both the Old and New Covenants.*
 - *There is No Ark of the Covenant in the New Temple. All of God’s Laws and Commandments have been fulfilled by Messiah.*
 - *Messiah’s Throne is in the Holy of Holies!*

- 2) Messiah (Glory of the Lord) Enters the New Temple
(As the Shekinah Glory of the Lord Entered the Tabernacle & Temple of the Old Covenant; So, Messiah Jesus Enters the Temple in Kingdom Covenant.)
- a) “Then he led me to the *(Temple)* gate which faces the east *(Mount of Olives Where Jesus Returns to Earth)*, and there I saw the glory of the God of Israel coming from the east. I heard a sound like the roaring of many waters *(Messiah Speaks with Divine Authority)*, and the earth shone with his glory *(Messiah’s Divine Majesty)*..... I fell prone as the glory of the LORD entered the temple by way of the gate which faces the east, but spirit lifted me up and brought me to the inner court. And I saw that the temple was filled with the glory of the LORD.” Ezek. 43:1-5
- b) “Then I heard someone *(Messiah – Glory of the Lord)* speaking to me from the temple, The voice said to me: ‘Son of man, this is where my throne shall be, this is where I will set the soles of my feet; here I will dwell among the Israelites forever.....’” Ezek. 43:6-9
- 3) Messiah Enthroned as King & High Priest Ezek. 43:10-27; Zech. 6:9-15
- a) Jesus is Messiah – King & High Priest. “Silver and gold you shall take, and make a crown; place it on the head of *(Joshua, son of Jehozadak, the high priest) Zerubbabel.* And say to him: Thus says the LORD of hosts: Here is a man whose name is Shoot, and where he is he shall sprout, and he shall build the temple of the LORD.” *(Zech. 6:11-12)*
- (1) *Crown of Silver (Redemptive King) & Gold (Divine King) Placed on the Head of Joshua / Zerubbabel.*
- (2) *‘Joshua’ is Hebrew Name ‘Yeshua’ which we Translate ‘Jesus’*
- (3) *Jesus is a Descendant of Zerubbabel – Governor of Judah. (Hag. 1:1; Matt. 1:12-16)*
- (4) *Messiah Jesus Crowned as King & High Priest.*
- (5) *‘Shoot’ is ‘Netzer’ in Hebrew Meaning ‘Branch’ – Jesus Known as the Nazarene which Means ‘Branch-Man’ (Matt. 2:23).*
- (6) *Jesus (the Nazarene) - King & High Priest Enthroned in the Temple.*
- b) “Yes, he shall build the temple of the LORD, and taking up the royal insignia, he shall sit as ruler upon his throne. The priest shall be put at his right hand, and between the two of them there shall be friendly understanding.” *(Zech. 6:13)*
- (1) *Messiah Takes Royal (King David's) Insignia (In Fulfillment of the Davidic Covenant).*
- (2) *Messiah Sits as Ruler on His Throne (Enthroned in Temple’s Holy of Holies), with Priests Placed at His Right Hand (Priests Subordinate to Messiah – King & High Priest).*
- c) “The crown itself shall be a memorial offering *(Commemorating Christ’s Sacrifice & Death)* in the temple of the LORD *(God’s Presence & Place of Atonement)*.....” *(Zech. 6:14)*
- d) New Temple Law Proclaimed Ezek. 43:10-12
- e) New Altar Specified Ezek. 43:13-17
- f) New Temple Cleansed & Consecrated Ezek. 43:18-27
- 4) Eastern Gate Closed after Messiah Enters Ezek 44:1-3
- a) No One Else Worthy to Enter
- b) He Alone is Messiah. “..... you shall know that the Lord of hosts has sent me to you.” *(Zech. 6:15)*

- b. Messiah's New Priesthood Ezek. 44:10-31
- 1) The Levites Serve in Temple as Gatekeepers & Servants
(*Levites had been Unfaithful to Lord in the Past*)
(*Messiah from Tribe of Judah. Became High Priest According to the Order of Melchizedek, Replacing the Levitical Order. Psa. 110:4; Heb. 7*)
 - 2) Zadokites Appointed as Messiah's Priests (*Zadokites, Descendants of House of Aaron, Faithfully Served as Priests During Reigns of Kings David & Solomon; therefore, they Shall Serve Messiah-King.*)
 - a) Priests Minister to Lord (*Intercession Role of Priests*)
 - b) Priests Offer Sacrifices to Lord (*Sacrificial Role of Priests*)
 - c) Priests Enter Lord's Sanctuary (*Inner Court*)
 - d) Priests Approach Lord's Table (*Before the Holy of Holies*)
- c. Messiah's New Sacred Law
- 1) Sacrifices & Offerings Prescribed in Messiah's Kingdom Ezek. 45:13-17
 - a) Cereal Offerings & Oil (*Symbolizing Fulfillment of New Covenant*)
(*Cereal Offerings Celebrate Christ the "Bread of Life"*)
(*Oil Represents the Holy Spirit*)
 - b) Sheep for Sacrifices & Holocausts
(*Commemorating Messiah's Fulfillment of Old Covenant's Blood Sacrifices & Celebrating His Eternal Sacrifice.*)
 - (1) Atonement Sacrifices & Peace Offerings
 - 2) Holy Days, Festivals & Feasts Prescribed in Messiah's Kingdom
 - a) The Passover Festival Ezek. 45:18-24
(*Celebration of Messiah's Fulfillment of Passover in His First Advent*)
 - b) The Feast of Booths/Tabernacles Ezek. 45:25
(*Celebration of Messiah's Fulfillment of Feast of Booths/Tabernacles at His Second Coming*)
 - c) The Sabbath Ezek. 46:1-7
(*Celebration of Messiah Jesus as "Lord of the Sabbath". Matt. 12:8*)
 - (1) Inner Court's East Gate Remains Closed on 6 Working Days
 - (2) East Gate Opened on Sabbath (*God's Day of Rest*) & New Moon
(*Messiah - Lord & Creator*) for People to Worship
- d. Universal Worship
- 1) Universal Knowledge of the Lord. "There shall be no harm or ruin on all my holy mountain; for the earth shall be filled with knowledge of the LORD, as water (*Holy Spirit*) covers the sea (*Gentile Nations*)." Isa. 11:9
 - 2) Annual Pilgrimages by Gentile Nations. "All who are left of all the nations that came against Jerusalem shall come up year after year to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, and to celebrate the feast of Booths. If any of the families of the earth does not come up to Jerusalem to worship the King, the LORD of hosts, no rain shall fall upon them" Zech. 14:16-19
(*Under the Old Covenant, the Feast of Booths/Tabernacles [Lev. 23:33-43], Commemorates the Lord's Deliverance of Israel from Bondage, His Providence in the Wilderness, Bringing Them into Promise Land. This Feast is Fulfilled in Messiah's Kingdom Covenant, where All Peoples Celebrate the Lord's Deliverance from the Bondage of Sin, Bringing Them into and Providing for them in Messiah's Kingdom.*)
 - 3) Universal Worship of Messiah
 - a) "..... All mankind shall come to worship before me (*Messiah – Son of*

God), says the LORD.”

Isa. 66:23

b) People Rejoicing in the Lord. “On that day there shall be upon the bells of the horses, ‘Holy to the LORD.....’”

Zech. 14:20-21

4) Universal Praise & Thanksgiving. “May the peoples praise you, God; may all the peoples praise you! May the nations be glad and shout for joy; for you govern the peoples justly, you guide the nations upon the earth. May the peoples praise you, God; may all the peoples praise you!”

Psa. 67:4-6

4. Messiah’s Rule – His Government

a. Messiah-King Ruler of the Whole World

Psa. 2; Psa. 22:28-32; Psa. 72; Psa. 96; Psa. 99; Zech. 14:8-11

1) “I will proclaim the decree of the LORD, who said to me, ‘You (*Messiah – King*) are my son; today I am your father. Only ask it of me, and I will make your inheritance the nations, your possession the ends of the earth. With an iron rod you shall shepherd them, like a clay pot you will shatter them.’ And now, kings, give heed; take warning, rulers on earth. Serve the LORD with fear; with trembling bow down in homage, Lest God be angry and you perish from the way in a sudden blaze of anger. Happy are all who take refuge in God!”

(Psa. 2:7-11)

2) “Let the heavens be glad and the earth rejoice; let the sea and what fills it resound; let the plains be joyful and all that is in them. Then let all the trees of the forest rejoice before the LORD who comes, who comes to govern the earth, To govern the world with justice and the peoples with faithfulness.”

(Psa. 96:11-13)

3) Messiah – King & Son of God. “A psalm of (*King*) David. The LORD (*Yahweh*) says to you, my lord (*Messiah*): ‘Take your throne at my righthand, while I make your enemies your footstool.’ The scepter of your sovereign might the LORD will extend from Zion. The LORD says: ‘Rule over your enemies! Yours is princely power from the day of your birth (*As Man-Child Jesus*). In holy splendor before the daystar (*Son of God*), like the dew I begot you.’”

Psa. 110:1-3

4) Messiah – High Priest. “The LORD has sworn and will not waver: ‘Like Melchizedek you (*Messiah*) are a priest forever.’”

Psa. 110:4

5) Messiah – Conquering Judge. “At your right hand is the Lord, who crushes kings on the day of wrath, Who, robed in splendor, judges nations, crushes heads across the wide earth, Who drinks from the brook by the wayside and thus holds high the head.”

Psa. 110:5-7

6) “The LORD shall become king over the whole earth; on that day the LORD shall be the only one, and his name the only one.”

(Zech. 14:9)

b. Messiah’s Capital City is Zion

Isa. 2:1-5; Micah 4:1-8; Zeph. 3:14-20

1) The Lord Chooses Jerusalem

a) “Thus says the LORD of hosts: ‘I am deeply moved for the sake of Jerusalem and Zion, and I am exceedingly angry with the complacent nations; whereas I was but a little angry, they added to the harm.’ Therefore, says the LORD: ‘I will turn to Jerusalem in mercy; my house (*Temple*) shall be built in it, My cities shall again overflow with prosperity; the LORD will again comfort Zion, and again choose Jerusalem.’”

Zech. 1:14-17

b) Fulfilling Lord's Covenant with King David

2 Sam. 7:8-17; 1 Chron. 17:3-14; Psa. 132

(1) "..... I (*Lord God*) will raise up your (*King David's*) offspring after you who will be one of your own sons (*Jesus from the House & Lineage of David*), and I will establish his kingdom. He it is who shall build me a house, and I will establish his throne forever. I will be a father to him, and he shall be a son to me, and I will not withdraw my favor from him as I withdrew it from him who preceded you; but I will maintain him in my house (Temple) and in my kingdom forever, and his throne shall be firmly established forever."

(1 Chron. 17:11-14)

(2) "The LORD swore an oath to David, a pledge never to be broken: 'Your own offspring (*Messiah Jesus*) I will set upon your throne' Yes, the LORD has chosen Zion (*Jerusalem*), desired it for a dwelling: 'This is my resting place forever; here I will dwell, for I desire it.'" (Psa. 132:11-14)

c) Fulfilling Lord's Promise to Israel/Judah

Psa. 60:8-10; Psa. 108:8-10; Isa. 9:5-6; Isa. 11:1-5; Jer. 23:1-8

(1) "For a child is born to us (*Israelite*), a son is given us (*Son of God*); upon his shoulder dominion rests. They name him Wonder-Counselor, God-Hero, Father-Forever, Prince of Peace." Isa. 9:5

(2) "Behold, the days are coming, says the LORD, when I will raise up a righteous shoot to David; As king he shall reign and govern wisely, he shall do what is just and right in the land. In his days Judah shall be saved, Israel shall dwell in security. This is the name they give him: 'The LORD our justice.'" (Jer. 23:5-6)

c. Messiah's New Israel

Zech. 8; Zech.10:6-12

1) Messiah Will Reside Among His Kinsmen – Israel. "Thus says the LORD: 'I will return to Zion, and I will dwell within Jerusalem; Jerusalem shall be called the faithful city, and the mountain of the LORD of hosts, the holy mountain.'" (Zech. 8:3)

2) Messiah Will Bring His Kinsmen Back to Israel. "Thus says the LORD of hosts: 'Lo, I will rescue my people from the land of the rising sun, and from the land of the setting sun. I will bring them back to dwell within Jerusalem. They shall be my people, and I will be their God, with faithfulness and justice.'" (Zech. 8:7-8)

3) Messiah Will Organize Israel as His Chosen Nation Ezek. 47:13 - 48:35

a) Messiah Apportions its Land to the Tribes of Israel

b) Jerusalem Shall have 12 Gates Named for Tribes of Israel

c) Name of Jerusalem Shall be: "The Lord is Here"

4) Jews Will be a Blessing to All Nations. "..... In those days ten men of every nationality, speaking different tongues, shall take hold, yes, take hold of every Jew by the edge of his garment and say, 'Let us go with you, for we have heard that God is with you.'" (Zech. 8:23)

d. Messiah is Supreme Judge - Rules in Equity, Truth, Wisdom & Justice

Psa. 72; Psa. 82; Psa. 97; Isa. 11:1-5; Isa. 28:5-6

1) "For a child is born to us (*Messiah an Israelite*), a son is given us (*Messiah – Son of God*); upon his shoulder dominion rests. They name him Wonder-Counselor, God-Hero, Father-Forever, Prince of Peace. His dominion is vast

- and forever peaceful, From David's throne, and over his kingdom, which he confirms and sustains. By judgment and justice, both now and forever. The zeal of the LORD of hosts will do this!" Isa. 9:5-6
- 2) "But he (Messiah) shall judge the poor with justice, and decide aright for the land's afflicted. He shall strike the ruthless with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips he shall slay the wicked." (Isa. 11:4)
- e. Messiah Imposes Universal Peace
- 1) "He (Messiah) shall judge between the nations, and impose (Peace) terms on many peoples. They shall beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks; One nation shall not raise the sword against another, nor shall they train for war again." Isa. 2:4
- 2) "Every man shall sit under his own vine or under his own fig tree, undisturbed; for the mouth of the LORD of hosts has spoken." Micah 4:4
- f. Political Pilgrimages by All Nations to Jerusalem
- 1) To Honor the Name of Lord. "At that time they will call Jerusalem the LORD'S throne; there all nations will be gathered together to honor the name of the LORD at Jerusalem, and they will walk no longer in their hardhearted wickedness." Jer. 3:17
- 2) To Learn from the Lord. "..... All nations shall stream toward it (Zion) many peoples shall come and say: 'Come, let us climb the LORD'S mountain, to the house of the God of Jacob, That he (Lord & Messiah) may instruct us in his ways, and we may walk in his paths.' For from Zion shall go forth instruction, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem." Isa. 2:2-3
- g. Messiah's Economy – Universal Prosperity Isa. 60
- 1) Messiah – Zion's Splendor & Israel's Blessing. "Rise up in splendor! Your (Israel's) light has come, the glory of the Lord shines upon you" Nations shall walk by your light, and kings by your shining radiance." (Isa. 60:1-3)
- 2) Wealth of Nations Brought to Israel - Messiah's Throne. "For the riches of the sea (Gentile Nations) shall be emptied out before you (Israel), the wealth of nations shall be brought to you." (Isa. 60:5b)
- 3) Peaceful & Abundant Societies. "Your gates shall stand open constantly; day and night they shall not be closed But shall admit to you the wealth of nations, and their kings, in the vanguard." (Isa. 60:11)
- 4) Abundance of Wealth. "In place of bronze I will bring gold, instead of iron, silver; In place of wood, bronze, instead of stones, iron....." (Isa. 60:17)
- 5) Wealth from Global Peace - Messiah the Prince of Peace. ".....I will appoint peace your governor, and justice your ruler. No longer shall violence be heard of in your land, or plunder and ruin within your boundaries. You shall call your walls 'Salvation' and your gates 'Praise.'" (Isa. 60:17-18)
- 6) Knowledge & Wisdom to Gain Wealth – Messiah Our Source. "No longer shall the sun be your light by day, Nor the brightness of the moon shine upon you at night; The LORD shall be your light forever, your God shall be your glory. No longer shall your sun go down, or your moon withdraw, For the LORD will be your light forever, and the days of your mourning shall be at an end." (Isa. 60:19-20)
- 7) Fiscal Growth & Wealth from Honest Gain. "Your people shall all be just, they shall always possess the land, They, the bud of my planting, my handiwork to show my glory. The smallest shall become a thousand, the youngest, a mighty nation. I, the LORD, will swiftly accomplish these things when their time

comes.” (*Isa. 60:21-22*)

5. Messiah’s Restoration of Nature

(Reversing the Effects from the Curse of Sin on Man & Nature)

- a. The Land Healed. “..... I will open up rivers on the bare heights, and fountains in the broad valleys; I will turn the desert into a marshland, and the dry ground into springs of water. I will plant in the desert the cedar, acacia, myrtle, and olive; I will set in the wasteland the cypress, together with the plane tree and the pine, That all may see and know, observe and understand, That the hand of the LORD has done this, the Holy One of Israel has created it.” *Isa. 41:18-20*
- b. Humanity Healed (Spiritually, Emotionally & Physically). “Strengthen the hands that are feeble, make firm the knees that are weak, Say to those whose hearts are frightened: Be strong, fear not! Here is your God, he comes with vindication; With divine recompense he comes to save you. Then will the eyes of the blind be opened, the ears of the deaf be cleared; Then will the lame leap like a stag, then the tongue of the dumb will sing.” *Isa. 35:3-6a*
- c. Restoration of the Animals. “Then the wolf shall be a guest of the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; The calf and the young lion shall browse together, with a little child to guide them. The cow and the bear shall be neighbors, together their young shall rest; the lion shall eat hay like the ox. The baby shall play by the cobra’s den, and the child lay his hand on the adder’s lair.” *Isa. 11:6-8*
- d. Restoration of Mankind *Isa. 65:17-25*
 - 1) Peace of Mind. “Lo, I am about to create new heavens and a new earth; The things of the past shall not be remembered or come to mind. Instead, there shall always be rejoicing and happiness in what I create; For I create Jerusalem to be a joy and its people to be a delight” (*Isa. 65:17-18*)
 - 2) Joy & Happiness. “I will rejoice in Jerusalem and exult in my people. No longer shall the sound of weeping be heard there, or the sound of crying” (*Isa. 65:19*)
 - 3) Health & Longevity. “No longer shall there be in it an infant who lives but a few days, or an old man who does not round out his full lifetime; He dies a mere youth who reaches but a hundred years, and he who fails of a hundred shall be thought accursed.” (*Isa. 65:20*)
 - 4) Peace & Prosperity. “They shall live in the houses they build, and eat the fruit of the vineyards they plant; They shall not build houses for others to live in, or plant for others to eat. As the years of a tree, so the years of my people; and my chosen ones shall long enjoy the produce of their hands. They shall not toil in vain, nor beget children for sudden destruction; For a race blessed by the LORD are they and their offspring.” (*Isa. 65:21-23*)
 - 5) The Lord’s Assurance. “Before they call, I will answer; while they are yet speaking, I will hearken to them.” (*Isa. 65:24*)

6. Rebellion Against Messiah’s Rule

Rev. 20:7-10

(Satan’s Final Attempt to Regain Dominion of Earth)

- a. “When the thousand years are completed, Satan will be released from his prison. He will go out to deceive the nations at the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them for battle; their number is like the sand of the sea. They invaded the breadth of the earth and surrounded the camp of the holy ones and the beloved city”
 - 1) Satan Released at the Conclusion of Messiah’s Millennial Reign on Earth.

- 2) Satan Seduces the Nations & Gathers Them for War Against Messiah
(*Peoples Living in Millennium Kingdom Who have NOT Accepted Messiah Jesus as their Lord & Savior are Open to Satan's Lies and Rebellion*)
 - 3) Surrounded Camp of Holy Ones & Jerusalem (*Messiah's Capital City*)
(*"Holy Ones" are People Who Accepted Jesus as Lord & Savior in the Millennial Kingdom.*)
- b. "But fire came down from heaven and consumed them. The Devil who had led them astray was thrown into the pool of fire and sulfur, where the beast and the false prophet were. There they will be tormented day and night forever and ever."
- 1) Fire Falls from Heaven Devouring & Destroying Satan & Rebellious Armies
 - 2) Satan Captured & Thrown into Lake of Fire (*Eternally Damned in Hell*)

Comment. This rebellion proves that Man will continue to willfully sin and (without yielding to the will of God) will rebel against God, even in a perfect environment. Man; therefore, cannot blame his personal sin on circumstances, temptations or evil influences.

7. Final Judgment - The Great White Throne

- a. Messiah Jesus - God's Supreme & Final Judge John 5:19-30
 - 1) "For just as the Father has life in himself, so also he gave to his Son the possession of life in himself. And he gave him power to exercise judgment, because he is the Son of Man." (*John 5:26-27*)
(*Jesus is Uniquely Qualified as God's Supreme & Final Judge. As Son of God He Intimately Knows the Standards, Righteousness & Justice of a Holy God. As Son of Man He Lived the Life of a Man, Without Sin, Totally Obedient to God, Experiencing & Overcoming All the Vicissitudes & Temptations of Life.*)
- b. The Great White Throne Judgment Rev. 20:11-15
 - 1) "Next I saw a large white throne and the one (*Godhead*) who was sitting on it. The earth (*Man's Domain*) and the sky (*Satan's Domain*) fled from his presence and there was no place for them."
 - 2) "I saw the dead, the great and the lowly, standing before the throne, and scrolls were opened. Then another scroll was opened, the book of life. The dead were judged according to their deeds, by what was written in the scrolls. The sea gave up its dead; then Death and Hades (*Hell*) gave up their dead. All the dead were judged according to their deeds."
 - a) All the Dead Were Judged Before God's Great White Throne
(*Humanity from All Generations/EPOCHS, Who were Not Previously Resurrected/Translated, Judged & Alive with Christ Jesus.*)
 - b) All the Dead Judged According to their Deeds (*Good or Bad*)
(*Each Person is Judged According to the Standards of Conduct Known to them, their Consciences, Revelations, etc.; Whether they were Perfect & Sinless throughout their Entire Life being Worthy to Inherit Eternal Life*)
 - (1) "All have gone astray; all alike are worthless; there is not one who does good, (there is not) even one." *Rom. 3:12*
 - (2) "For there is no distinction (*Between Peoples*); all have sinned and are deprived of the glory of God." *Rom. 3:22b-23*
 - 3) "Then Death and Hades were thrown into the pool of fire. (This pool of fire is the second death) Anyone whose name was not found written in the book of life was thrown into the pool of fire."
 - a) Death & Hades Itself Thrown into Lake of Fire

(All Satanic Principalities & Powers, Demons, Fallen Angels, Evil Spirits, etc., Eternally Damned Without Defense)

(1) *“The angels too, who did not keep to their own domain but deserted their proper dwelling, he has kept in eternal chains, in gloom, for the judgment of the great day.”* Jude 6

b) Lake of Fire is the Second Death

(Eternally Separated from and Dead to the Living God)

c) Any Person Whose Name is NOT Found in the Book of Life is Thrown into Lake of Fire (*“Book of Life” Contains the Names of All Peoples Saved/Redeemed throughout Human History.*)
(Since No One was Found Worthy to Inherit Eternal Life through their Own Deeds, the Book of Life is Opened to See if they have been Redeemed by the Blood of Jesus Christ.)

(1) *Heavenly Chorus: “Worthy are you (Jesus – Lamb of God) to receive the scroll and to break open its seals, for you were slain and with your blood you purchased for God those from every tribe and tongue, people and nation.”* Rev. 5:9

8. Messiah Jesus’ Fulfillment of Messianic Kingdom Covenant 1 Cor. 15:20-28
- a. Messiah Fulfills His Kingdom Covenant. “For just as in Adam all die, so too in Christ shall all be brought to life, but each one in proper order: Christ the firstfruits; then, at his (*Second*) coming, those who belong to Christ; then comes the end (Christ’s Final Judgment), when he hands over the kingdom to his God and Father, when he has destroyed every sovereignty and every authority and power. For he must reign until he has put all his enemies under his feet. The last enemy to be destroyed is death” (1 Cor. 15:22-26)
- b. Messiah Jesus, God the Son, Presents His Prize (*All Peoples Saved & Sanctified from Beginning of Adamic Covenant through Final Judgment*) to Father God
- 1) “To the one who is able to keep you from stumbling and to present you unblemished and exultant, in the presence of his glory, to the only God, our savior, through Jesus Christ our Lord be glory, majesty, power, and authority from ages past, now, and for ages to come. Amen” Jude 24-25
- c. Fulfillment of God’s Eternal Covenant. “..... When everything is subjected to him (*Messiah Jesus*), then the Son himself will (also) be subjected to the one who subjected everything to him, so that **God may be all in all.**” (1 Cor. 15:27-28)
- 1) *Messiah Jesus Presents Himself & His Kingdom to God the Father:*
- a) *Having Fulfilled All the Covenants God Made with Man throughout the Ages: the Edenic, Adamic, Noahic, Abrahamic, Mosaic, Promise Land & Davidic Covenants, His New Covenant & His Kingdom Covenant;*
- b) *Having Judged All Humanity, the Living & the Dead, those Whom He Saved and those Condemned;*
- c) *Having Judged & Condemned Satan and His Evil Kingdom; and*
- d) *Having Renovated/Purified All Nature (Terrestrial, Extra-terrestrial & Celestial) that was Tainted by Satan, Sin and Man, Removing All Traces of Evil from God’s Good Creation. (See ‘Postscript’ Below).*

Postscript.

With God's Eternal Covenant being Accomplished and Fulfilled, God Creates a New Heaven and a New Earth to Live with His People Forever. "Then I saw a new heaven and a new earth. The former heaven and the former earth had passed away, and the sea was no more." Rev. 21:1

1. God Renovates/Purifies Heaven & Earth 2 Pet. 3:3-13
(God Destroys All Traces/Reminders of Evil & Sin from His Creation.)
 - a. ".....the heavens existed of old and earth was formed out of water and through water by the word of God (*Re: Gen. 1:1-2*); through these the world that then existed was destroyed, deluged with water (*Noah's Flood*). The present heavens and earth have been reserved by the same word for fire, kept for the day of judgment and of destruction of the godless." (*2 Pet. 3:5-7*)
 - b. "But the day of the Lord will come like a thief, and then the heavens will pass away with a mighty roar and the elements will be dissolved by fire, and the earth and everything done on it will be found out." (*2 Pet. 3:10*)
 - c. "But according to his promise we await new heavens and a new earth in which righteousness dwells" (*2 Pet. 3:13*)

Comment. *There are 3 Heavens revealed to Mankind in Holy Scriptures:*

- 1) The First Heaven is the sky/atmosphere surrounding Earth, representing Man's Earthly Realm.
- 2) The Second Heaven are the stars, planets and other astronomical bodies/forces, spiritually representing Lucifer's (Satan's) Realm.
- 3) The Third Heaven is God's Central Dwelling Place & Throne where He, His Redeemed People and His Heavenly Hosts reside (*Rev. 4*).

2. God Creates a New Heaven and a New Earth
God (Father, Son & Holy Spirit) Create a New Perfect & Holy Creation, Replacing the Former Heaven (Lucifer's Realm) & Earth (Man's Realm).

Just as the Trinity was Involved in the Creation of the Original Heavens and Earth; So, the Trinity will be involved in the Creation of the New Heavens and Earth.

- a. *Having Revealed His Infinite Love, Justice & Righteousness to All Creation, God the Father Conceives His New Creation and Sets the Eternal Standards of Holiness & Perfection;*
- b. *Having Paid the Price of Eternal Salvation for those People Who Inherit God's New Creation, God the Son (Word of God) Speaks it into Existence; and*
- c. *Having Gathered and Sanctified God's People, God the Holy Spirit Activates His New Creation Sustaining God's Family Eternally.*

3. God's New Heaven & Earth
(God Totally & Eternally Saves Us from Sin & All the Effects of Sin; Eternally Uniting Himself with Us as His Family – His Sons)

- a. City of God (*God's Capital & Throne*) Coming Down from Heaven. Rev. 21:1-4
 - 1) "I also saw the holy city, a new Jerusalem, coming down out of heaven from God, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband (*Pure & Adorned*)." (*Rev. 21:2*)
 - 2) Loud Voice from Throne (*God's Announcement*): "..... Behold, God's dwelling is with the human race. He will dwell with them and they will be his people and God himself will always be with them (as their God).
 - a) "He will wipe every tear from their eyes,
 - b) ".... there shall be no more death or mourning, wailing or pain,

- c) "... the old order has passed away." (Rev. 22:3-4)
- b. The One (*Godhead*) Who Sat on Throne Said: "Behold, I make all things new!"
- 1) "Write these words down, for they are trustworthy and true. They are accomplished (*Sovereign, Creative & Effectual Word of God*)."
 - 2) "I AM (*YAHWEH*) the Alpha (*Beginning of Creation*) and the Omega (*End of Creation*), the beginning and the end (*Omnipresent Lord God*)
 - a) "To the thirsty (*Seekers of Righteousness*) I will give a gift (*God's Grace*) from the spring of life-giving water (*Holy Spirit*)."
 - b) "The victor (*Those Who Overcome by Trusting in Christ*) will inherit these gifts, and I (*God the Father*) shall be his God, and he will be my son (*Sons of God & Co-heirs with Christ Jesus*)......" Rev. 21:5-8
- c. The New Jerusalem Rev. 21:9 – 22:5
- 1) John's Vision of the New Jerusalem Rev. 21:9-27
 - a) Angelic Announcement: "Come here. I will show you the bride, the wife of the Lamb (*Jesus the Lamb of God with His Bride*)."
(Rev. 21:9b)
 - b) Holy City Jerusalem Coming Down Out of Heaven from God
 - (1) Description of the Holy City Rev. 21:9-21
 - (2) "I saw no temple in the city, for its temple is the Lord God almighty and the Lamb."
(Rev. 21:22) (*God Dwells Among His Family*.)
 - (3) "The city had no need of sun or moon to shine on it, for the glory of God gave it light (*Illuminated by God's Glory*), and its lamp was the Lamb (*Christ the Eternal Light*)."
(Rev. 21:23)
(*City of God Illuminated Visually, Intellectually, Emotionally & Spiritually by the Eternal Presence of God*)
 - 2) The River of Life – 'Life Giving Water' (*God the Holy Spirit Nourishes, Sanctifies & Sustains God's Sons throughout Eternity*)
 - a) "Then the angel showed me the river of life-giving water, sparkling like crystal, flowing from the throne of God and of the Lamb down the middle of its street. On either side of the river grew the tree of life that produces fruit twelve times a year, once each month; the leaves of the trees serve as medicine for the nations."
Rev. 22:1-2
 - 3) The Throne of God Rev. 22:3-5
(*God's Sons will Know Him, Commune with Him & Enjoy Him Forever*)
 - a) ".....The throne of God and of the Lamb will be in it, and his servants will worship him."
(*Sons Communing With & Enjoying the Triune God*)
 - b) "They will look upon his face (*God Reveals Himself to His Sons*), and his name will be on their foreheads (*Faithful & Obedient Sons*)."
 - c) "Night will be no more, nor will they need light from lamp or sun (*God Illuminates Our Minds, Hearts & Spirits*), for the Lord God shall give them light, (*Divine Revelation & Understanding*) and they shall reign forever and ever (*Sons Reigning with their God Forever*)."

"What eye has not seen, and ear has not heard, and what has not entered the human heart, what God has prepared for those who love him" (Isa. 64:3 & 1 Cor. 2:9)